

THE
HISTORY
OF
GREAT BRITAIN,

FROM THE
FIRST INVASION OF IT BY THE ROMANS
UNDER JULIUS CÆSAR.

WRITTEN ON A NEW PLAN.

By ROBERT HENRY, D.D.

ONE OF THE MINISTERS OF EDINBURGH, MEMBER OF THE
SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIANS OF SCOTLAND, AND OF
THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF EDINBURGH.

THE FIFTH EDITION.

IN TWELVE VOLUMES.

VOL. V.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR CADELL AND DAVIES; F. C. AND J. RIVINGTON; R. LEA; J. CUTHELL;
J. NUNN; LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, AND BROWN; LACKINGTON, ALLEN,
AND CO.; E. JEFFERY; C. LAW; WHITE AND COCHRANE; B. AND R. CROSEY;
JOHN RICHARDSON; J. M. RICHARDSON; S. BAGSTER; BLACK AND PARRY;
J. AND A. ARCH; J. BOOTH; J. OTRIDGE; J. MAWMAN; R. BALDWIN; W. STEWART;
R. SCHOLEY; G. AND S. ROBINSON; CRADOCK AND JOY; J. BLACK; T. BOHN;
J. FAULDER; GALE, CURTIS, AND FENNER; AND J. WALKER AND CO.

1814.



5.21²
4/9/90

B. ROBERT L. L. L.

DA
30
H46
184
v.5

Strahan and Preston,
Printers-Street, London.

CONTENTS

OF

THE FIFTH VOLUME.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Civil and Military History of Great Britain, from the landing of William Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1066., to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.

Sect. 1. From A.D. 1066. to A.D. 1100.	Page 1
Sect. 2. From the accession of Henry I., A.D. 1100., to the accession of Henry II., A.D. 1154.	55
Sect. 3. From the accession of Henry II., A.D. 1154., to his death, A.D. 1189.	119
Sect. 4. From the accession of Richard I., A.D. 1189., to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.	189

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

History of Religion in Great Britain, from
the landing of William Duke of Normandy,
A.D. 1066., to the death of King John,
A.D. 1216.

Sect. 1. From A.D. 1066. to A.D. 1100.	Page 271
Sect. 2. From the accession of Henry I., A.D. 1100., to the accession of Henry II., A.D. 1154.	- 290
Sect. 3. From A.D. 1154. to A.D. 1189.	- 335
Sect. 4. From A.D. 1189. to A.D. 1216.	- 421

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Civil and Military History of Great
Britain from the landing of William Duke
of Normandy, A.D. 1066., to the death of
King John, A.D. 1216.

Sect. 1. From A.D. 1066. to A.D. 1100.	Page 1
Sect. 2. From the accession of Henry I., A.D. 1100., to the accession of Henry II., A.D. 1154.	- 33
Sect. 3. From the accession of Henry II., A.D. 1154., to his death, A.D. 1189.	- 119
Sect. 4. From the accession of Richard I., A.D. 1189., to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.	- 189

THE
HISTORY
OF
GREAT BRITAIN.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

*The civil and military history of Great Britain,
from the landing of William Duke of Nor-
mandy, A.D. 1066., to the death of King John,
A.D. 1216.*

SECTION I.

From A.D. 1066. to A.D. 1100.

WILLIAM Duke of Normandy having
spent about eight months in the most
vigorous preparations for invading England,
and dethroning King Harold, sailed from the
harbour of St. Vallori, at the mouth of the river
Somme, with a great fleet and gallant army,
on September 28, A.D. 1066., and the day
after arrived at Pevensey in Suffex. At that
place

A.D. 1066.
William
Duke of
Normandy
lands in
England.

A.D. 1066. place he landed his troops, horses, arms, and baggage of all kinds, without any opposition; and immediately erected a fort, into which he put a garrison for the protection of his fleet¹. From Pevensey he marched to Hastings; where he remained about fifteen days, fortifying his camp, collecting provisions, refreshing his men and horses, and putting every thing in order for the prosecution of his design.²

Harold
marches
from the
north to
Hastings.

Harold was at York with his army, celebrating the victory which he had obtained over his brother Tosti and the King of Norway, when he received the news of this formidable invasion. Roused, but not intimidated, by this intelligence, he put an end to his rejoicings, and began his march towards London³. When he arrived in that capital, he found his forces much diminished, by the loss which he had sustained in the battle of Stamford bridge, and by a great desertion which had taken place among his troops, through discontent at being deprived of their share of the booty gained in that battle. In these circumstances, he was advised by his wisest counsellors, and particularly by his brother Gurth, to remain at London till he had refreshed and recruited his army, or at least not to venture his own person with unequal forces⁴. But being flushed with his late victory, he rejected these wise and friendly

¹ W. Pictavin. p. 198, 199. Orderic. Vital. p. 500.

² Id. *ibid.*

³ Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 211. Hoveden. Annal. p. 257.

⁴ Orderic. Vital. p. 500.

admonitions with disdain, and hurried towards ^{A.D. 1066.} Hastings; where he arrived October 13. and pitched his camp near to that of the Normans.⁵

The two armies did not continue long in that position before they came to action. For early on the morning of the 14th of October, A.D. 1066., William Duke of Normandy, and Harold King of England, led their forces into the field, and drew them up in order of battle, to determine their important quarrel by the sword. The English, who were all on foot, armed with swords, spears, and battle-axes, were formed into one deep and compact body; in the centre of which, on a rising ground, the King, with his two brothers Gurth and Leofwin, placed themselves near to the royal standard. The Norman infantry were drawn up in two lines, the first composed of archers and slingers, and the second of the heavy-armed troops; the cavalry, commanded by the Duke in person, being stationed in the rear, and on the two wings⁶. No sooner was the signal of battle given by the sound of all the instruments of martial music, than the Normans advanced, singing the famous song of Roland, and began the action by discharging a prodigious flight of arrows upon the English⁷. By degrees the two armies approached nearer and

Battle of
Hastings.

⁵ W. Malmf. l. 3. p. 57. Orderic. Vital. p. 500.

⁶ W. Pictavin. p. 201. Math. Paris, p. 3.

⁷ W. Malmf. l. 3. p. 57. Gesta Willielmi Ducis, p. 202. Hen. Hunt. p. 211.

A.D. 1066. nearer, and the battle raged with uncommon fury on both sides, from morning till towards evening. The Duke of Normandy, who had fought bravely, and had three horses killed under him, observing that his troops began to relax in their efforts, and to despair of breaking the ranks of their enemies, had recourse to a stratagem, which was crowned with success. He gave orders to his forces to retire a little, as if they had been on the point of flying; which the English mistaking for a real flight, broke their ranks, in order to pursue them, and complete their ruin. The Normans, at a certain signal, faced about, and made a furious assault on their pursuers, who were now scattered in many small parties. From this time the battle was changed into many skirmishes in different parts, with various success, till about sunset; when King Harold was killed by an arrow, which entering his eye, penetrated his brain; his two brothers were also slain, and the royal standard taken: upon which the English fled on all sides, and were pursued with great slaughter, till the darkness of the night put an end to the pursuit*. In this battle, the most important in its consequences of any that ever was fought in this island, no fewer than fifteen thousand Normans fell on one side: and on the other much greater numbers were slain; amongst

* Hen. Hunt. p. 211. W. Pictavin. p. 202. R. Hoveden, p. 257. Math. Paris, p. 3. Orderic. Vital. p. 501.

whom

whom were the King, his two brothers, and the flower of the English nobility.⁹

A.D. 1066.

Conduct of William after the victory.

As the Duke of Normandy had displayed much conduct and valour in the battle of Hastings, he discovered great prudence and humanity after the victory, — by returning solemn thanks to God on the field for the success of his arms, — by permitting the English to bury their dead in perfect tranquillity, — by dismissing with ignominy one of his soldiers for mangling the body of Harold, and — by sending the corpse of that prince to his mother Githa, without accepting the offered ransom.¹⁰

Remains of the English army retire to London.

It is easier to imagine than describe the consternation of the English, after the battle of Hastings. Many of the fugitives, and amongst others the two powerful Earls Edwin and Morcar, with their remaining followers, made haste to London, which became a scene of inexpressible terror and confusion. Here frequent councils were held by Aldred Archbishop of York, the two earls above mentioned, and the other nobility; who at length resolved to raise Edgar Atheling, the undoubted heir of the Saxon royal family, to the throne; to collect an army, and make a stand in defence of their country, against the victorious invaders. But it required more time than they were allowed to bring these designs to maturity, and carry them into execution.

⁹ W. Gemeticin. c. 36.

¹⁰ W. Malmf. l. 3. p. 58. Henry Knyhton, col. 2342.

¹¹ W. Pictavin. p. 205. Diceto, col. 480. J. Brompt. Chron. col. 961. Hen. Knyht. col. 2343. R. Hoveden, fol. 257. col. 2.

A.D. 1066.

William
marches to
London.

The Duke of Normandy having buried his dead, and refreshed his army by a few days rest, began his march towards London; and in his way chastised the inhabitants of Romney, who had killed some of his men, got possession of the town and castle of Dover by surrender, and received the submissions of the Kentish men¹². His progress was a little retarded by these operations, and by a dysentery among his troops, which obliged him to remain about a week at Dover, employing such of his forces as were in perfect health in repairing and strengthening the fortifications of that place. At length he resumed his march, and approached the capital; which at first shut its gates, and made some shew of resistance. But a large body of citizens, who made a sally, having been repulsed with slaughter by a party of Norman cavalry, the whole city was thrown into confusion; those who had lost their friends breaking out into the most clamorous lamentations¹³. This confusion of the people shut up in London, was soon after much increased by their beholding the flames of Southwark, which was set on fire and reduced to ashes by the Normans¹⁴. In a word, the consternation was so great and universal, that Edwin and Morcar, the Earls of Mercia and Northumberland, perceiving that no effectual resistance could be made,

¹² W. Pictavin. p. 205.¹³ Orderic. Vital. p. 503.¹⁴ Id. ibid.

retired with precipitation, and marched off with their numerous followers into the north. A.D. 1066.

Soon after this, the victorious invader having passed the Thames at Wallingford with his army, approached the city on that side which was not defended by the river. This greatly increased the terror of the citizens, and hastened their resolution to surrender. Stigand Archbishop of Canterbury, Aldred Archbishop of York, and two other bishops, five of the principal citizens of London, several noblemen, and even Edgar Atheling himself, went out to meet the conqueror, and made their submissions to him at Berkhamstead¹⁵. The example of so many illustrious persons was soon followed by almost all the surviving nobility of England, who joined with them in making William an offer of the vacant throne; which, after some affected excuses, at the earnest intreaty of his Norman counsellors, he accepted.¹⁶ London surrenders to William.

William did not immediately enter London, though its gates were thrown open, and all the hostages delivered which he had demanded; but sent a part of his army to take possession of it, to erect a fortification in it, and to make the necessary preparations for his coronation, which he appointed to be in Westminster abbey, on Christmas day following. In the mean time, to shew how much his mind was at ease, and his affairs in a settled state, he amused himself with

¹⁵ R. Hovenden. Annal. p. 258.

¹⁶ W. Pictavin. p. 205.

A.D. 1066. the diversions of hunting and hawking in the neighbourhood.¹⁷

William is crowned.

Early on the morning of Christmas day, A.D. 1066., Duke William, attended by the chief nobility of England and Normandy, repaired to Westminster abbey, where he was crowned King of England with all the usual ceremonies, by Aldred Archbishop of York, assisted by Goisfred Bishop of Constance. The former of these prelates, who was famous for his eloquence, made an oration to the English in their own language, and concluded with asking them, if they chose William for their king, and consented to his coronation; to which they signified their assent by the loudest acclamations. The Bishop of Constance asked the same question of the Normans in their language, and received the same answer in the same manner. The Archbishop then administered the oath to William that had been administered to the Anglo-Saxon kings at their coronation, seated him in the throne, and placed the crown on his head, amidst the loud and repeated acclamations of the whole assembly.¹⁸

Tumult at the coronation.

These acclamations were productive of very fatal consequences. For the Norman guards stationed without the abbey, hearing such vehement reiterated shouts in a language which they did not understand, began to apprehend that

¹⁷ W. Pictavin. p. 205.

¹⁸ W. Pictavin. p. 206. Orderic. Vital. p. 502, 503. T. Stubbs, col. 1702. R. Hoveden, fol. 258. W. Newbregin, l. 1. c. 1. p. 2.

the English were offering violence to their prince, and in a sudden transport of rage set fire to the neighbouring houses, which, being of wood, burnt with great violence. This occasioned a prodigious alarm and uproar within the abbey; men and women rushing out with impetuosity to save their lives, which they imagined to be in danger. In a word, the tumult both within and without the abbey was so great, that it struck terror into the new monarch, and was not appeased without much difficulty. This incident, however casual, increased the jealousy and animosity of the two nations, and was considered, in that superstitious age, as an omen of a turbulent unhappy reign.¹⁹

A.D. 1066.

William, after his coronation, applied with great activity to regulate the affairs of his kingdom, endeavouring to gain the affections of the English, as well as to gratify the expectations of the Normans. Being still a little suspicious of the people of London, he left that city, as the fortifications which he had directed to be raised for his security were not yet finished, and retired to Berking in Essex. At this place the two great Earls Edwin and Morcar, Earl Coxo, Ederic, furnamed *the Forester*, and several other English noblemen, waited upon him, made their submissions, and were most graciously received, and confirmed in the possession of all their honours and estates. From Berking he made a progress

A.D. 1067.
First Acts
of King
William's
govern-
ment.¹⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 503.

into

A.D. 1067.

in^o several parts of the kingdom, receiving the homage of his new subjects, and behaving to all who submitted to his authority with the most engaging affability. In this progress he was at great pains to restrain his Norman attendants from doing any injuries, or offering any insults to his English subjects²⁰. By these popular and prudent measures the public tranquillity was every where restored, and nothing appeared but the most perfect submission to the new government. That he might have it in his power to gratify the expectations of his Norman followers, he seized all the lands and treasures of Harold and his brothers, which were very great, and confiscated the estates of all the English nobles who had fallen fighting against him in the battle of Hastings. He received also very considerable sums of money from his wealthy English subjects, as presents, on his accession, given with a view to secure his favour. By these means he was enabled to bestow honours and estates upon his chief followers, and money upon others. Besides this, to diffuse the fame of his riches, piety, and munificence, he sent very valuable presents to the Pope, who had favoured his enterprise, and to many churches on the continent, wherein prayers had been put up for his success. Still further to secure the obedience of the English, of whose attachment he yet entertained some doubts, he commanded strong

²⁰ W. Pictavin. p. 208.

castles to be built near the chief cities, and in other convenient places, to be garrisoned by his trusty Normans, on whose fidelity he could depend.²¹ A.D. 1067.

By these and the like precautions, in less than three months after his coronation, William beheld such an appearance of order, tranquillity, and obedience to his authority, in all parts of England, that he imagined he might now with safety visit his native country and his family; to dazzle their eyes with his magnificence, and receive their congratulations on the success of his expedition. Having therefore appointed his uterine brother Odo Bishop of Bayeux, and his great favourite William Fitz-Osbern, Regents of England, towards the end of March A.D. 1067., he embarked at Pevensey in Suffex (where he had landed about six months before), and soon after arrived in Normandy, with a gallant fleet, and a splendid train of the nobility of England, as well as of his ancient subjects. For besides the precautions already mentioned, which he had taken for preserving the peace of his new dominions in his absence, he very prudently carried with him to the continent, Edgar Atheling, Stigand Archbishop of Canterbury, the Earls Edwin and Morcar, and all the other English noblemen, whose fidelity he suspected, or who were formidable for their wealth and power, under a pretence of doing them honour,

King William returns to Normandy.

²¹ W. Pictavin, p. 208.

but

A.D. 1067. but in reality to keep them as hostages for the peaceable behaviour of their dependents²². As an impatient vanity, unworthy of his character, seems to have prompted William to this too hasty voyage, which proved the source of much disquiet to himself, and of many calamities to his subjects; so he made an ostentatious display of the riches and grandeur he had acquired in England, to excite the admiration of his own people, and of the nobles and princes who came from all the neighbouring countries to visit his court, and pay their compliments of congratulation. The quantity and exquisite workmanship of his gold and silver plate, the splendid dress of his guards, and the magnificence of his English nobles, exceeded every thing that had been seen in those parts, and filled all spectators with admiration.²³

Insurrec-
tion of the
English.

While William was thus spending his time in a kind of triumphant progress through the towns and cities of Normandy, business of a different kind was preparing for him in England. Many of the Norman captains, unawed by the presence of their sovereign, abused their power, and loaded the unhappy English with injuries and indignities; which that people, still mindful of their former free and happy state, bore with much impatience. This soon produced murmurs and complaints; which being disregarded by the Regents, broke out into open revolts in several

²² W. Pictavin, p. 209.

²³ Id. p. 211.

places.

places. The Kentish-men, in conjunction with A.D. 1067.
 Eustace Earl of Bologne, who was then at variance with William, made an unsuccessful attempt on the town and castle of Dover²⁴. Edric the Forester, with the assistance of two Welsh princes, defended himself against the insults of the Norman captains settled in Herefordshire, repelling force by force²⁵. Coxo, a powerful English Earl, was put to death by his own people, because he obstinately persisted in his submission to the new government, and refused to head them in an insurrection²⁶. In a word, the English in all parts of the kingdom were ripe for a revolt; and there wanted not some secret consultations about a general massacre of the Normans.²⁷

William, having received information of the discontents which prevailed in England, became sensible of the necessity of his immediate presence in that kingdom; and, appointing his Queen Matilda, and his eldest son Robert, Regents of Normandy, he sailed from Dieppe on the 6th of December, and on the 7th landed at Winchelsea, from whence he proceeded to London, where he kept his Christmas²⁸. Here he was attended by many of the English prelates and nobles; who met with a more favourable reception than they expected, and even obtained

King William returns to England.

²⁴ Orderic. Vital. p. 508.

²⁵ Hoveden. Annal. p. 258.

²⁶ Orderic. Vital. p. 509.

²⁷ Gemiticin, c. 29.

²⁸ Orderic. Vital. p. 509.

A.D. 1067. redress of some of those injuries which had been done to them by the Normans. This produced an appearance of tranquillity, which was neither very solid nor very lasting.²⁹

A.D. 1068. The unseasonable expensive voyage to Normandy had not only given occasion to the Revolts
suppressed. insurrections already mentioned, but it had also exhausted the royal treasury so much, that William, soon after his return to England, found himself under the necessity of reviving the odious tax of Danegelt. This revived the discontents of the English, and occasioned fresh troubles. The people of Exeter, at the instigation of Githa, the mother of King Harold, who resided in that city, broke out into open rebellion, repaired their walls, increased their garrison, laid in provisions, and made every possible preparation for a vigorous resistance, soliciting all the neighbouring country to join in their revolt. The King immediately marched into those parts at the head of his army, and after a siege of eighteen days, obliged them to implore his clemency and submit to his authority, Githa having in the mean time made her escape into Flanders with all her treasures³⁰. After the reduction of Exeter, William marched into Cornwall; and having suppressed certain commotions which had been raised in that country, returned to Winchester, where he celebrated the feast of Easter. His

²⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 509.

³⁰ Id. p. 510. Chron. Saxon. p. 1068.

royal consort Matilda arrived in England about this time, and was crowned at Westminster on Whitsunday by Aldred Archbishop of York; and before the end of the year she was delivered of her fourth son, who was named *Henry*.³¹ A.D. 1068.

At this time William seemed to be completely happy, both in his family and government. But this happiness was of short duration; and he soon found himself involved in new toils and dangers. The two brothers, Edwin and Morcar, were by far the most powerful of all the English nobility who survived the battle of Hastings, having about a third part of England under their own authority and that of their friends. Besides this, they were amiable in their persons and manners, beloved by their dependents, the favourites of the clergy, and the idols of the common people³². The late King Harold had been their brother-in-law, and the reigning Prince of Wales was their nephew. The artful Norman was not ignorant of any of these circumstances, and well knew what dangerous enemies they might have been to a new-established government, and had therefore courted them with great attention; and, in particular, had promised Edwin his daughter in marriage. But when that young nobleman claimed the accomplishment of his promise, he met with a denial: at which he was so much enraged, that

Revolt of
Earls Ed-
win and
Morcar.

³¹ J. Brompt. col. 963.

³² Orderic. Vital. p. 511. J. Brompt. col. 969.

he

A.D. 1068. he retired with his brother into the north, where they encouraged the disaffection of their followers, entered into negotiations with the Kings of Scotland and Denmark, and the Princes of Wales, formed a plan for attacking the King and his Normans, by strong armies in several places at the same time.

William
suppresses
that revolt.

William, sensible that his safety depended upon his celerity, flew into the north with an army, and disconcerted the designs of his enemies before they could bring them to maturity. The two brothers, with Archil a potent nobleman in those parts, finding their schemes blasted, threw themselves on the King's mercy, and obtained a seeming but not a sincere forgiveness. The people of York, who had engaged keenly in this conspiracy, finding it discovered, endeavoured to make their peace, by giving hostages, and sending the keys of their city to William; who distrusting their fidelity, built a castle in their city, in which he placed a Norman garrison. For the further security of his government he built castles at Warwick, Nottingham, Lincoln, Huntingdon, and Cambridge. Malcolm, King of Scotland, seeing the confederacy dissolved, made his peace with William; who having thus dissipated this threatening storm by his activity, returned triumphant into the south.³³

English
nobility
abandon
their
country.

By this time a great part of the property of England was, by numerous confiscations, trans-

³³ Simeon Dunelm. col. 203. R. Diceto, col. 482. Orderic. Vital. p. 511.

ferred

ferred to the Normans, who also ingrossed the A.D. 1068.
favour of the sovereign, and all places of power and profit. The far greatest part of the ancient English noble families were extinguished or reduced to poverty; and those who remained, saw themselves despised, distrusted, and in daily danger of ruin from the suspicions of the Conqueror, and the rapacity of his Norman favourites. Many of them therefore retired into foreign countries to avoid the dangers with which they were surrounded, and to reserve themselves for better times. In particular, Edgar Atheling, his two sisters Margaret and Christina, with Earl Cospatrick, and several other noblemen, retired into Scotland; where they met with a most gracious reception from King Malcolm; who married the Princess Margaret, and bestowed lands on her noble attendants; from whom several great families in that kingdom derive their descent.³⁴

Though the retreat of so many noble persons A.D. 1069.
weakened the English interest, and enriched the Normans with their spoils, it did not secure the tranquillity of the kingdom, which, A. D. 1069., was a scene of great confusion. Two sons of the late King Harold, who had left England after the unfortunate battle of Hastings, and taken shelter in the court of Dermot King of Ireland, having, with the assistance of that Prince, and Two sons of King Harold invade England, and are defeated.

³⁴ M. Paris, p. 4. Annal. Waverlien. An. 1068. Chron. Saxon. p. 174. R. Hoveden. Annal. 259. col. 2.

A.D. 1069. other friends, collected a small army, and a fleet of sixty-six ships, resolved to make an attempt to retrieve the ruined fortunes of their family. About the beginning of this year they landed with their troops on the coast of Devonshire; but were suddenly attacked by a party of Normans under the command of Brioux, a son of the Earl of Brittany, who defeated them twice in one day, killed seventeen hundred of their men, and obliged the two unhappy adventurers to flee to their ships, and return into Ireland.³⁵

The English, assisted by the Scots and Danes, revolt.

There were risings of the English about the same time in the counties of Cornwall, Dorset, Somerset, Salop, and the Isle of Ely³⁶. But the most formidable commotions were in the north, where every thing seemed to conspire to the extirpation of the Normans. Robert Cumin Governor of Durham, was killed in an insurrection, with about seven hundred of his followers, on the 29th of January³⁷. A few days after, the people of York surprised and killed Robert Fitz-Richard their governor, with many of his men, and besieged the castle, which had been built to keep them in subjection. During the continuance of this siege, a Danish fleet of three hundred ships, commanded by Osberne, brother to Sweyn King of Denmark, arrived in the Humber, and landed an army, which, after

³⁵ Orderic. Vital. p. 513. W. Gemiticen, c. 41.

³⁶ Orderic. Vital. p. 514.

³⁷ R. Hoveden, p. 259. Simeon Dunelm. col. 34. 198. J. Brompt. col. 969.

plunder-

plundering the country, joined the English at the siege of York castle, who were also joined about the same time by Edgar Atheling, Cofpatric, Waltheof, Merleswain, and other exiles from Scotland, with a party of Northumbrians. Many of the Normans in those parts had taken shelter in the castle of York, which they defended with great bravery, in hopes of being relieved by William, to whom they had sent an account of their danger. On the 19th of September they made a sally, and set fire to the houses nearest the castle; and the flames spreading, burnt the cathedral and the greatest part of the city. The besiegers, enraged at this beyond measure, amidst the confusion occasioned by the fire, took the castle by assault, and put the whole garrison, consisting of three thousand men, to the sword, except the Governor, William Malet, with his wife and two children, whose lives they spared. After this exploit the Danes returned to their ships loaded with booty, and the Northumbrians retired to their own homes.³¹

A.D. 1069.

When William, who had been employed in suppressing the insurrections in the south, received intelligence of these transactions in the north, he was inflamed with the most violent rage, and swore that he would lay that whole country desolate, and extirpate its inhabitants. To execute this threatened vengeance, he marched his army northward; and that he might not have two

William
recovers
York.³¹ Simeon Dunelm. col. 198. J. Brompt. col. 966.

A.D. 1069. enemies to contend with at the same time, he entered into a private negociation with Osberne, the commander of the Danish army, and prevailed upon him by a sum of money, and permission to plunder the sea-coasts, to return with his fleet and army into Denmark in the spring. The King then invested York with his army, and having taken it, and received Waltheof its governor into favour, he spent his Christmas in that city with the usual solemnities.³⁹

A.D. 1070. In the beginning of the year 1070., William Defolates the north of England. marched northward with his army, destroying and burning the whole country as he advanced, and putting all the inhabitants to the sword without mercy. In this cruel and destructive manner he proceeded as far as Hexham, marking his way with blood and desolation. Many of the wretched inhabitants, who escaped the sword by flying to the woods and mountains, perished by famine; insomuch that no fewer than one hundred thousand men, women, and children, are said to have been cut off by these two cruel enemies of mankind (sword and famine), in the space of a few months. In a word, William executed his threatened vengeance with such unrelenting severity, that the whole country between York and Durham was converted into a dreary desert, without houses and without inhabitants. and remained in that condition about nine years.⁴⁰ Edgar Athe-

³⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 515. Chron. Saxon. p. 174. R. Hoveden, fol. 258. col. 2.

⁴⁰ R. Hoveden, p. 258. col. 2.

ling and his attendants seeing all lost, and dreading to fall into the hands of the enraged Conqueror, escaped into Scotland by sea; only Cospatric threw himself on the King's mercy, obtained his pardon, and for a sum of money was constituted Earl of Northumberland⁴¹. From this period, William seems to have been quite alienated from his English subjects, and to have resolved to depress and ruin them, that they might not be able to disturb his government.

A.D. 1070.

Malcolm King of Scotland, so nearly connected with Edgar Atheling, intended to support his cause, and assist the insurgents; but was too dilatory in his motions. At length, however, he marched out of Cumberland, which was then under his dominion, into Northumberland, which he plundered with great severity; and then returned into his own kingdom with much booty, and so great a number of prisoners, that (if we may believe an ancient English historian) there was hardly a village, or even a house in Scotland, in which you might not meet with an English slave or slaves.⁴²

Malcolm King of Scotland invades Northumberland.

The two brothers, Edwin and Morcar, who had remained quiet during all the violent commotions of the preceding year, now discovered, very unseasonably, their fear or their disaffection by flying from the court. Morcar took shelter in the Isle of Ely, where either by force or fraud he was taken, and thrown into prison. Edwin

A.D. 1071. Edwin and Morcar revolt, and are suppressed.

⁴¹ R. Hoveden, p. 258. col. 2.

⁴² Id. ibid. p. 259.

A.D. 1071. attempting to make his escape into Scotland, the common asylum of the afflicted English of those times, was betrayed by three brothers, his most familiar friends, into the hands of the Normans, and after a brave defence, was killed with about twenty of his attendants. As this amiable, but unfortunate young nobleman, had been much beloved, he was greatly lamented, especially by his countrymen the English; and even the unrelenting William, who had been long inured to blood and slaughter, could not refrain from tears when he beheld his head presented to him by the traitors, in hopes of a reward; instead of which he condemned them to perpetual exile⁴³. After the death of Edwin, and imprisonment of Mörcar, all their great estates were confiscated, and either vested in the crown or granted to the Normans⁴⁴. Still further to gratify his own avarice, and that of his followers, having received intelligence that many of the wretched English had concealed their money and plate in monasteries, he commanded them to be strictly searched, and these effects to be seized and confiscated wherever they could be found.⁴⁵

A.D. 1072. As Malcolm, King of Scotland, had given a kind reception to all the English exiles, and was ever ready to assist them in their attempts against the Norman government, William, having now

⁴³ Orderic. Vital. p. 521. J. Brompt. col. 969. Chron. Saxon. p. 181.

⁴⁴ Orderic Vital. p. 522.

⁴⁵ Annal. Waverlien. p. 130.

suppressed all the insurrections in England, resolved on an expedition into Scotland. In consequence of this resolution he conducted an army into that country, where he was met by Malcolm at the head of an army of equal strength. After the two armies had faced each other several days, a negociation was set on foot, which terminated in a peace, by which Malcolm agreed to do homage to William for his lands in England, and William agreed to receive Edgar Atheling again into favour, and grant him an honourable establishment⁴⁶. On his return from Scotland, William deprived Cospatrick of the earldom of Northumberland, and bestowed it upon Waltheof, who was now become a great favourite, and to whom he had given his own niece Judith in marriage.⁴⁷

A.D. 1072.

By this peace with Scotland, and the reduction of England to a state of tranquillity, William was now at liberty to make a second voyage to the continent, to suppress a revolt in the county of Maine, fomented by Fulk Earl of Anjou, who had some pretensions to that county. Willing to allow the Normans settled in England to enjoy some repose after so many toils and dangers, he composed the army which he carried with him chiefly of his English subjects; who fighting with great bravery, in order to retrieve their national character for valour, and to

A.D. 1073.

William visits Normandy.

⁴⁶ Annal. Waverlien, p. 130. Chron. Saxon. p. 181.

⁴⁷ Orderic. Vital. p. 522.

A.D. 1073. gain, if possible, the esteem and favour of their sovereign, soon reduced the disputed country to his obedience⁴⁸. William spent the whole of this, and the greatest part of the year 1074., in Normandy, enjoying the company of his family, and regulating the affairs of his dominions.

A.D. 1074. While the Conqueror was thus employed in his native country, a conspiracy was forming against him in England, by some of those Norman barons on whom he had heaped wealth and honours with a liberal hand. Roger Earl of Hereford, son and heir of William's great favourite Fitz-Osborne, had promised his sister in marriage to Ralph de Guader Earl of Norfolk, and applied to the King for his consent to their nuptials; which he, for reasons unknown to us, refused. The two haughty barons were much enraged at this refusal, and, without regarding it, proceeded to the celebration of the intended marriage, and invited all the chief friends of both families to the marriage feast, amongst others Waltheof Earl of Huntingdon, Northampton, and Northumberland, married to Judith the King's niece, the only Englishman who then enjoyed any considerable degree of power, wealth, or royal favour. When the guests were heated with liquor at the nuptial banquet, politics were introduced; the two earls gave free vent to their discontent and resentment against William, representing him as an infamous bastard, an in-

⁴⁸ Chron. Saxon. p. 182.

solent imperious tyrant, unworthy to reign over such brave men as they were, and at length proposed a conspiracy to deprive him of the kingdom, which they suggested might be easily accomplished in his absence, by the assistance of the Danes, Welsh, and discontented English. Waltheof at first hesitated, and objected; but was at last prevailed upon to enter into the conspiracy, which, to their inflamed imaginations, appeared perfectly just, and easy of execution. When rest, however, had dispelled the fumes of liquor, it was seen in a very different light by the unhappy Waltheof, who became thoughtful, restless, and apprehensive. At length, to relieve his loaded heart, he communicated the whole secret of the conspiracy to his wife, of whose fidelity he entertained no doubt. But the faithless Judith, whose affections were secretly fixed on another object, glad of an opportunity of ruining her husband, sent a trusty messenger into Normandy to reveal the plot to her uncle, and to aggravate the guilt of Waltheof as much as possible. Waltheof, not yet easy in his mind, revealed the fatal secret to Lanfranc Archbishop of Canterbury, under the seal of confession, professing repentance, and asking his advice. That prelate advised him immediately to go to Normandy, and communicate the whole affair to the King, as the most effectual means of meriting and obtaining his forgiveness. He complied with this advice; and met with a reception seemingly not unfavourable, though he was
detained

A.D. 1074.

A.D. 1074. detained in custody. As soon as the other conspirators heard of the flight of Waltheof into Normandy, they concluded that he had betrayed them, and rashly flew to arms before their plot was ripe for execution. The Earl of Hereford was defeated, and taken prisoner, by the nobles and prelates of Worcestershire. The other great conspirator, Ralph Earl of Norfolk, being routed near Cambridge, by Odo Bishop of Bayeux, and Regent of the kingdom, took shelter in his castle of Norwich; where he was besieged, with his lady and family. The Earl, dreading to fall into the hands of his enemies, made his escape beyond sea; after which his lady surrendered the castle, and agreed to go into perpetual exile. Soon after this a Danish fleet and army arrived on the English coast to the assistance of the conspirators; but hearing that they were suppressed, returned to Denmark without landing.⁴⁹

William
returns to
England.

William arrived in England in autumn this year, and found the public tranquillity restored, by the dispersion or imprisonment of the insurgents. According to his unjust and cruel policy, he punished the common people with great severity, hanging some and mutilating others. The Earl of Hereford, though he had been the author of this conspiracy, yet, being a Norman, and the son of a favourite, was treated with great lenity, and only consigned to perpetual confinement.⁵⁰

⁴⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 434, 435. R. Hoveden, p. 262. Chron. Saxon. p. 182, 183.

⁵⁰ Orderic. Vital. p. 435.

A.D. 1075.
 Earl Waltheof condemned and executed.

The unhappy Waltheof did not meet with the same indulgence, though he had the strongest claims to mercy. He had been drawn into the conspiracy when he was in a state of intoxication; he repented of it as soon as he recovered the exercise of his reason; and he prevented its success by a seasonable discovery. But being an Englishman, and possessed of great wealth, he was obnoxious to the Norman courtiers, who coveted his estates, and, in conjunction with his unfaithful wife, pushed on the prosecution against him with great violence. On his trial he denied that he had ever entered into the conspiracy, but confessed that he had concealed it for a time. His judges were divided in their opinions, and held several consultations before they condemned him to death. Even after that hard sentence was pronounced, William hesitated, and kept him some months in prison at Winchester. In this interval the English were full of anxiety for his safety, and put up incessant prayers to Heaven for his deliverance, while Judith and the Norman courtiers eagerly solicited his execution. At length William yielded to their importunity, and granted a warrant for his death; which was executed, with indecent haste, and other circumstances of cruelty, very early in the morning, April 29., on a rising ground without the gates of Winchester. Thus fell, by the intrigues of a wicked woman, and of covetous ambitious courtiers, one of the best and greatest, and almost the last of the ancient English nobles! His death

was

A.D. 1075. was bitterly bewailed by his unhappy countrymen, who long revered his memory, both as a hero and a saint.⁵¹

A.D. 1076.
William
returns to
Norman-
dy.

The other chief conspirator, Ralph de Guader, Earl of Norfolk, had great possessions in Brittany, to which he retired after his escape from his castle of Norwich. As soon as William had settled his affairs in England, he pursued him to the continent, and besieged him in the city of Dol, in which he had taken refuge, solemnly swearing not to raise the siege till he had taken the city and seized his enemy. But he soon found that it was not in his power to keep his oath. For the King of France and Duke of Brittany espousing the cause of the besieged, marched with a powerful army to their relief, and obliged William to raise the siege with great precipitation, leaving tents and baggage behind him to the value of fifteen thousand pounds. A peace was soon after concluded between all the contending parties, which was cemented by the marriage of the Princess Constance, a daughter of the King of England, to the Duke of Brittany.⁵²

War be-
tween
William
and his
eldest son
Robert.

William had now reduced all his subjects, and made peace with all his neighbours, and expected to enjoy some repose. These expectations proved delusive, and he soon found himself involved in fresh troubles of a most disagreeable kind, occa-

⁵¹ Orderic. Vital. p. 536, 537.

⁵² Chron. Saxon. p. 183. Orderic. Vital. p. 544.

tioned by the ambitious and impatient spirit of ^{A.D. 1076.} Robert his eldest son. That young prince had some years before been declared heir to all his father's dominions on the continent, and now began to insist with much earnestness on the immediate possession of some of these dominions. For some time William eluded his applications by evasive answers; but at last he was obliged to tell him plainly, that he was determined not to resign any of his territories while he lived⁵³. This denial increased the discontent and anger of Robert, which was blown up into an ungovernable flame by the following incident, trifling in itself, but important in its consequences. The King spending some time this year in the castle of L'Aigle with his court, his two younger sons, William and Henry, in a youthful frolic threw some water from an upper apartment on their elder brother Robert and his companions, who were walking in the court below. Robert, naturally passionate, and at that time in a peevish discontented state of mind, flew into a rage, drew his sword, and ran up stairs, threatening to take a bloody revenge on his brothers, of whose favour with their father he was not a little jealous. This occasioned a prodigious tumult and uproar in the castle; and nothing but the presence and authority of the King could have prevented some fatal mischief. The tumult was quelled; but the wrath of Robert was not ap-

⁵³ Orderic. Vital. p. 569.

peased;

A.D. 1076. peased; for he privately retired from court that very evening, with a number of the young nobility attached to his fortunes, with a view to surprise the citadel of Rouen, the capital of Normandy. They were disappointed in this design by the vigilance of the governor; and as soon as William heard of this rebellious attempt, he issued orders to seize his son and all his companions. A few of them were taken; but Robert and the others made their escape, and were received by Hugh de Neuf-Chatel into his castles. An open war now broke out between the father and the son; which raged with great violence, and unspeakable mischief to the country, almost three years.⁵⁴

A.D. 1079. At length the conduct, valour, and fortune of William prevailed; and Robert, though he had been joined by many of the young nobility of Normandy, Anjou, and Maine, secretly aided by the King of France, and privately supplied with money by his mother Queen Matilda, was driven out of Normandy, and took shelter with his remaining followers in the castle of Gerberoy in France. His father pursued him thither, and besieged the castle; which was defended with great valour, and many vigorous sallies. In one of these Robert encountered, wounded, and unhorsed his father; who discovered himself, by crying out as he fell to the ground. As soon as the son heard his parent's voice, he was pene-

⁵⁴ Orderic. Vital. p. 545. M. Paris, p. 7. R. Hoveden, p. 262.

trated with remorse and horror at what he had done, sprung from his horse, fell on his knees, and most earnestly implored his pardon. William, chagrined with the indignity of his fall, the smart of his wound, and the many vexations which his son's rebellion had occasioned, did not immediately relent; but mounting his horse, and pronouncing a curse instead of a pardon, returned to his army⁵⁵. There reflecting coolly on his son's submissive behaviour, his parental affections began to operate: he raised the siege, returned into Normandy, and by the intercession of Queen Matilda, and other common friends, he was reconciled to Robert and his adherents.⁵⁶

A.D. 1079.

While William resided in Normandy, some events happened in England which seemed to require his presence. Malcolm King of Scotland invaded Northumberland, A.D. 1078., and carried off much booty and many prisoners⁵⁷. Walcher Bishop of Durham, and Earl of Northumberland, was killed May 14. A.D. 1080., at Gateshead, with about one hundred of his attendants, by the family and friends of one Leulf, an English nobleman, who had been basely murdered by Liothwin and Gillebert, two of the bishop's favourites⁵⁸. William, on his return into England, in autumn this year, sent an army into the north under the command of his son Robert,

A.D. 1080.

William
sends his
son Robert
with an
army into
the north.

⁵⁵ M. Paris, p. 7. Orderic. Vital. p. 572, 573.

⁵⁶ R. Hoveden, p. 262.

⁵⁷ Id. *ibid.* Chron. Saxon. p. 184.

⁵⁸ Simon Dunelm. col. 48.

who

A.D. 1080. who had come with him out of Normandy, and of his own uterine brother Odo Bishop of Bayeux, and Earl of Kent, to chastise the Northumbrians, and retaliate the injuries which had been done by the King of Scotland. It was in the course of this expedition that Robert built a castle, near the place where the Bishop of Durham had been slain, which he called *Newcastle*, from which the flourishing town of Newcastle upon Tyne derived its origin.⁵⁹

A.D. 1081. *Doomsday book.* Tranquillity being now restored to William's family and dominions, he began about this time, or perhaps a little later, the famous survey of England, which doth more honour to his memory than any of his victories. This survey was conducted by commissioners, taking information upon oath in each county, of the following particulars; the name of every town or village;—who held it in King Edward's days;—who now possessed it;—how many freemen, villains, and cottagers were in it;—how many hides of land were in each manor; how many of these were in the demesne;—how much wood-land, meadow, and pasture;—how much it paid in taxes in King Edward's days;—and how much now;—how many mills and fish-ponds.——And in some places they were even more particular, and took an account of the horses, black cattle, swine, sheep, and hives of bees⁶⁰. All these informations were returned by the commissioners, and

⁵⁹ R. Hoveden, p. 263.

⁶⁰ Chron. Saxon. p. 186.

formed into the two valuable volumes of Doomf- A.D. 1081.
day-book, which are still preserved in the ex-
chequer. By this survey William acquired an
exact knowledge of the possessions of the crown,
the church, the nobility, and land-owners; and
of the number, quality, and wealth of all his
subjects; from whence so wise a prince might
derive manifold advantages.

About this time Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, for- A.D. 1082.
feited the favour of William his uterine brother, William
feizes his
uterine
brother
Odo.
by whom he had been loaded with benefits. That ambitious prelate, not contented with all
the honours which he enjoyed, had cast his eyes
upon the papal dignity; and in order to secure
his advancement to it on the first vacancy, had
amassed prodigious treasures, and engaged many
powerful friends, with whom he proposed to go
to Rome. William, unwilling to see so great a
mass of money and so many useful subjects
carried out of the kingdom, put a stop to this
design, by seizing Odo in the Isle of Wight, as
he was ready to embark, and confining him in
prison in the castle of Rouen, where he remained
till the King's death.⁶¹

William made a voyage into Normandy this A.D. 1083.
year to visit his queen, Matilda, who had fallen Death of
Queen Ma-
tilda.
into a lingering illness, of which she died on
November 2. That princess, who is said to
have been amiable in her person, virtuous in her
manners, and remarkable for her learning, lived

⁶¹ Orderic. Vital. p. 646. R. Hoveden, p. 263.

A.D. 1083. in great conjugal harmony with her royal consort thirty-three years, and brought him four sons; Robert, who succeeded his father in Normandy; Richard, who was accidentally killed as he was hunting in the New Forest; William and Henry, who were successively kings of England; and five daughters, viz. Cecilia, who became a nun; Constance, who was married to the Duke of Brittany; Agatha, contracted to King Harold in her infancy, and afterwards to Alphonso King of Galicia, but died, before marriage, in her way to Spain; Alice who died young, and Adela, married to Stephen Earl of Blois⁶². William is said to have been so much affected with the death of his queen, that he relinquished all his former amusements; but the truth is, that the few remaining years of his life were so full of alarms, toils, and dangers, that he could have little leisure or inclination for amusement.

A.D. 1084. The greatest uneasiness of the Conqueror at this time proceeded from the intelligence he received, that Canute IV. King of Denmark, was making prodigious preparations for invading England, in which he was to be assisted by Robert Le Frison Earl of Flanders, with six hundred ships⁶³. To repel this dreaded invasion, he collected a great army, not only of Normans, but of adventurers from all the neighbouring countries; brought them over to England, and quartered them upon his English subjects along

⁶² Orderic. Vital. p. 638. W. Malmf. p. 63.

⁶³ W. Malmf. p. 60.

the sea-coasts, where they continued several months, committing many acts of oppression on the unhappy English, who were also loaded with a grievous tax, for the pay of their oppressors⁶⁴. At length William was relieved from his apprehensions by the welcome news, that Canute, discouraged by contrary winds, and dissensions among his nobles, had relinquished his intended expedition: on which he dismissed his mercenary soldiers, to the great joy of his subjects.

A.D. 1084.

Though there was no open war, there was no cordial peace between the Kings of France and England at this time; and the great barons on the borders of their respective territories, made destructive inroads on each others lands. This irregular kind of war continued while William was in England, to the disadvantage of his subjects. Hubert de Beaumont, a famous partisan of those times, killed several Norman barons, and enriched himself with their spoils⁶⁵. The Conqueror, resolving to visit his dominions on the continent to put a stop to these depredations, summoned all his prelates, nobles, and knights, to meet him at Salisbury on the first of August; where he obliged them to renew their oaths of fealty, and extorted from them great sums of money; with which he soon after sailed for Normandy, carrying with him Edgar Atheling, who was still an object of his jealousy, and of the affections of the English⁶⁶.

A.D. 1086.

William
visits Nor-
mandy.⁶⁴ Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 212.⁶⁵ Orderic. Vital. p. 648.⁶⁶ Chron. Saxon. p. 187.

A.D. 1087.

Death of
William.

The misunderstanding which had long subsisted in secret between the Conqueror and Philip King of France, now broke out into an open war, occasioned, as it is said, by a witticism of that King, who hearing that William, who was now become very corpulent, had been some weeks confined by sickness, said, "He hoped his brother of England would soon be delivered of his great belly, and be able to come abroad." This sarcasm being reported to William, put him into a violent passion, and made him swear, "by the brightness and resurrection of God (his usual oath), that as soon as he came abroad he would light up a thousand fires in France for the joy of his recovery⁶⁷." Nor did he neglect to execute this threat. For in the last week of July, when the corns and fruits were all ripe, he entered France at the head of a powerful army, destroying every thing as he advanced; and having taken the town of Mante, he commanded it to be set on fire and reduced to ashes. But here a stop was put to his destructive career. For being overheated by the warmth of the weather and flames of the town, and having received a bruise in his belly by the pummel of his saddle, he was seized with a slow fever, of which he died at the abbey of St. Gervais near Rouen, September 9. in the sixty-third year of his age, and the twenty-first year of his reign over England⁶⁸. He en-

⁶⁷ M. Paris, p. 9. M. Westm. p. 230.⁶⁸ Orderic. Vital. p. 655.

joyed

joyed the full exercise of his reason during his sickness, made his will with great deliberation, bequeathing his dominions on the continent to Robert his eldest son, the kingdom of England to his second son William, and a sum of money to his youngest son Henry. To appease the reproaches of his conscience for the cruelties which he had committed, he commanded all the state-prisoners to be released, directed great sums of money to be distributed to the churches and the clergy, and practised all the other tricks of superstition that were then in vogue. He also entertained his courtiers with long discourses on the vanity of worldly greatness; of which they gave the strongest proof, by every one of them abandoning his remains as soon as he expired.⁶⁹

A.D. 1087.

William I. commonly called *the Conqueror*, was strong, healthy, and graceful in his person, though his countenance was rather stern than gracious; and he became corpulent in the latter part of his life. He excelled in riding, shooting with the bow, and in all martial and manly exercises. His passion for hunting was excessive, in gratifying which he was guilty of the most horrid cruelties. He had ambition and boldness to attempt, and courage and wisdom to execute, the most arduous enterprises, of which his conquest of England is a sufficient proof. He was religious according to the mode of the times in which he lived, and treated the clergy with great

His character.

⁶⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 655.

A.D. 1087. respect when they did not oppose his will. Temperance and chastity were his greatest virtues; ambition, avarice, and cruelty, his most pernicious vices. His government was harsh, arbitrary, and tyrannical, especially to his English subjects; who were reduced so low, that before the end of his reign, there was not so much as one Englishman who was either earl, baron, bishop, or abbot. In a word, William the Conqueror was one of the greatest generals and politicians, but one of the most tyrannical and cruel kings that ever sat on the throne of England.⁷⁰

Succession
and coronation of
William II.

William, surnamed *Rufus*, or the *Red*, from the colour of his hair, second surviving son of the Conqueror, who was present with his father on his death-bed, having obtained his nomination to the crown of England, with a letter of recommendation to Lanfranc Archbishop of Canterbury, did not stay to pay the last duties to his expiring parent, but hastened over the sea to take possession of the crown. As soon as he arrived in England, he got possession of his father's treasures at Winchester, and of the most important fortresses on the coast; and his cause being warmly espoused by Lanfranc, by whom he had been educated and knighted in his youth, he was crowned at Westminster, September 27. by that prelate, assisted by the Archbishop of York, eight other bishops, and many of the chief nobility.⁷¹


⁷⁰ Chron. Saxon. p. 190, 191. W. Malmf. p. 63. Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 212, 213. Ingulph. p. 70.

⁷¹ Orderic. Vital. p. 659. W. Malmf. l. 4. p. 68.

After his coronation he returned to Winchester, A.D. 1087.
 to take a more particular account of his father's
 treasures, which he found to amount to sixty
 thousand pounds in money, equal in weight of
 silver to one hundred and eighty thousand pounds,
 and in efficacy to nine hundred thousand pounds
 of our money; besides gold and silver plate,
 jewels, and other precious effects, to a much
 greater value. With some part of this money he
 paid the legacies which had been left by his fa-
 ther to the churches, the clergy, and the poor;
 by which he gained popularity to himself, as well
 as shewed a regard to the will of a parent, to
 whose affection he had been so much indebted.⁷²

Though the coronation of Rufus had not been A.D. 1088.
 openly opposed, it was secretly disliked by many Conspiracy
 of the chief nobility, who knew his fierce im- against
 perious character; and having great estates in William II.
 Normandy, as well as in England, were sensible
 that it would be impossible to preserve them
 both, if these two countries continued under
 different sovereigns, who would often be at
 variance. These nobles therefore (of whom Odo
 Bishop of Bayeux, Robert Earl of Mortain, the
 two maternal brothers of the late King, Eustace
 Earl of Boulogne, and Robert de Belesme, were
 the chief), being then in Normandy, formed a
 conspiracy for dethroning William, and raising
 his elder brother Robert Duke of Normandy to
 the throne of England. They communicated

⁷² Chron. Saxon. p. 192. Brompt. p. 983.

A.D. 1088.  their designs to Robert, who encouraged them to proceed, and promised to support them with a powerful army. The conspirators came over to England in the end of the last and the beginning of this year, to increase their party, and prepare for the execution of their plot. In the first of these intentions they were not unsuccessful, prevailing upon many, and, amongst others, upon William Bishop of Durham, the King's greatest favourite, to enter into their views. The conspirators thinking themselves sufficiently strong, began to give intimations of their designs, by collecting their followers, and fortifying their castles, rather too soon; which was one great cause of their miscarriage.⁷³

That conspiracy is frustrated.

William, justly alarmed at this formidable combination against him, exerted all his vigour to defeat his enemies, and preserve the crown he had obtained. Observing that the greatest part of the Normans were engaged in the conspiracy, he had recourse to the English, who still constituted the body of the people; and by fair promises of reviving their ancient laws, and of allowing them the liberty of hunting in the royal forests, he persuaded thirty thousand of them to espouse his cause. With these, and such Norman barons as adhered to him, he took the field, and in one campaign reduced the castles of Tunbridge, Pevensey, and Rochester; in the

⁷³ Orderic. Vital. p. 666. Chron. Saxon. p. 193. W. Malmf. l. 4. p. 68.

last of which Odo Bishop of Bayeux, Eustace Earl of Boulogne, Robert de Belesme, and other chiefs of the conspiracy, fell into his hands. At first he resolved to make them feel the utmost rigour of the law; but was at last so much softened by the earnest intreaties of some of their friends, who had been faithful to him, that he spared their lives, allowed them to retire into Normandy, and contented himself with confiscating their estates, which were of great value. Some of these estates he bestowed upon his friends who had assisted him in his distress, and others he retained in his own possession. The Duke of Normandy had made a feeble attempt to support his partisans, by sending a small fleet, with some troops, to their assistance; but they were intercepted and defeated by the English fleet. ⁷⁴

A.D. 1088.

A.D. 1089.

Expedition into Normandy proposed.

By the suppression of this rebellion Rufus was firmly established on the throne of England, and soon forgot all his promises to the unhappy English, who had contributed so much to his establishment. The restoration of their ancient laws and liberties was no more heard of; and instead of allowing them to hunt in the royal forests, to do it was made a capital crime ⁷⁵. He was not so apt to forget injuries as benefits; and retaining a lively resentment against his brother Robert, in whose behalf the late conspiracy had been formed, he determined to be revenged, by depriving him

⁷⁴ Chron. Saxon. p. 193, 194, 195. Orderic. Vital. p. 167, 168. W. Malmf. p. 68.

⁷⁵ W. Malmf. l. 4. p. 70.

A.D. 1089. of his dominions. To facilitate the execution of this design, he corrupted the governors of several strong places in Normandy, particularly of St. Valori and Albemarle, who admitted English garrisons into these towns ⁷⁶. He also held an assembly of his great barons at Winchester, to whom he proposed an expedition into Normandy, to revenge the attempt which had been made to deprive him of his crown; and the proposal was favourably entertained. ⁷⁷

A.D. 1090. Normandy at this time was a scene of great confusion, occasioned by the imprudence and indolence of its sovereign, and the turbulence of its nobility, who made war against each other, as if they had been independent princes. To complete the miseries of that unhappy country, the province of Maine revolted, and attempted to shake off the Norman yoke, which it had always borne with reluctance ⁷⁸. Robert, conscious of his inability to reduce his own subjects to obedience, and resist the threatened invasion from England, implored the protection of Philip King of France; who espoused his cause, and marched at the head of an army to his relief. But of this protection he was soon deprived by the intrigues of his brother William, who, by a great bribe, prevailed upon Philip to abandon Robert, and return with his army into his own dominions. ⁷⁹

⁷⁶ R. Hoveden, p. 265.

⁷⁷ Orderic. Vital. p. 680.

⁷⁸ Id. p. 683.

⁷⁹ Annal. Waverlien. p. 127. R. Hoveden, p. 265.

Rufus,

Rufus, having in the preceding year paved the way for the conquest of Normandy, by gaining many of its nobility to his party, failed into that country with an army about Candlemas this year, with a design to complete the work. At his landing he was met by many Norman barons, who having great estates in England and in Normandy, were very desirous of such an agreement between the two brothers as might secure them in the possession of their fortunes in both countries. At their earnest intercession, a negotiation was set on foot, and at last a peace concluded on the following terms:—That the King of England should keep the county of Ew, the towns of Fischamp, Albemarle, and all other places of which he had got possession; in return for which the barons of Robert's party should be restored to their estates in England, and William should assist Robert to reduce the province of Maine and the rest of Normandy to his obedience. By another article it was declared, that if either of the two brothers died without issue, the other should succeed to his whole dominions⁸⁰. This peace was guaranteed by twelve of the most powerful barons of each party, who solemnly swore to see it faithfully observed.

A.D. 1091.
Peace
made be-
tween Wil-
liam and
Robert.

No person had so much reason to be dissatisfied with this peace, as Prince Henry, the Conqueror's youngest son; who, by the first article, saw himself in danger of being stripped of the Co-

Prince
Henry be-
sieged by
his two
brothers.

⁸⁰ Chron. Saxon. p. 197. R. Hoveden, p. 265.

tentin,

A.D. 1091. tentiu, a country of Normandy, which he had purchased from his brother Robert with a part of the money left him by his father; and by the second article, he beheld himself deprived of all hopes of succeeding either to Normandy or England, on the demise of one of his brothers without heirs. This young prince being brave and resolute, determined to defend his property; and collecting some troops who were willing to follow his fortunes, he seized and fortified Mount St. Michael, resolving to defend it to the last extremity. His two ungenerous and too powerful brothers having reduced all the rest of the Cotentin, came and laid siege to the place where he had taken shelter. In the course of this siege the King of England was thrown from his horse, and on the point of being slain by a common trooper. The place was defended with great obstinacy; but the besieged, after suffering great hardships from thirst and hunger, were obliged to surrender from a total failure of their provisions, and were allowed to go where they pleased. After this the unfortunate Henry wandered from place to place for some time, with a few faithful friends, without any settled residence or means of support.⁸¹

A.D. 1092.
and 1093.
Rupture
between

After the pacification above mentioned, and the reduction of the Cotentin, Robert Duke of Normandy came into England with his brother

⁸¹ Chron. de Mailrofs, p. 161. T. Radborn, p. 264. W. Malmf. p. 69. Orderic. Vital. p. 697.

William,

William, and assisted him in his war with Malcolm King of Scotland, which will be more particularly related in the history of that country. This harmony between the two brothers was not of long duration. For Robert, discovering that his brother still continued his intrigues on the continent, and endeavoured to increase his party among the Norman barons, left England in discontent about Christmas A.D. 1092., and returned into his own dominions. Rufus falling dangerously ill at Gloucester in the following Lent, was seized with great remorse for his vices, and particularly for his tyrannical and oppressive government; and made many solemn promises of amendment; which were all forgotten as soon as he recovered.⁸²

A.D. 1093.

William
and Robert.

Duke Robert, after his return into his own country, discovered so many machinations of his brother William to debauch his subjects and disturb his government, that he was greatly irritated, and sent him an angry message, demanding his immediate appearance in Normandy to fulfil the conditions of the late treaty. William complied with this requisition, and went over to the continent in the spring; but with no good intention. The two brothers had an interview in presence of the lords of both parties who had sworn to see the late agreement performed by their respective sovereigns. This interview terminated in an open breach; for which William

A.D. 1094.

Hostilities
commenced.⁸² Chron. Saxon. p. 198, 199.

A.D. 1094. was universally condemned. That ambitious prince, thinking he had now found an opportunity of completing the ruin of his unhappy brother, by attacking him when he was at variance with many of his subjects, immediately began hostilities, by seizing some castles. But Robert was rescued from this imminent danger, by the interposition of the King of France, who marched an army to his relief; and by news from England, which obliged William to abandon his enterprize, and return into that kingdom.⁶³

A.D. 1095. A dangerous conspiracy had been formed in his absence by Robert de Moubray Earl of Northumberland, William Earl of Ew, Roger de Lacey, and several other great barons, to dethrone him, and to raise his cousin Stephen Earl of Aumale to the throne. William, naturally alert and keen, marched an army with great expedition into the north, by which he surprised some of the chief conspirators in Newcastle, and took the Earl of Northumberland's brother at Tinmouth. The Earl himself was besieged in his castle of Bamburgh; and attempting to make his escape, he was taken and thrown into prison at Windfor; where he lived in confinement no less than thirty years. Some of the other conspirators were hanged, and others mutilated, and all their great estates confiscated.⁶⁴

⁶³ M. Paris, p. 12. col. 2 Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 214.

⁶⁴ R. Hoveden, p. 267. W. Malmf. l. 4. p. 70.

Robert Duke of Normandy was seized with the epidemic frenzy of croifading, which about this time broke out in Europe, and, with several other princes, resolved to engage in an expedition into the East, for rescuing the city of Jerusalem, and the Holy Land, out of the hands of the Turks. To procure money for putting this rash design in execution, he proposed to mortgage his duchy three (some say five) years, to his brother William, for ten thousand marks. William joyfully accepted the proposal, extorted the money from his subjects in England, chiefly from the clergy, carried it over, paid it to his brother, and received the valuable pledge.⁸⁵

A.D. 1096.

Robert mortgages his dominions to William.

William, having taken possession of Normandy, came over into England about Easter, and made an unsuccessful expedition into Wales, in which he lost a great number of men, as he had done in some former expeditions. Tired with these fruitless attempts to reduce the Welsh, he commanded several castles to be built on the borders to check their incursions into England, and returned into Normandy in November, where his presence was wanted.⁸⁶

A.D. 1097.

Expedition into Wales.

His possession of Normandy involved William in wars with the King of France, and other neighbouring princes, who had seized certain territories which he pretended belonged to that

A.D. 1098.

War with France.

⁸⁵ Eadmer. p. 35. M. Paris, p. 20. col. 2. W. Malmf. p. 76. Orderic. Vital. p. 724.

⁸⁶ Annal. Waverlien. p. 140.

duchy.

A.D. 1098. duchy. These wars were carried on all this year with various success, but without any very decisive event, except the recovery of the province of Maine from the brave Heli de la Fleche, who had defended it with great bravery several years; but being now taken prisoner, was obliged to resign it to regain his liberty.⁸⁷

A.D. 1099.
War with
Heli de la
Fleche.

William, after the reduction of Maine, returned into England, and kept the festival of Whitsuntide in Westminster-hall, which he had built, and which on account of its great dimensions and magnificence, was an object of universal admiration⁸⁸. When Heli de la Fleche was set at liberty, he made an offer of his service to the King of England; which being rejected, he was inflamed with the most violent resentment, and retired, threatening to be revenged for the indignity. William, equally fierce and haughty, instead of seizing his person before he was out of his reach, commanded him, with a disdainful air, to be gone and do his worst⁸⁹. The indignant baron, retired to his estate, spent his time in preparing for the execution of his revenge. About the beginning of June, getting together a body of troops, he surprised the city of Mans, the capital of Maine; but could not take the castle. The messenger who was sent to acquaint William with this event, found him hunting in the New Forest;

⁸⁷ Orderic. Vital. p. 767. 771.

⁸⁸ Annal. Waverlien. p. 163.

⁸⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 773.

and though he was prodigiously fond of that diversion, he no sooner heard what had happened, than he put spurs to his horse, and rode full speed towards the sea-coast, instantly embarked, though it blew a furious storm, and landed next morning at Barfleur. From thence he proceeded with equal impetuosity to Bonneville, joined his army, and marched towards Mans. Heli hearing of his unexpected approach, raised the siege, and retired to the strong castle of Chateau de Loir⁹⁰. The King, after he had desolated the lands of his enemy, dismissed his forces, and returned to England.

A.D. 1099.

William Duke of Guyenne, neither instructed nor deterred by the calamities which had befallen other princes, and their followers, who had abandoned their own country, and gone to the Holy Land, put himself at the head of a new army of croisaders, and offered to mortgage his duchy to the King of England for a sum of money, to defray the expences of his expedition. Rufus, as ambitious as he was rich, accepted the offer, provided the money, and prepared an army to take possession of his new territories, with which he lay near the sea-coast, waiting for a fair wind to waft him to the continent. On August 2., after dinner, the King, with his brother Prince Henry, and a numerous retinue, went to hunt in the New Forest, where an event happened which put an end to all the projects of

A.D. 1100.

William
killed.⁹⁰ Orderic. Vital. p. 775.

A.D. 1100. this restless and ambitious monarch. Towards evening, when the company were dispersed in pursuit of their game, a buck suddenly springing between the King and one Walter Tyrrel, a French gentleman who excelled in archery, he discharged an arrow at him, which glancing on a tree, struck his royal master on the breast, pierced his heart, and deprived him of life, almost without a groan.⁹¹

His character.

Thus fell William Rufus, in the thirteenth year of his reign, and fortieth of his age, when he was in perfect health, in great prosperity, and full of schemes for the enlargement of his dominions, the increase of his riches, and the gratification of his passions. In his person he was strong and active, of a sanguine complexion, red hair, a stern and haughty aspect, with a flaming in his speech, especially when he was angry. In his temper he was ambitious, covetous, cruel, proud, and passionate; a profane swearer, and scoffer at all religion; addicted to wine and women; vain in his dress; delighting in the society of the loose and profligate of both sexes. His great activity, bravery, and skill in war, would have been virtues, if they had not been employed in robbing his unhappy brother of his dominions, and in disturbing all his neighbours. To his English subjects he was ungrateful and perfidious, violating all his promises,

⁹¹ Chron. Saxon. p. 207. R. Hoveden, p. 268. Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 217. M. Paris, p. 37. W. Malmf. p. 71.

and

and trampling upon all their laws. To his soldiers, and to those who administered to his pleasures, he was profuse of that money which he had extorted from his people by the most oppressive arts. Ralph Flambard, a man of mean birth and most abandoned character, his greatest favourite, and the chief instrument of his tyranny, was raised by him to the highest honours, being bishop of Durham and chief justiciary of the kingdom⁹². It is no wonder that a prince of this odious character died unlamented. As he was never married, he left no legitimate children.

It is now time to take a transient view of such of the civil and military transactions of the other British nations as have not been already mentioned.

The civil and military history of Wales in that period which is the subject of this section, consists entirely of the successions of the petty princes of its several districts, their mutual wars against each other, or their predatory incursions into the English territories. A minute detail of these unimportant events would be tedious; a general one would be unsatisfactory and unintelligible; it may be better therefore to refer such of our readers as desire to be more particularly informed, to the work quoted below.⁹³

⁹² Chron. Saxon. p. 207, 208. W. Malmf. l. 4, passim. Eadmerus, p. 14. 47. Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 217.

⁹³ The History of Cambria, now called *Wales*, written in the British language, translated by H. Lloyd, and continued by D. Powel, D.D. p. 104--157.

A.D. 1066.
to 1100.

History of
Scotland.

Malcolm III. surnamed *Canmore*, or *Great-head*, had been peaceably seated on the throne of Scotland, about nine years before the landing of William Duke of Normandy; and during that time had lived in peace, and even in friendship, with Edward the Confessor, by whom he had been assisted in recovering the kingdom of his ancestors from the usurper Macbeth⁹⁴. Many of the English nobility, who had been engaged in the unfortunate battle of Hastings, or had been concerned in unsuccessful insurrections against the Conqueror, fled into Scotland, and were kindly received by Malcolm; especially after his marriage with Margaret, sister of Edgar Atheling, the favourite of the English nation, and the true heir of the English crown. At the instigation of these noble refugees, and in support of the pretensions of his brother-in-law, he made several inroads into England (the most considerable of which have been occasionally mentioned), which were retaliated by similar inroads of the Conqueror and his successor into Scotland. In consequence of a pacification made between William Rufus and Malcolm, in one of these incursions, A.D. 1092., the King of Scotland the year after paid a visit to the English court at Gloucester; but met with such haughty and ungracious treatment, that he returned home in discontent, and raised an army, with which he invaded England for the fifth time⁹⁵. This

⁹⁴ See vol. 3. ch. 1. p. 165.

⁹⁵ Chron. Saxon. p. 198, 199. R. Hoveden, p. 266.

was a most unfortunate expedition; for King Malcolm, with his eldest son Prince Edward, falling into an ambush, were both killed, November 13. A.D. 1093., by Robert Mowbray Earl of Northumberland. Queen Margaret was so much affected with the melancholy news of the slaughter of her beloved husband and favourite son, that she died a few days after of grief. Malcolm, who was a brave and good prince, had, by his pious and amiable consort, six sons, viz. Edward, who was slain with his father; Edmund, who embraced a religious life; Ethelred, who died in his infancy; Edgar, Alexander, and David, who were successively kings of Scotland; and two daughters, viz. Matilda, who was married to Henry I. King of England; and Mary, who was married to Eustace Earl of Boulogne.

A.D. 1066.
to 1100.

The surviving sons of Malcolm being young at the time of his death, and the rules of succession to the crown in Scotland being still unsettled, it was usurped by his brother Donald, surnamed *Baan* or *the White*; and the young princes Edgar, Alexander, and David, retired into England; where they were kindly entertained by their maternal uncle Edgar Atheling. Donald is said to have been raised to the throne by that party among the Scots, who had been dissatisfied with the late king, for his great liberality to the English exiles. In order to support himself in his usurpation, he ceded the western isles to Magnus King of Norway, who engaged to assist him

Usurpation
of Donald
Baan, &c.
&c.

A.D. 1066. him against all his enemies. This measure, with
to 1100. some severities exercised against those who refused to swear submission to his authority, soon raised many malecontents, who invited Duncan, natural son of the late king, a brave warrior, in the service of William Rufus, to come into Scotland, and attempt to dethrone the usurper. Duncan complied with the invitation; and coming, attended by some English troops, and being joined by all the friends of Malcolm and his family, Donald found himself too weak to make a stand, and retired into the Western isles about six months after his accession. The greatness of the late conqueror of England had reflected so much honour on bastardy, in which he seemed to glory, that it was little or no obstruction to successions; and Duncan was crowned King of Scotland, to the exclusion of the legitimate sons of King Malcolm. But this prince having spent his whole life in camps, and being little acquainted with the conduct of civil government, and delighting most in the company of the English and Normans, soon became unpopular, and was murdered by Malpeder Earl of Mearns, a friend of the late King Donald, in the castle of Monteith, A.D. 1095. On the news of this event, Donald left his lurking-place in the isles; and, by the help of his partisans, and an army of Norwegians, once more took possession of the crown of Scotland. But he did not long enjoy this second usurpation. For Edgar Atheling, being furnished with a

body of troops by William Rufus, conducted his nephew Prince Edgar, the eldest legitimate son of the late King Malcolm, into Scotland, about Michaelmas A.D. 1097., defeated the usurper, took him prisoner, and seated the young prince on the throne of his ancestors.⁹⁶

A.D. 1066.
to 1100.

SECTION II.

The civil and military history of Great Britain, from the accession of Henry I. A. D. 1100. to the accession of Henry II. A. D. 1154.

HENRY, the youngest son of William the Conqueror, was in another part of the New Forest pursuing his game, when his brother William was killed; and no sooner heard of that event, than he put spurs to his horse, and galloped to Winchester to seize the royal treasure, in order to usurp the crown; a design equally daring and unnatural, as he knew that his eldest brother Robert, who had a better title, both by primogeniture, and by a solemn compact with the last possessor, ratified by the chief nobility, was alive, and on his return from the Holy Land, crowned with laurels. William de Breteuil, the keeper of the royal treasure, was also in the field, and, suspecting what might

A.D. 1100.
Prince
Henry
usurps the
crown.

⁹⁶ Chron. Saxon. p. 199. 206. Buchanan Hist. l. 7. p. 199.
Boeth. Scot. Hist. l. 12. p. 269. Fordun. Scot. Chron. l. 5. c. 21—24.

A.D. 1100. happen, rode to Winchester with equal speed. At his arrival he found Prince Henry demanding the keys of the treasury, with many threats; and boldly interposed, declaring, that both the treasure and the crown belonged to Robert his elder brother, to whom both he and the prince had sworn fealty, and that for his use he was determined to keep what had been committed to his charge. The prince, sensible that if he failed in this attempt, he could not hope for success in his chief design, drew his sword, and threatened immediate death to any who should oppose him; and being supported by some nobles who espoused his cause, he got possession of all the treasure; with which he hastened to London, the capital of the kingdom¹. Here, by great gifts, and greater promises, he made so many friends, that he was crowned at Westminster by Maurice Bishop of London, on Sunday 5th August, in less than three days after his brother's death². So eager was he to seize the glittering prize, and so well had he employed his time.

Popular
measures
of King
Henry I.

Though Henry had thus obtained the crown by his courage and celerity, he was sensible that he could not keep it without the affections of his people, to gain which he employed every imaginable art of popularity. He recalled Anselm Archbishop of Canterbury, the idol of the

¹ Orderic. Vital. p. 782. Simeon Dunelm. col. 225. R. de Diceto, col. 498. J. Brompt. col. 997.

² Simeon Dunelm. col. 225. R. de Diceto, col. 498.

clergy,

clergy, from his exile: he published a royal charter, full of the most captivating promises of redressing all the wrongs of the two preceding reigns, reviving the laws of Edward the Confessor, and granting all the immunities that the greatest friends of liberty and of their country could desire: he seized Ralph Flambard Bishop of Durham, the detested instrument of his brother's oppressions, and threw him into prison; and effectually to engage the hearts of the native English, who were yet a distinct people from the Normans, he married the Princess Matilda, daughter of Malcolm Canmore, sister of Edgar the reigning King of Scotland, and niece of Edgar Atheling. Besides all this, he banished from court all the profligate companions of his brother's pleasures, set many prisoners of state at liberty, and remitted many debts that were owing to the crown³. By these means his government became very agreeable, especially to the clergy and the common people, who felt a sensible difference between his mild administration and the tyranny of the late reign.

Henry soon found both the necessity and advantage of his popularity. For his injured brother Robert returned from the Holy Land about a month after his accession, was joyfully received by all his Norman subjects, and encouraged to attempt the recovery of the crown of England.

A.D. 1101.
England
invaded by
Robert
Duke of
Normandy.

³ M. Paris, p. 38, 39. Chron. Saxon. p. 208, 209. W. Malmf. l. 5. p. 88. R. Hoveden, p. 269.

A.D. 1101. To this he was also invited by Robert de Belesme Earl of Shrewsbury and Arundel, and his two brothers Roger and Arnulf, William de Warenne Earl of Surrey, Walter Giffard, Yvo de Grentmesnil, and several other English barons, who promised to join him with all their followers⁴. He was further animated to this undertaking by the famous Ralph Flambard, who made his escape out of the tower of London, got over into Normandy, and became as great a favourite with Robert as he had been with Rufus⁵. Spurred on by resentment and ambition, and encouraged by the probability of success, Robert spent the winter and spring in making preparations for invading England. Henry was still more active in preparing for his defence, in which he was greatly assisted by the clergy, and the common people, especially the native English. Anselm Archbishop of Canterbury, to whom he paid great court, espoused his cause with much warmth, attended him in all his motions, and confirmed many in his interest, who were wavering, by threatening them with the wrath of heaven, and the thunders of the church, if they revolted. He even became surety for Henry, to the barons of his party, that he would never break any of his promises, or revoke any of the liberties he had granted, and thereby kept them steady in their attachment⁶. In the mean time Henry fitted out a

⁴ Orderic. Vital. p. 785, 786.

⁵ Id. *ibid*.

⁶ Eadmer. Hist. p. 59.

fleet

fleet to cruise on the coast of Normandy; but the greatest part of the ships were carried over to his brother by their commanders⁷. He also raised an army, composed chiefly of the native English, with a few Norman barons and their followers, with which he marched to Pevensey, about Midsummer, imagining the invasion would have been attempted at that place; but hearing that Robert had landed at Portsmouth, July 19th, and had been joined by his partizans, he directed his march that way.⁸

The two armies, at their approach, being nearly equal, and struck with mutual awe, stood facing each other several days without coming to action. This gave the Archbishop and some barons of both parties, who were anxious about the event of a battle, and desirous of a peace, an opportunity of setting a treaty on foot, which terminated in an accommodation on the following terms. Robert relinquished his pretensions to the crown of England for an annual pension of three thousand marks. All the barons of both parties were restored to all their estates and honours in Normandy and England. Henry gave up to Robert all the places which he held in Normandy; and it was stipulated, that if either of the brothers died without legitimate male issue, the other should succeed to all his domi-

Peace between
Henry and
Robert.

⁷ Chron. Saxon. p. 209.

⁸ Orderic. Vital. p. 787. Simeon Dunelm. col. 226.

A.D. 1101. nions⁹. This peace, according to the custom of those times, was guaranteed by twelve of the most powerful barons of each party¹⁰. After this pacification, both armies were disbanded; and Robert having spent about two months with his brother in great festivity, returned into Normandy.

A.D. 1102. Though the barons of Robert's party were restored to their estates in England by the late treaty, they were not restored to the favour of their sovereign, who secretly resolved to embrace the first opportunity of accomplishing their destruction. He began with Robert de Belesme Earl of Shrewsbury and Arundel, who was at once the most powerful and most disaffected. That nobleman, after the late pacification, retired to his estates, and applied himself with great vigour to the fortifying his old castles, and building new ones; which furnished the King with a pretence to commence hostilities against him; in which he was so successful, that in a short campaign of three weeks, he took all his castles, and obliged him to retire into Normandy¹¹. Soon after his two brothers were also banished; and all the other barons who had joined Robert on his invasion, were, by various means, and under various pretences, either ruined or very much reduced.¹²

⁹ Chron. Saxon. p. 209, 210. Orderic. Vital. p. 788. M. Paris, p. 40. R. Hoveden, p. 269.

¹⁰ J. Brompt. col. 998.

¹¹ R. Hoveden, p. 269.

¹² Orderic. Vital. p. 804. 808.

These severities exercised towards his friends, A.D. 1103.
 excited the most violent emotions of anger in the
 bosom of the honest-hearted but imprudent Robert
 Robert, who came into England to expostulate visits
 with his too artful brother on his breaches of England.
 their late treaty. But he soon found reason to
 repent of this inconsiderate step. For though
 he was decently received, he observed that he
 was carefully watched in all his motions, which
 made him dread the loss of his liberty, for which
 he had made no previous stipulations. To ex-
 tricate himself out of this dangerous situation, he
 resigned his pension of three thousand marks to
 the Queen of England; on which he was per-
 mitted to retire, and returned into Normandy,
 covered with shame, and tormented with vexa-
 tion at his own rashness.¹³

Normandy, at this time, was a scene of great A.D. 1104.
 confusion, through the indolence, imprudence, Henry
 prodigality, and ill government of its sovereign, visits Nor-
 who had lost all authority. The great barons mandy,
 made war against each other, and desolated the and re-
 country with fire and sword. This procured an turns to
 invitation, from several Norman barons, to King England.
 Henry to come over, in order to put a stop to
 these confusions, and restore peace to that un-
 happy country. He joyfully accepted of this
 invitation, and went into Normandy about Mid-
 summer, attended by a body of troops. At his
 arrival he was waited upon by many of the greatest

¹³ Orderic. Vital. p. 805. Chron. Saxon. p. 211.

A.D. 1104. Norman barons, who complained bitterly of the misconduct of their own prince, and implored his protection. He received them in the kindest manner, and, by his promises and liberalities, gained them to enter into his views of depriving his unhappy brother of his dominions. He had also an interview with Robert, in which he reproached him, in very strong terms, for his errors in government, and the miseries which he had thereby brought upon his country. In this interview he obtained from him the sovereignty of the county of Evreux, and the homage of its count. Having thus humbled and weakened his brother, strengthened his own party, and paved the way for the reduction of Normandy, he returned into England.¹⁴

**A.D. 1105.
and 1106.
Expedition
into Nor-
mandy.**

After spending the winter in this kingdom, Henry raised an army in the spring, with which he passed over to Normandy about the end of Lent, and being joined by the Norman barons of his party, he took the field, and proceeded to hostilities, under the hypocritical pretence of defending the churches from violence, and correcting the disorders of the government¹⁵. In this campaign he took the city of Bayeux by storm, after a long siege; and had the city of Caen surrendered to him by the inhabitants: but meeting with a vigorous resistance from the gar-

¹⁴ Orderic. Vital. p. 814.

¹⁵ Orderic. Vital. p. 816. Simeon Dunelm. col. 229. J. Brompt. col. 1001.

rison of Falaise, and winter approaching, he raised the siege, and returned into England; which was at this time grievously harassed with exactions of various kinds, to raise money for executing the King's ambitious projects.¹⁶

A.D. 1105.
and 1106.

The unhappy Duke of Normandy, conscious of his inability to defend himself against the King of England, assisted by so many of his own disaffected subjects, paid a visit to the English court this winter, in hopes of softening his brother's heart by his expostulations. But finding that these hopes were altogether groundless, he returned into Normandy, much dissatisfied with his reception, and determined to prepare for his defence¹⁷. Henry spent the spring and part of the summer of this year in England, regulating the affairs of his kingdom, and making preparations for the total reduction of Normandy; into which he sailed about the end of July, and invested the castle of Tinchebray. The Duke of Normandy, with the assistance of the Earl of Mortaigne, Robert de Belesme, and some other barons, had raised a considerable army, with which he advanced to attempt the relief of that important place. This brought on a battle, September 28th, which was fought with great bravery and doubtful success for some time; but at last, by his superiority of numbers, and the valour of the English, Henry obtained a complete victory, and took his brother Robert,

A.D. 1106.
Henry
conquers
Norman-
dy.

¹⁶ Chron. Saxon. p. 212.

¹⁷ Id. p. 213.

A.D. 1106. Edgar Atheling, and many other noble persons, prisoners¹⁸. This victory determined the fate of Normandy, and the gates of all its castles, towns, and cities, were thrown open to the conqueror. In the castles of Falaife he found William, the infant son and heir of his brother, and committed him to the custody of Helie de St. Saen, who had married a natural daughter of Duke Robert. About the middle of October, Henry held an assembly of the prelates, barons, and military tenants of the duchy, at Lisieux, in which he resumed all the lands which had been granted by his brother, and made some good regulations for preventing robberies, and restoring order and good government.¹⁹

A.D. 1107. Henry having completed the conquest, and regulated the affairs of Normandy, conducted his captive brother, and other noble prisoners, into England, in the spring of this year. Determined to keep what he had acquired, he committed Duke Robert, and his cousin and most powerful friend the Earl of Mortaigne, to prison; nor could any intreaty ever prevail upon him to set either of them at liberty. The former, after a tedious confinement of almost twenty-eight years, died in the castle of Cardiff, in Glamorganshire, A. D. 1134.²⁰ The imbecility of Edgar Athe-

Henry
commits
his brother
Robert,
&c. to
prison.

¹⁸ Simeon Dunelm. col. 230. J. Brompt. 1002. Chron. Saxon. p. 214. Orderic. Vital. p. 821.

¹⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 822.

²⁰ Annal. Waverlien. p. 144. 151. W. Malmf. l. 5. p. 89. M. Paris, p. 43. c. 1.

ling procured him a milder fate: being set at liberty, he retired into the country; where he sunk into so great obscurity, that the time and other circumstances of his death are not preserved in history.²¹

Henry I. was now in the zenith of his prosperity, being in the prime of life, the richest, the most respected, and most powerful prince in Europe; and yet he was far from being happy. At some seasons he was tormented with remorse for the injuries he had done his unhappy brother, though he was not disposed to remove that remorse by repairing those injuries, but by building abbeys, which some of our monkish historians insinuate was the most effectual way of making peace with conscience²². His chief uneasiness, however, was occasioned by William, the infant son of Robert, who, he apprehended, might one day find friends to enable him to assert his rights, and take vengeance on him for his own and for his father's sufferings. To prevent this, and get the person of the prince within his power, he sent Robert de Beauchamp, with a body of horse, to surprise the castle of St. Saen, and seize the prince in the absence of his guardian. But this plot miscarried by the vigilance and fidelity of the servants, who fled with their precious charge, and delivered him in safety to his faithful guardian. Henry was so ungenerous as to confiscate all the estates of Helie de St. Saen; which

A.D. 1107.

A.D. 1108.

William
his brother's son,
preserved
from
Henry.

²¹ W. Malmf. p. 59. col. 1.²² M. Paris, p. 42. col. 2.

A.D. 1108. obliged that nobleman to wander from one court to another with his royal pupil, who was every where admired for the beauty of his person, and pitied for the severity of his fate.²³

A.D. 1109. The fame of Henry's prosperity, power, and riches, was so great, that Henry V. Emperor of Germany, sent ambassadors to demand his only daughter Maude, or Matilda, a princess of eight years of age, in marriage. The treaty was soon concluded, the princess was solemnly affianced, and her marriage portion, raised by a tax of three shillings on every hide of land in England, was paid to the ambassadors; who conducted her the year after into Germany, to be educated in the Imperial court.²⁴

A.D. 1111. to 1113. The effect of the intrigues of Helie de St. Saen in favour of his pupil now began to appear; and several of the neighbouring princes discovered a disposition to divest Henry of his foreign dominions, which obliged him to make a voyage to the continent for their protection²⁵. He continued in Normandy about two years, constantly engaged in wars or negociations with the King of France and Fulk Earl of Anjou, who had espoused the cause of his oppressed unhappy nephew Prince William. The Earl of Anjou had conceived so great an affection for that unfortunate prince, that he not only entertained him in his court, but promised to give him his daughter

²³ Orderic. Vital. p. 837, 838.

²⁴ Chron. Saxon. p. 215, 216.

²⁵ Orderic. Vital. p. 838.

Sibylla in marriage. Henry, alarmed at this, A.D. 1111.
to 1113.
employed various means to prevent the intended match; and at last, finding all others would be ineffectual, he proposed a marriage between one of the Earl's daughters and his own only son, Prince William, the heir of all his dominions. This proved too strong a temptation to the Earl of Anjou, who broke the contract between his daughter and William the son of Robert, on pretence of their consanguinity; and immediately contracted another of his daughters, named *Matilda*, to William the son of Henry, who stood exactly in the same relation. This contract produced a peace between Henry and the Earl, which was soon after followed by a personal interview between the Kings of France and England, in which all their disputes were compromised²⁶. The faithful Helie de St. Saen, seeing his pupil abandoned by his most powerful protectors, retired with him to the court of Baldwin Earl of Flanders, where he was kindly received and entertained.

Henry, having dissipated the storm that threatened him in his foreign dominions, returned into England in the month of July A.D. 1113., and enjoyed an uncommon degree of tranquillity for five years, residing sometimes in England and sometimes in Normandy, as his affairs required. To secure the succession of all his dominions to his only legitimate son Prince

A.D. 1113.
to 1118.
Five years
of tranquillity.

²⁶ Orderic. Vital. p. 838.

A.D. 1113.
to 1118.

William, was the great object of his attention in this peaceful period. With this view he went over into Normandy in the end of September A. D. 1114., and obliged all the prelates and barons of that country to swear fealty, and do homage to his son, as his heir and successor in that duchy²⁷. He returned again into England in July A. D. 1115., and in the month of March, the year after, held a great council of all the prelates, earls, and barons, of the kingdom, at Salisbury; in which he acquainted them, that he was about to make a voyage into his foreign dominions; and not knowing what might befall him there, he required them to take an oath of fealty to his son as heir to the crown; with which requisition all the members of that assembly immediately complied²⁸. After Easter A. D. 1116., he sailed into Normandy, where he continued no less than four years.²⁹

Henry in
vain en-
deavours
to get his
brother's
son into
his hands.

Notwithstanding all these precautions, Henry was still jealous and apprehensive that his nephew William might one day dispute the possession of his dominions with himself, or the succession to them with his son; to prevent which, he endeavoured to entice him to his court, by promising to give him three earldoms in England, and to educate him with as much care and tenderness as his own son. But that young

²⁷ Chron. Saxon. p. 218. M. Paris, p. 45. col. 2. Hen. Hunt. p. 218. col. 1. R. Hoveden, p. 271.

²⁸ Eadmer. l. 5. p. 117. Chron. de Mailros, p. 164.

²⁹ Chron. Saxon. p. 220. &c.

prince

prince did not think it safe or decent to put himself into the hands of an uncle who had sup-
 planted his father in the throne of England, de-
 prived him of the duchy of Normandy, and still
 detained him in prison.³⁰

A.D. 1113.
 to 1118.

The prosperity which Henry had for some
 time past enjoyed now began to be interrupted,
 and was succeeded by a train of very great ca-
 lamities. On the first of May this year he lost
 his amiable and virtuous consort Queen Matilda,
 and Robert Earl of Mellent, his chief confident
 and most faithful friend, died on the 9th of
 June³¹. About the same time several circum-
 stances concurred to excite a great number,
 both of foreign and domestic enemies, to con-
 spire against him, and attempt his ruin. He had
 secretly assisted his nephew Theobald Earl of
 Blois, in a revolt against his sovereign, Louis the
 Gross King of France; which so much irritated
 that monarch, that he openly espoused the cause
 of William, the son of the captive Duke Robert,
 and also prevailed upon the two potent princes,
 Baldwin Earl of Flanders, and Fulk Earl of
 Anjou, to declare in his favour³². This formi-
 dable alliance against Henry was much strength-
 ened by the accession of Amaure de Montfort,
 the Earls of Ew and Aumale, and many other
 Norman barons; who having been disoblged by
him, or obliged by his *brother*, embraced the

A.D. 1118.
 and 1119.
 Confe-
 deracy
 against
 Henry.

³⁰ Orderic. Vital. p. 866.

³¹ Id. p. 843.

³² Id. l. 12. p. 841.

A.D. 1118. party of his nephew William³³. In a word, the
 and 1119. disaffection of the Norman nobles became so
 general, that he knew not whom to trust. Even
 Eustace Earl of Breteuil, his own son-in-law,
 who had married Juliana, one of his natural
 daughters, joined the confederates³⁴. Besides
 all these open enemies, he was surrounded by
 secret traitors, who betrayed his secrets and
 formed plots against his life, on which a despe-
 rate attempt was made by his own daughter Ju-
 liana Countess of Breteuil, who discharged an
 arrow out of a cross-bow at her father's breast.³⁵

The con-
 federacy
 defeated.

In the midst of all these dangers and difficul-
 ties Henry did not lose his courage or presence
 of mind. He preserved himself from his secret
 enemies, by sleeping in his armour with his
 sword and shield by his side, and a guard of his
 most faithful servants watching in his apart-
 ment³⁶. At the beginning of the war, seeing
 himself unequal to his enemies in the field, he
 wisely kept on the defensive, waiting for some
 favourable events, and endeavouring to divide
 the confederates by his intrigues. Nor was it
 long before some favourable events happened;
 and his intrigues began to operate. Baldwin
 Earl of Flanders, who was one of the bravest,
 most powerful, and inveterate of his enemies,
 received a mortal wound in a skirmish, of which
 he soon after died³⁷. He detached the Earl of

³³ Orderic. Vital. l. 12. p. 843.

³⁴ Id. ibid. p. 848.

³⁵ Id. ibid. p. 846. 848.

³⁶ Segur, in Vit. Lud. Grossi, p. 308.

³⁷ Orderic. Vital. p. 843.

Anjou from the confederacy, by solemnizing the marriage between his son Prince William and the Earl's daughter, in the month of June A.D. 1118. and 1119. 1119.; the delay of which had been the cause of his discontent³⁸. He gained over almost all the Norman barons who had revolted, by granting them every thing they desired; and the King of France saw himself deserted by all his allies. The contest being now more equal, Henry boldly took the field; and hearing that the French had formed the design of surprising the castle of Noyon, near Andeley, he marched towards that place, at the head of a body of five hundred horse, and met the King of France on the plain of Brenneville, near the castle which he intended to surprise, at the head of four hundred of the same kind of troops, 20th August. A fierce encounter immediately ensued, in which Prince William, son of Duke Robert, who led the vanguard of the French, displayed great valour, broke the first ranks, and penetrated to his uncle, who received two blows on the head from William Crispin, a valiant knight, and was only saved by the goodness of his helmet. The French did not second the first attack with equal bravery. The party who made it were almost all taken prisoners; and Prince William, who commanded it, being unhorsed, made his escape with much difficulty. The King of France observing this disaster, and dreading to fall into

³⁸ Orderic. Vital. p. 851.

A.D. 1118.
and 1119.

the hands of his enemy, fled with great precipitation to Andeley, where he arrived under the conduct of a peasant, having lost his way in a wood, and been separated from all his troops. This battle was more famous for the quality of the combatants (two kings, two princes, and many noblemen of the first rank being engaged in it), than for the slaughter, as only three knights were killed. This was owing to their being clad in complete armour, and more intent on taking prisoners to enrich themselves with their ransom, than on shedding blood³⁹. Not long after this battle, the Pope, Calixtus II., coming into France, mediated a peace between the two monarchs, which was concluded in the beginning of the next year on these conditions:—That all the castles that had been taken on both sides should be restored; and all prisoners set at liberty.⁴⁰

A.D. 1120.
Prince
William
drowned
in return-
ing from
Norman-
dy.

Henry spent the greatest part of this year in Normandy, extinguishing every spark of disaffection, and securing still farther the succession of his beloved son (about which he was exceedingly anxious), by making the nobility renew their oaths of fealty to him as his successor⁴¹. He invited such of the Norman barons as had adhered to him in his late distress to accompany him into England, to receive the rewards of their fidelity; which greatly swelled his train, as well

³⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 853, 854, 855.

⁴⁰ Id. *ibid*.

⁴¹ W. Malmf. l. 5. p. 93.

as occasioned some delay. At length all things being in readiness for the voyage, the King embarked at Barfleur, 25th November, towards evening, and sailed for the English coast, where he arrived the next morning. One of the finest vessels in the fleet, called *the White Ship*, was allotted for Prince William and his retinue, which was very numerous, consisting of all the young nobility. The prince being detained a little after his father, ordered three casks of wine to be given to his ship's crew, with which they made too free, and were many of them intoxicated when they sailed about the close of day. Thomas Fitz-Stephen, the commander, having promised to the prince to overtake the rest of the fleet, crowded all his sails, as well as plied his oars. But when the ship was passing through the water with great velocity, she suddenly struck upon a rock, called *the Catte-raze*, with such violence, that she started several planks, and almost overset. In a moment all was terror, uproar, and confusion. The boat was immediately let down, the prince and some of the prime nobility put into it; and having got clear of the ship, might have reached the shore, which was at no great distance. But the prince was so much affected with the shrieks of his natural sister the Countess of Perche, that he commanded the boat to put back to take her in, and save her life. As soon as the boat approached the ship, where despair had destroyed all distinctions of rank, such multitudes

A.D. 1120. titudes poured into it, that it instantly sunk, and all on board it perished. In a word, of three hundred persons on board this ship, of which about fifty were sailors, eighteen were ladies of the first rank, the rest, besides the prince, and his natural brother Richard, were young noblemen and gentlemen and their necessary attendants, only one man escaped with life, to describe this mournful scene. This was one Bertoud, a butcher of Rouen, who being a strong man, and warmly clothed, climbed to the top of the mast, which enabled him to keep his head above water; where he continued all night, and was taken up next morning by some fishermen. The report of this deplorable disaster reached England the day after, but was carefully concealed from Henry for three days, who was all that time in a state of the most tormenting anxiety about the safety of his darling son. At length, when the secret could be no longer kept, and none of the courtiers would consent to be the messenger of such ill news, a boy, properly instructed, came in all in tears, and falling at the King's feet, told him in few words, that the prince, and all on board the White Ship, were lost. The stout-hearted Henry was so thunder-struck with this dreadful news, that he staggered, sunk on the floor, and fainted away; in which state he continued a considerable time. When he recovered from his faint, he broke out into the bitterest lamentations, describing the good qualities and great actions of his

his two sons, and of the young nobles who had A.D. 1120.
perished with them.⁴²

When Henry had given vent to the violence of A.D. 1121.
his grief, he gradually resumed his usual fortitude, Henry's
and applied to business with his wonted ardour. second
The death of so many great personages, who marriage.
perished with his son, put it in his power to reward
his surviving friends beyond their expectations, by
putting some of them into vacant offices, and
marrying others to rich heiresses or wealthy
widows⁴³. But his chief concern was about an
heir to his dominions; as his only legitimate
daughter, Maude the Empress, was in a distant
country; and the want of an apparent heir might
revive the hopes of his nephew William, of
whom he was always jealous, and might give
occasion to revolts. To prevent these inconve-
niencies, he resolved to enter into a second mar-
riage, and executed that resolution with so much
celerity, that he was married at Windsor, 29th
January, A.D. 1121., to Adelais, daughter of
Godfrey Earl of Lovaine, a lady of great beauty,
who was solemnly crowned Queen the day after in
the same place⁴⁴. But this marriage proving
unfruitful, did not answer his expectations, nor
prevent the mischiefs which he apprehended.

Though Henry had reduced his foreign domi- A.D. 1121.
nions to a state of great tranquillity and subjec- to 1126.
tion in his late expedition, they did not continue Confe-
deracy

⁴² Orderic. Vital. p. 868, 869, 870. W. Malmf. l. 5. p. 94. against
col. 1. Hen. Hunt l. 7. p. 219. col. 1. R. Hoveden. p. 273. Henry de-

⁴³ Orderic. Vital. p. 870. feated.
⁴⁴ Eadmer. l. 6. p. 136, 137.

long

A.D. 1121. long in that condition. The Norman barons,
to 1126. being freed from their oaths of fealty to a successor, by the death of the prince to whom they had been given, began to cast their eyes towards William the son of Robert (whom they always loved and pitied), and to form plots in his favour. Some of those in whom Henry reposed the greatest confidence, and on whom he had bestowed the greatest favours, joined in this conspiracy; particularly Gualeran Earl of Mellent, and his brother Robert, the sons of the late Earl of Mellent, his greatest favourite. The conspirators were much encouraged by the accession of Fulk Earl of Anjou, who once more embraced the interest of the unfortunate William, and renewed the contract of marriage between him and his daughter Sibylla. This conspiracy was conducted with great secrecy for some time; but at length it was discovered by the King of England; who acted on this occasion with his usual spirit, and was attended with his usual good fortune. Having appointed Roger Bishop of Salisbury regent of the kingdom, he sailed from Portsmouth on the week after Whitsuntide A.D. 1123. with a considerable fleet and army; arrived safe in Normandy; and falling upon the conspirators before their plot was ripe for execution, he took several of their castles, and gained other advantages. On the 25th March A.D. 1124. William de Tancarville, the King's chamberlain, had the good fortune to surprise the Earl of Mellent, Robert his brother, the Earl of Evreux, and

and almost all the chief conspirators, as they were riding carelessly between Beaumont and Vatteville, and took them all prisoners. This turned the scale entirely in favour of the King; and all the other barons who had been concerned in the revolt, hastened to make their peace with him on the best terms they could procure. The Earl of Anjou, seeing his confederates crushed, was also reconciled to him, consenting to the dissolution of the contract between Prince William and his daughter; who, though they had been twice contracted, were never married. That ever unfortunate prince, beholding all his expectations blasted, returned again to the court of France; where he was soon after married to the Queen's sister, and received with her the countries of Pontoise, Chaumont, Mante, and Vexin François, which enabled him to make some feeble attempts upon Normandy, and obliged the King to continue some time longer abroad for its defence.⁴⁵

While Henry resided in Normandy, his son-in-law, the Emperor Henry V. died, and his widow (having had no children) returned to her father's court, and was conducted by him into England, a little before Michaelmas A.D. 1126. As there was now little probability of his having any children by his present Queen, the Empress, of whom he had always been very fond, became

A.D. 1121.
to 1126.

A.D. 1126.
The Empress
Maude declared
heir to
Henry.

⁴⁵ Orderic. Vital. p. 876—884. Chron. Saxon. p. 223—230. M. Paris, p. 47, 48.

A.D. 1126. the object of all his hopes and cares; and he was ardently desirous of securing to her the succession of his dominions. With this view, he held a great council of all the prelates and nobles of the kingdom at Christmas, and engaged them to swear fealty to his daughter, as his successor, in case he should happen to die without a legitimate son, or sons; and his nephew Stephen, who afterwards usurped the crown, was the first of the laity (except the King of Scotland) who swore on this occasion. ⁴⁶

A.D. 1127. In the spring of this year the King of England received the disagreeable news of the murder of his friend Charles the Good, Earl of Flanders, and of the succession of William his elder brother's son to that great earldom. Though Henry was a prince of uncommon fortitude, there were two persons whom he always dreaded; his nephew William, on account of the justice of his pretensions to his dominions, and Fulk Earl of Anjou, on account of his power, and vicinity to Normandy. He had been at infinite pains to prevent an intimate connection between these two princes; and now that he more than ever dreaded their union, in order to prevent it effectually, he proposed a marriage between his only legitimate child, the Empress Maude, and Geoffrey the Earl's eldest son. This advantageous proposal was joyfully embraced both by the Earl and his son: the Empress was sent over to Nor-

⁴⁶ W. Malmf. Historiæ Novellæ, l. i.

mandy,

mandy, under the conduct of Robert Earl of Gloucester, in the summer of this year, and the King arrived in the same country on the 26th August following.⁴⁷

A.D. 1127.

All preliminaries being settled, the nuptials of the Empress with Geoffrey Martel, Prince of Anjou, were celebrated with great magnificence at Rouen, on the octaves of Whitsuntide, in the presence of the King of England and the Earl of Anjou. Henry, among other arts which he had employed to distress his unhappy nephew, and put it out of his power to assert his right to his dominions, had stirred up Thierry Landgrave of Alsace to lay claim to the earldom of Flanders. This occasioned a war between these two princes, in which William was victorious; but in a trifling skirmish, he received a wound in the hand, which brought on a mortification, of which he died in the abbey of St. Bertin, July 27th. In his last moments he wrote a letter to his uncle Henry, begging his pardon for all the trouble he had given him, and earnestly intreating his favour for his faithful guardian Helie de St. Saen, and a few other friends who had adhered to him in all his fortunes⁴⁸. The death of this brave and amiable prince, who had struggled with adversity from his cradle to his grave, put an end to all the fears and dangers of his ambi-

A.D. 1128.

Death of
Prince
William,
Henry's
nephew.

⁴⁷ Chron. Saxon. p. 230. W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 1. Hen. Hunt. l. 7.

⁴⁸ Orderic. Vital. p. 385, 386. M. Paris, p. 49. col. 1. W. Gemeticen, l. 7. c. 16.

tious

A.D. 1128. tious uncle, who thenceforward enjoyed a profound peace.

A.D. 1129. Henry having spent the former part of this
to 1136. year in Normandy, in receiving the submissions
Henry's of the barons who had revolted, and restoring
death. them to their estates, came over to England in harvest, and resided here about a year in great tranquillity. The Empress Maude being now the great object of his affection, he made a voyage to the continent about Michaelmas A.D. 1130., to pay her a visit; and that he might enjoy the pleasure of her company, in which he very much delighted, he brought her with him into England at Midsummer A.D. 1131., and held a great council of the prelates and nobility in September, at Northampton, where he engaged them all to renew their oaths of fealty to her as his successor in the throne.⁴⁹

Soon after this, the Empress returned to her husband, and Henry remained in England all this and the succeeding year. The unfruitfulness of his daughter's marriage had for some time been his chief uneasiness, and this was at last removed by the agreeable news of her being delivered of a son, at Le Mans, in March A.D. 1133. Transported with joy at this event, he celebrated his Easter with great festivity at Oxford, where all the nobility swore fealty once more to the Empress, and also to her infant son named Henry.⁵⁰

⁴⁹ Chron. Saxon. p. 235, 236. Annal. Waverlien. p. 150, 151.

⁵⁰ Ypodigma Neustriæ, p. 444. R. de Diceto, col. 55.

Being desirous to embrace his daughter, now ^{A.D. 1129.} more endeared to him than ever, he set sail for ^{to 1136.} Normandy 7th August; from whence he never returned into this kingdom, though he survived three years and some months. The Empress was delivered of a second son A. D. 1134., and of a third the year after; and the aged King became so doatingly fond of his daughter and her children, that he could not leave them, though he was much displeased with the impatient ambition of his son-in-law. At last, having spent the day, November 25th, in hunting in the forest of Lyons, and supped plentifully that evening on lampreys, his favourite dish, he was seized with a fever in the night, of which he died on Sunday, December 1st, A.D. 1135., in the sixty-seventh year of his age, and thirty-sixth of his reign.⁵¹

Henry I. was in his person of middle stature, ^{His character.} strong and well-made, his hair brown and bushy, his eyes serene, and his countenance agreeable. He had excellent natural parts, improved by a learned education, which procured him the surname of *Beauclerc*, or *The Fine Scholar*, and made him very famous for his eloquence. In his humour he was facetious, and in his deportment affable. He was unquestionably the greatest general and wisest politician of the age in which he flourished, and to this he was much indebted for

⁵¹ Chron. Saxon. p. 237. Orderic. Vital. p. 901. W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. I. 1. M. Paris, p. 50.

A.D. 1129.
to 1136.

his success and prosperity. His most commendable qualities were, his tender affection for his children, — his courage, — diligence, — activity, — and strictness in the administration of justice, though this last degenerated sometimes into cruelty. His greatest vices were his lewdness, avarice, and ambition : which were all excessive; as appears from the number of his natural children, of which he had six sons and seven daughters; — from his oppressive taxes and great treasures; — and from his usurping the kingdom of England and duchy of Normandy.⁵²

Stephen
Earl of
Boulogne
usurps the
crown.

Henry, in the last years of his life, had been at great pains to secure the succession of his dominions to his only legitimate daughter Maude the Empress, and her children. With this view he had engaged all the prelates, nobles, and great men, of England and of Normandy, to take solemn and repeated oaths to maintain that succession; and they had done this with the greatest appearance of cheerfulness and cordiality, especially after the death of Prince William, his eldest brother's son. But all these precautions were in vain. This was the age of successful usurpations. No sooner was Henry's death made known, than a bold usurper started up, who, to the astonishment of all the world, in violation of every right, — of his own most solemn oaths, — and of the strongest ties of gratitude, mounted the empty throne, and seized

⁵² W. Malm. l. 5. Orderic. Vital. l. 12, 13. W. Gemeticen, l. 7.

the crown. This was Stephen Earl of Boulogne, ^{A.D. 1129.}
second surviving son of Stephen Earl of Blois, ^{to 1136.}
and of Adela daughter of William the Con-
queror. He was indeed one of the nephews of
Henry I., but had no shadow of right to his suc-
cession while his daughter Maude, her three sons,
and his own elder brother Theobald Earl of Blois,
were alive. He had professed himself so zealous
an asserter of the rights of the Empress Maude,
that he had a violent contest with the King's
natural son Robert Earl of Gloucester, for the
honour of being the first of the laity in taking
the oath to support the succession of that prin-
cess to the throne⁵³. Being a younger son of
no very opulent family, he had been indebted
for all his wealth and power to the munificence
of his uncle Henry, who had given him the
earldom of Mortaigne in Normandy, the for-
feited estate of Robert Mallet in this kingdom,
and at last procured him the marriage of his
niece, the Princess Matilda, the only child of
Mary of Scotland, his Queen's sister, and of
Eustace Earl of Boulogne, in whose right he en-
joyed that earldom, and all the great estates of
the family in England⁵⁴. But ambition ren-
dered Stephen regardless of all obligations, as
well as blind to all the dangers and difficulties
of gaining and keeping a crown to which he had
no title. The improbability and impudence of

⁵³ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 1. ⁵⁴ W. Gemeticen, l. 7. c. 34.

A.D. 1129. his attempt contributed not a little to its suc-
 to 1136. cess.⁵⁵

Stephen's
 coronation.

Stephen was at Boulogne when he heard of his uncle's death, and from thence he hastened into England. When he arrived at Dover, the inhabitants, suspecting his intention, shut their gates against him, and he met with a similar repulse at Canterbury. Not discouraged with these unfavourable beginnings, he proceeded to London; where he was received by the lower kind of citizens, among whom he was very popular, with the loudest acclamations⁵⁶. There were two persons in England at this time without whose consent it was hardly possible for any one to mount the throne. These were, William Corboil Archbishop of Canterbury, and Roger Bishop of Salisbury, chief justiciary and regent of the kingdom. Though both these men had been raised by Henry to the highest honours, and had been the most forward in taking the oaths of fealty to his daughter Maude; yet Stephen gained them to embrace his interest, by the assistance of his brother Henry Bishop of Winchester, and by artfully adapting his temptations to their tempers. William was a conscientious, but a weak and credulous man; and therefore he made one of his creatures, Hugh Bigod, to take a solemn oath before him, that he had

⁵⁵ Annal. Waverlien. p. 152.

⁵⁶ Gesta Regis Stephani, apud Duchon, p. 928.

heard

heard the late King, on his death-bed, disinherit his daughter Maude, absolve his subjects from their oaths, and declare Earl Stephen his successor⁵⁷. A most impudent and shameless perjury! For Henry, with his last breath, had appointed his daughter to succeed him in all his dominions, in the hearing of five earls and many other nobles⁵⁸. To the Bishop of Salisbury, whose avarice and ambition were insatiable, he promised every thing he chose to ask for himself or his friends, without any intention to perform what he promised⁵⁹. Having by these arts gained these two great prelates, he was solemnly crowned and anointed King at Westminster, by the Archbishop, on December 22d. At this ceremony there were only two other bishops, those of Winchester and Salisbury, not one abbot, and but very few of the secular barons present⁶⁰. By the assistance also of his brother, Henry of Winchester, he got possession of the late King's treasures in that city, consisting of one hundred thousand pounds in money, besides plate and jewels to an immense value. With this treasure he bribed many of the clergy and nobility to violate their oaths, and come over to his party, and took into his pay an army of soldiers of fortune, with which all the countries of Europe abounded at that time.⁶¹

A.D. 1129.
to 1136.

⁵⁷ M. Paris, p. 51. Gesta R. Stephan. p. 929.

⁵⁸ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 1.

⁶⁰ Id. ibid.

⁵⁹ Id. ibid.

⁶¹ Id. ibid. p. 101.

A.D. 1136.

Stephen's
arts of po-
pularity.

The friends of the Empress Maude were so astonished at this unexpected revolution, that they remained silent and motionless, being destitute of a head or leader. For the Empress, and her husband Geoffrey Plantagenet, were in Anjou; and Robert Earl of Gloucester, the late King's natural son, the most virtuous, wise, and powerful nobleman of their party, was in Normandy, executing some parts of his father's last will. These circumstances gave Stephen an opportunity of increasing the number of his adherents, which he improved to the best advantage. He had sworn at his coronation whatever the prelates and nobles who were present pleased to dictate, and confirmed what he had sworn by a charter, which he ratified and enlarged in a great council held at Oxford in the beginning of this year, which gained him many friends⁶². He permitted the clergy to annex this condition to their oaths of fealty, "That they would keep their oaths as long as the King supported the vigour of discipline;" or, in other words, as long as he allowed them to rule as they pleased: and he obtained a confirmation of his election from the Pope; which two things brought over all the clergy to his side⁶³. To the secular nobility he denied nothing that they pleased to ask; and in particular allowed them all to fortify their castles. A most pernicious grant, which was productive of infinite mischiefs to the coun-

⁶² W. Hemingford, c. 57.

⁶³ R. Hagulfstad, p. 313, 314.

try!

try! With the common people, and with the lower citizens of London, he ingratiated himself by his condescending deportment, and a certain jocular humour, very pleasing to them; and of incredible advantage to him on this occasion⁶⁴. But, notwithstanding all these arts, this daring usurpation involved the author of it, his friends, his family, and his country, in many great calamities.

David King of Scotland was the first who appeared to support the cause of the Empress his niece, by entering England with an army, in vindication of her rights. He took Carlisle and Newcastle, and over-run the counties of Cumberland and Northumberland; but being joined by a few of the English barons, he entered into a negotiation with Stephen, who had arrived in the north at the head of an army in the beginning of Lent. This negotiation terminated in a peace, by which Stephen ceded the county of Cumberland and city of Carlisle to the King of Scots, granted the earldom of Huntingdon to Prince Henry his eldest son, and promised not to dispose of the earldom of Northumberland till he had examined the pretensions of that prince, who claimed it as grandson and heir of Waltheof, the last Anglo-Saxon earl.⁶⁵

Stephen
makes
peace with
David
King of
Scotland.

Robert Earl of Gloucester spent the first part of this year in Normandy in a state of great per-

Earl of
Gloucester
submits to
Stephen.

⁶⁴ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 1. p. 102. col. 1.

⁶⁵ W. Hemingford, c. 58.

A.D. 1136. plexity. He was firmly attached to the interests of his sister Maude, by inclination as well as by his oaths; but he soon became sensible, that unless he submitted, in appearance at least, to Stephen, he must relinquish all his great estates in England, and with them his power of promoting the cause which he had so much at heart. After long deliberation, he complied with Stephen's invitation, came over to England at Easter, and took the oath of fealty; but with this remarkable condition annexed, "That he should be no longer bound to keep this oath than the King kept all his engagements to him and maintained him in all his rights and liberties"⁶⁶:" a condition (says a cotemporary historian) which he well knew the King would not long observe.⁶⁷

A.D. 1137.

Stephen
obtains
Norman-
dy.

The Empress and her husband were as unfortunate in Normandy as they had been in England. This was partly owing to the hereditary hatred which had long subsisted between the Normans and Anjouines, and partly to the desire of the Norman barons to be under the same sovereign with the English, that they might enjoy their estates in England. As soon, therefore, as these barons heard that Stephen had taken possession of the throne of England, they invited him to come over and assume the sovereignty of their duchy. After the pacification with the King of Scots, and the submission of the Earl of Gloucester, he

⁶⁶ M. Paris, p. 51.

⁶⁷ W. Malms. Hist. Novel. l. 1. p. 102. col. 1.

found himself at liberty to comply with that invitation, and made a voyage into Normandy about the middle of Lent this year⁶⁸. Soon after his arrival in that country, he had an interview with Louis le Jeune King of France; with whom he had formed an alliance, by contracting his son Prince Eustace to the Princess Constantia the sister of that king, who granted the investiture of Normandy to his future brother-in-law. Stephen spent the rest of this summer in opposing the attempts of Geoffrey of Anjou, who had invaded Normandy, and at last concluded a truce with that prince for two years, engaging to pay him an annuity of five thousand marks.

A.D. 1137.

After this, King Stephen employed his forces in reducing some castles, which were the haunts of robbers; but was much retarded in his progress by the violent animosities that arose between his Norman forces and the mercenary troops he had brought with him out of England under the command of William d'Ypres, a famous adventurer of those times; who also engaged him in another affair, in which he acquired no honour⁶⁹. Robert Earl of Gloucester had remained about a year in England, endeavouring with great art, and the most impenetrable secrecy, to form a party among the nobility in favour of the Empress; and then sailed into Normandy to prosecute the same design. William d'Ypres

Stephen
miscarries
in his de-
sign to
seize the
Earl of
Gloucester.

⁶⁸ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 222.⁶⁹ Orderic. Vital. p. 909, 910.

advised

A.D. 1137. advised Stephen, who suspected that the earl was engaged in such intrigues, to seize his person, and formed a plot for that purpose. But Robert having received a hint of this plot, kept at a distance from the court, though often invited, which convinced the King that his design was discovered. Dreading a rupture with the Earl at this time, whose power and popularity he well knew, with much difficulty he procured an interview, in which he made many apologies for what was past, and took a solemn oath, in the presence of the Archbishop of Rouen, “ That he would never again form any design against the person or liberty of the Earl.” Robert affected to be satisfied; but knew Stephen too well to repose any confidence in his oaths.⁷⁰

A.D. 1138. King Stephen, without having been able to compose the disorders in Normandy, found it absolutely necessary to return to England, where all things were falling into confusion. David King of Scots had invaded Northumberland, to which his son Prince Henry had a claim; but being a pious prince, and much under the influence of the clergy, he was prevailed upon, by Thurstin Archbishop of York, to delay the prosecution of his son’s pretensions till the King’s return⁷¹. Stephen rejected the demands of the Scotch ambassadors; at which David was so much offended, that he entered Northumber-

⁷⁰ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 102.

⁷¹ R. Hagulstad, sub ann. 1137.

land in the beginning of this year, with an army, A.D. 1138.
 which committed the most cruel ravages, burning all the towns, villages, and churches, and sparing neither men, women, nor children. These cruelties were chiefly perpetrated by the Gallowideans, who were too ferocious to submit to discipline. The King of England hearing of these devastations, marched into the north at the head of a great army, and, upon the Scots retiring, pursued them as far as Roxburgh. While the two armies lay facing each other near that place, Stephen discovered such symptoms of disaffection among his own troops, that he did not think it prudent to risk a battle, but returned into the south, where his affairs had taken an unfavourable turn.⁷²

Robert Earl of Gloucester had never been satisfied in his own mind with the oath of fealty that he had taken to Stephen; and having consulted many clergymen, and even the Pope himself; and they having all declared, that he was bound to observe the former oath that he had taken to his sister the Empress; he sent a message from Normandy to King Stephen, at Whitsuntide this year, recalling his homage, and renouncing his allegiance to that King, both on account of his former oath, and on account of Stephen's having violated the condition annexed to his oath of fealty⁷³. This was a signal to

Confederacy
 against
 Stephen.

⁷² R. Hagulfstad, sub ann. 1138. Ailred. Hist. Bell. Standardi, p. 318, &c.

⁷³ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. i. p. 102.

those

A.D. 1138.

}

those English barons, who, in concert with the Earl of Gloucester, had resolved to raise the Empress to the throne; and many of them retired to their castles, and prepared for the execution of that design. Stephen on this occasion displayed great activity and courage; and in the course of this year he was so fortunate as to take several of these castles, and either punished their owners, or obliged them to return to his obedience.⁷⁴

Battle of
the Stand-
ard.

While he was thus engaged in the south, the Scots invaded Northumberland, and penetrated as far as North Allerton, where the famous battle of the Standard was fought August 22d, between them, and an army raised by William Earl of Albemarle, Walter Espec, Roger Mowbray, Robert de Bruce, Bernard de Baliol, William de Percy, Robert de Ferrers, and other northern barons; in which the Scots were defeated with considerable loss⁷⁵. King David having collected his scattered forces at Carlisle, returned to the siege of Werk Castle, which he reduced by famine. Alberic Bishop of Ostia, the Pope's legate in England, waited upon the King of Scotland at Carlisle, about Michaelmas, and endeavoured to bring about a peace between the two British monarchs; but without effect. This, however, was accomplished a few months after, by the more powerful mediation of Queen Maude,

⁷⁴ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 222.

⁷⁵ This was called *The Battle of the Standard*, from a remarkable standard erected on a wheel-machine in the centre of the English army.

wife of King Stephen, and niece of King David, A.D. 1138.
 who, in an interview with her uncle at Durham,
 concluded a peace on these terms:—That the
 earldom of Northumberland should be granted
 to Henry Prince of Scotland; in return for which
 he and his father should live in peace with Ste-
 phen, and not assist his enemies⁷⁶. After this
 peace Prince Henry accompanied his cousin
 Queen Maude to the English court.

King Stephen had been so successful in the last A.D. 1139.
 campaign, that he might perhaps have triumphed
 over all his enemies, and prevented the future
 calamities of his reign, if he had not quarrelled
 with the clergy. Stephen's
 quarrel
 with the
 bishops.
 Sensible of his imprudence in
 granting liberty to his nobles of fortifying their
 castles, of which grant the clergy had also availed
 themselves, he became earnestly desirous of get-
 ting some of the strongest of these castles into
 his own possession. Roger Bishop of Salisbury,
 who had long been prime minister to Henry I.,
 and high justiciary of the kingdom, had built
 several strong castles; particularly one at the De-
 vizes, that was esteemed the most beautiful and
 magnificent fortress then in Europe⁷⁷. Alex-
 ander Bishop of Lincoln, and Nigell Bishop of
 Ely, his two nephews, and his natural son Roger,
 who was chancellor of England, had also for-
 tified their castles. The King, resolving to begin
 his operations with this powerful family, which

⁷⁶ R. Hagulstad, p. 320, &c. Ailred. de Bell. Standard. p. 330, &c.

⁷⁷ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 223.

A.D. 1139. he suspected of disaffection, invited them to a great council of the nobility at Oxford, June 24th; and they with some doubt and hesitation obeyed the summons. At their arrival at Oxford a quarrel happened, or, as some cotemporary historians affirm, was designedly raised, between the servants of Alan Earl of Brittany, and those of Bishop Roger, about their lodgings, in which many persons were wounded, and one knight was killed. The King affected to be highly incensed at this breach of the peace within the verge of his court, and commanded the bishop, and all his friends to be apprehended. The Bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln, with the chancellor, were seized; but the Bishop of Ely, lodging without the town, made his escape, and fled to his uncle's castle of the Devizes, which he determined to defend. When the bishops and the chancellor were brought before the King, they were commanded to surrender all their castles, as an atonement for their offence. They professed themselves willing to make any reasonable compensation; but refused to deliver up their houses. Upon this the King's great confident, and executioner of all his violent measures, William d'Ypres, was sent with his mercenaries to besiege the castle of the Devizes, carrying with him the Bishop of Salisbury, its owner, a prisoner, and his son the chancellor, in chains. When he came before the castle, he summoned the Bishop of Ely to surrender; threatening, that if he did not, he would starve his uncle to death.

When this had no effect, he sent a message to Maude of Ramsey, the Bishop's concubine, and the chancellor's mother, who was in the castle, "that if it was not immediately delivered up, he would hang her son before her eyes." Knowing the sanguinary nature of the man, and trembling for the fate of a beloved son, she persuaded the commander to surrender this impregnable fortress; in which was found no less than forty thousand marks of the Bishop's treasure, which was seized by the King. The Bishop of Lincoln was carried in the same manner before his castles of Newark and Sliford, and prevailed upon their commanders to surrender them, in order to preserve him from being starved to death. When the King had got all their castles and treasures into his hands, the bishops and chancellor were set at liberty; but the old Bishop of Sarum was so much affected with this sad reverse of fortune, that he died soon after of a broken heart.⁷⁸

These rash and violent proceedings, against persons of the greatest dignity in church and state, made a prodigious noise. The clergy universally took the alarm, and cried out, that the church and religion were on the brink of ruin. The King's own brother, Henry Bishop of Winchester, the Pope's legate in England, having for some time past been discontented, embraced

A.D. 1139.

Stephen summoned to appear before a council of the clergy.

⁷⁸ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 103. Orderic. Vital. p. 919, 920. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 944, 945. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 223. R. Hoveden, ad ann. 1139.

this

A.D. 1139. this opportunity of gratifying his resentment. By virtue of his legatine commission he called a council of the clergy to meet at Winchester, August 30th; and boldly summoned the King to appear before them to answer for his conduct. Stephen did not stoop so low as to appear in person; but he sent some of his chief nobility to demand the reason of his being summoned; with Aubrey de Vere, an eloquent lawyer, to plead his cause. The legate opened the council with a most inflammatory speech, painting the injustice, violence, and cruelty, of the King's proceedings against the bishops in the blackest colours; and concluded with this declaration,—“That neither
“ the fear of losing his brother's favour, nor
“ even of losing his own life, should deter him
“ from putting their sentence, whatever it should
“ be, in execution.” The King's orator aggravated the insolence of the bishops, and the circumstances of the riot at Oxford, as much as possible; and pretended, that they had voluntarily surrendered their castles and treasures to the King to atone for their offences. On the second day of the council, the Archbishop of Rouen, the only clergyman who espoused the King's cause, made a still better defence; affirming that the bishops had merited all they had suffered for transgressing the canons of the church, by fortifying their castles, and acting in a military capacity. But all this would not have prevented a sentence of excommunication against the King, and all who had been concerned in the late trans-

transactions, if some of the nobles had not laid their hands on their swords, and put the members of the council in fear; and if Aubrey de Vere had not taken the dangerous and humiliating step of appealing to the Pope in the King's name. This put a stop to all further proceedings, and the council broke up September 1st.⁷⁹ A.D. 1139.

When the nation was in this ferment, the Empress Maude landed in England, September 30th; and was received, with her brother Robert Earl of Gloucester, and her retinue, consisting only of an hundred and forty knights, into Arundel castle, by her stepmother Adelais, the Queen-dowager. The Earl of Gloucester, leaving the Empress in this strong castle, set out with only twelve knights in his company, and travelling through by-ways, with great caution, arrived safe at Bristol, without being discovered. As soon as King Stephen, who was besieging Marlborough, heard of the landing of his competitor for the crown, he marched with great expedition, and invested the castle where she had taken shelter. The Queen-dowager, dreading his resentment, sent him an apology for having admitted the Empress into her castle, which, she said, she could not deny to the only daughter of her late husband King Henry; intreated him to respect the ties of blood, and the sacred laws of hospitality, and allow the Empress to retire to

⁷⁹ R. Hagulfstad, p. 337. Gervas, Chron. p. 1347, 1348. W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 103, 104.

A.D. 1139. her brother's castle at Bristol. This strange request was seconded by the King's brother, Henry Bishop of Winchester; and, to the surprise of all the world, Maude was honourably escorted by that prelate, and by Walleran Earl of Mellent, her greatest enemy, and Stephen's greatest confidant, and safely delivered to her brother the Earl of Gloucester. This, it must be confessed, is a most astonishing event, and, like some other things in the story of this reign, hath more the appearance of romance than of real history. That Stephen should conduct his rival to the only place where she could do him hurt; that Maude should trust her person in the hands of her greatest enemies; and that they should faithfully discharge their trust, are all equally incredible; but so well attested by contemporary historians, that their truth can hardly be doubted⁸⁰. We shall endeavour to account for this in another place⁸¹. The Empress was conducted by her brother to his castle of Gloucester; where she resided a considerable time, at the expence and under the protection of Milo, governor of that castle, one of the richest and most powerful noblemen of those parts.⁸²

A.D. 1140.

A most
calamitous
year.

The year 1140 was one of the most calamitous that had ever been seen in England. War, in its most horrid forms, raged from one end of the kingdom to the other; and the whole nation was

⁸⁰ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 103, 104. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 223. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 946.

⁸¹ See chap. 7.

⁸² Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 948.

inflamed

inflamed with more than civil fury. Not only A.D. 1140.
the great barons, but all the petty lords of
castles, of which there were several hundreds in
the kingdom, declared for the King or for the
Empress, and made cruel war on those of the
opposite party with whom they were intermixed.
Many of these castles were no better than dens
of robbers, or, as the author of the Saxon Chro-
nicle calls them, devils, who sallied forth, and
plundered and murdered all parties without dis-
tinction. The smoke of burning towns, villages,
monasteries, and churches, was every where to
be seen. Commerce ceased; and even agricul-
ture was in many places discontinued; which
brought on a dreadful famine, by which many
thousands perished. Though there were an in-
credible number of surprises, skirmishes, and
sieges, in the course of this year, which it would
be tedious to relate, there was no general action
that contributed to bring this destructive quarrel
to a period. All was an irregular kind of war,
in which torrents of the noblest blood of Eng-
land flowed in vain.⁸³

Stephen displayed the greatest courage and A.D. 1141.
activity in defending his cause, but injured it by
his imprudence. He withheld the castle of Lin-
coln from William de Roumora, Earl of Lincoln,
half-brother to Ralph Earl of Chester, though
they were both his friends; and the two Earls,

Stephen
taken
prisoner at
Lincoln.

⁸³ Chron. Saxon. p. 238, 239. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 848.
Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 224. where see a Latin poem on the miseries of
this year.

A.D. 1141. having got possession of it by surprise, lived in it with their families, without discovering the least disposition to desert their party. The citizens of Lincoln being zealous royalists, acquainted the King that their castle was carelessly guarded, and might be easily taken, promising him their assistance in the attempt. Stephen, too often rash in his resolves, flew to Lincoln with his army, and invested the castle on Christmas day A. D. 1139. The Earl of Chester made his escape, hastened into Cheshire, and raised all his followers in those parts; but not thinking himself strong enough to raise the siege, he applied to the Earl of Gloucester, who was his father-in-law, for assistance; promising, that both he and the Earl of Lincoln would declare for the Empress. Gloucester, though he had been much offended with his son-in-law, for adhering so long to the adverse party, being ardently desirous of relieving his daughter in her distress, and gaining two such powerful barons to his side, complied with this request, and instantly began his march; on which he was joined by the Earl of Chester and his forces. The united armies having passed the Trent, with much difficulty, early in the morning, February 2d, found their enemies drawn up without the walls of Lincoln in order of battle; the cavalry on the two wings, and the infantry in the centre, with the King on foot at their head. The Earl of Gloucester drew up his army in the same manner: one of his wings of horse was commanded by the Earl of Chester, and the other wing

wing was composed entirely of noblemen and gentlemen who had lost their estates in this quarrel. These began the battle; and being animated with the two most powerful passions, revenge and hope, they threw away their spears, drew their swords, and advanced with such impetuosity, that their antagonists, who expected to have tilted with their spears as usual, were seized with a panic, and fled almost without fighting. The mercenaries on the other wing, commanded by William d'Ypres, were also put to flight by the Earl of Chester and his followers. The main body of the King's army was now assaulted on all sides, and, after a long and valiant struggle, was entirely broken. Stephen having performed prodigies of valour, was taken prisoner, with some of his bravest followers, who scorned to desert their master in distress. The Earl of Gloucester, to whom the King surrendered, treated his royal captive with great humanity, presented him to his rival the Empress in the castle of Gloucester, and then conducted him to the castle of Bristol, where he was confined.⁸⁴

By this great defeat, and the captivity of the King, the royalists were quite dispirited; and many of them made their submissions to the Empress, who had an interview with the Pope's legate, Henry Bishop of Winchester, in a field

The Empress acknowledged Queen.

⁸⁴ *Gesta Regis Stephani*, p. 952. *W. Malmf. Hist. Novel.* l. 2. p. 106. *Chron. Saxon*, p. 241. *Hen. Hunt.* l. 8. p. 224, 225. *R. Hoveden*, p. 278, 279, 280.

A.D. 1141. near that city, March 2d, in which she persuaded that prelate to abandon his brother in his distress, and acknowledge her title to the crown of England, and all the dominions of her father, by promising to allow him the chief direction of affairs. The Empress made her triumphant entry into Winchester the day after, and was conducted to the cathedral by the legate, who publicly recognized her Queen of England, and denounced a curse on all who refused to submit to her authority. A few days after, Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury, and several other great men, both of the clergy and laity, having obtained the permission of the imprisoned King, made their submissions to her at Wilton: from whence she proceeded to Oxford, where she kept the festival of Easter with great pomp. The legate, in consequence of his convention with her, convened a great council of the prelates, abbots, and principal clergy, with deputies from the city of London, at Winchester, April 7th. Having first consulted privately with the prelates, next with the abbots, and, lastly, with the archdeacons, and obtained their consent to the acknowledgment of the Empress, he opened the council with a very artful speech, which is preserved by a contemporary historian, who was present, and heard it with great attention⁸⁵. He began with high encomiums on the felicities of his uncle Henry's reign; mentioned their

⁸⁵ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 106.

having

having sworn to support the succession of his daughter Maude ; but that she delaying to come and take possession of the throne, his brother Stephen had been permitted to reign. He then aggravated the errors of his brother's government, particularly in imprisoning bishops, and oppressing the church and clergy. " For which crimes (said he) God hath rejected him, and given him into the hands of his enemies. And now, that the kingdom may not be without a ruler, we, the clergy of England, to whom it chiefly belongs to elect and ordain a king, having yesterday deliberated on this great cause in private, and invoked the direction of the Holy Spirit, did and do elect the daughter of the pacific, rich, glorious, good, and incomparable King Henry, to be our queen, and promise her our loyalty and support." To this all the members of the council gave their consent, by their acclamations or their silence. On the second day of the council the London deputies were introduced, and told the council, " That they did not come to debate, but to petition for the liberty of their King ; and that the whole community of London, with all the barons, lately admitted into it, earnestly desired this of the legate, the Archbishop, and all the clergy." The legate told the deputies what had been done in the council the day before : which they promised to report to their constituents. The council concluded on the third day, with pronouncing a sentence of

A.D. 1141.

A.D. 1141. excommunication on several persons who still adhered to the King, and particularly on one William Martel, who had plundered the legate's baggage⁶⁶. The Earl of Gloucester was at great pains in soothing the citizens of London, and at length prevailed upon them to admit the Empress; who entered the city a few days before Midsummer, and began to make preparations for her coronation. But when her affairs were in this most prosperous train, her own misconduct threw all things into confusion, and occasioned another sudden and surprising revolution.

Haughty
behaviour
of the Em-
press, and
its conse-
quences.

Moderation in prosperity was a virtue unknown to the Empress. Naturally proud and haughty, and elated beyond measure by her late successes, she behaved in an ungracious disobliging manner to her friends, and with great disdain and insolence to those who had been her enemies, even when they came to make their most humble submissions. Conceited of her wisdom, she slighted the advices of her uncle David King of Scotland, who had come to pay her a visit, and of her brother the Earl of Gloucester, to whom she was so much indebted. She confiscated the estates of all who did not immediately submit to her authority, and thereby fixed them in their opposition; recalled all the grants that had been made by Stephen, those to the church not excepted, by which many were

⁶⁶ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 106. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 953.

ruined

ruined in their fortunes, and the clergy were disobliged. Queen Matilda, who was her cousin, and a princess of uncommon merit, made earnest supplications for the liberty of her husband, engaging that he should solemnly resign the crown, and retire into a monastery. But they were all rejected. The citizens of London petitioned for some abatement in their taxes, and the restoration of the laws of Edward the Confessor: in answer to which she upbraided them with their liberalities to King Stephen, and frowned them from her presence. Irritated at this affront, and dreading the severity of her government, they formed a plot to seize her person; which being discovered by one of the accomplices, she made her escape and retired to Oxford.⁸⁷

The behaviour of the legate had for some time been equivocal, and on his declining to appear at court, the Earl of Gloucester made him a visit at Winchester, with a design to penetrate his intentions, which he plainly discovered were not friendly. Upon this the Empress marched suddenly to Winchester, attended by the King of Scots, the Earl of Gloucester, and several other barons, with their followers; and being received into the royal castle, sent a messenger to the legate, who was at his house in the city, to come to court to give his advice on business of importance. The crafty prelate told the messenger,

Empress
besieged in
the castle
of Win-
chester.

⁸⁷ Gesta Stephani Regis, p. 955.

that

A.D. 1141. that he would make ready as fast as possible: but he meant for resistance, and not obedience. Accordingly he dispatched couriers to Queen Matilda, who was at the head of a body of troops in Kent, to the Londoners, and to all the friends of King Stephen, to come to him immediately, with all their followers; and he was so well obeyed, that in a few days he found himself at the head of a very powerful army, with which he invested the castle of Winchester on August 1st. The face of affairs was now greatly changed; the Empress herself, the King of Scotland, the Earl of Gloucester, and all the chief supporters of her cause, being shut up in one castle, in great danger of perishing by famine, or of falling into the hands of their enemies.⁸³

The
Empress
escapes,
but the
Earl of
Gloucester
is taken.

In this extremity the Earl of Gloucester formed a scheme for their deliverance. In those superstitious times, the most hostile armies, by tacit consent, suspended their operations, and relaxed their vigilance, on the festivals of the church. The festival of the Holy Cross was on the 14th of September; and very early on the morning of that day, the Empress mounted on a swift horse, attended by a choice body of troops, marched silently out of Winchester, and made her escape to the Devizes, where she arrived, almost dead with terror and fatigue, and from thence was conveyed in a horse-litter to Gloucester. The King of Scotland also eluded his pursuers, and

⁸³ Gesta Stephani Regis; p. 955.

reached

reached his own kingdom. But the Earl of Gloucester, who placed himself in the rear, was pursued by a superior force, and taken prisoner at Stokebridge, from whence he was conducted to the castle of Rochester.⁸⁹

This was as fatal a blow to the party of the Empress, as the captivity of King Stephen had been to *his* adherents; and therefore, after that agitation of spirits occasioned by these rapid revolutions had a little subsided, a negotiation was set on foot for an exchange of these two illustrious prisoners, which was accomplished on November 1st. The legate, who had been the chief instrument of the deliverance of his brother from prison, convened a council of the clergy at Westminster, December 7th, in which he acted a part directly opposite to that which he had acted in the council of Winchester eight months before, and concluded with excommunicating all who adhered to the Countess of Anjou, which was the highest title he deigned to give the Empress, who had so lately been acknowledged by him Queen of England.⁹⁰

King Stephen and the Earl of Gloucester exchanged.

Though the civil war still continued, no action of importance happened in the former part of this year, owing to a fit of sickness with which King Stephen was seized in the spring, and to the absence of the Earl of Gloucester, who, at the

A.D. 1142. The escape of the Empress from Oxford.

⁸⁹ J. Brompt. col. 1032.

⁹⁰ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 106—108. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 954—959. Contin. Flor. Worcest. p. 677. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 225.

A.D. 1142. earnest request of all his party, had made a voyage into Normandy, to bring over the husband of the Empress, or her son Prince Henry. The Empress, in the absence of the Earl, took up her residence in Oxford, where she was guarded by the noblemen of her party, who pledged their honour to him that they would protect her till he returned. King Stephen, after his recovery, besieged and took the town and castle of Wareham. From thence he marched with such secrecy and expedition, that he surpris'd the city of Oxford three days before Michaelmas, the Empress with her retinue taking shelter in the castle; which was immediately invested by the King, who swore a solemn oath, that he would not raise the siege till he had taken his rival prisoner. When the siege had continued three months, and the garri-son of the castle was reduced to the last extremity by famine, and the incessant assaults of the enemy, the Empress made her escape from impending ruin, in a manner more surpris- ing than any of her former escapes from Arundel, London, or Winchester. The river being frozen over, and the ground covered with snow, she dressed herself and three trusty knights in white, and issuing silently about midnight, at a postern of the castle, passed all the enemies' centinels unobserved, travelled on foot to Abingdon, and from thence on horseback to Wallingford. Here she was soon after joined by an army that was marching to her relief, under the conduct of her brother the Earl of Gloucester, with her son Prince Henry

in

in his company, which made her forget all her fatigues and terrors. But the castle of Oxford having surrendered the morning after her escape, and the season being unfit for action, the barons with their followers were permitted to return to their own homes.⁹¹

This destructive civil war had now raged so long, and with so much violence, that the strength of both parties was almost quite exhausted, and their attempts to annoy each other became so languid, that they hardly merit the attention of posterity. The Earl of Gloucester formed a scheme for surprising the King, and his brother the Bishop of Winchester, at Wilton, July 1st, this year; and they made their escape with great difficulty, leaving their plate and baggage to their enemy.⁹² During the three succeeding years there was no action of importance; but the war was carried on between the barons of the opposite parties, by attacking each others castles, and plundering each others lands; which served to ruin and depopulate the country, but contributed nothing to the decision of this fatal quarrel.⁹³

Prince Henry had now resided in the castle of Bristol above four years, prosecuting his studies under the care of his uncle Earl Robert, the most learned as well as the most virtuous nobleman of his age, when his father Geoffrey of Anjou sent

A.D. 1142.

A.D. 1143.

The civil war continued.

A.D. 1147.

Misery of England.

⁹¹ Chron. Gervas, p. 1358. Gesta Regis Stephani, p. 959. W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 110.

⁹² Gervas Chron. p. 1358. ⁹³ Id. ibid. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 225.

A.D. 1147. a deputation to conduct him into Normandy, which was entirely reduced to his obedience. The Earl of Gloucester attended his royal pupil to Wareham, where he embarked for the continent about ten days before Whitsuntide. This proved a final parting between the prince and his excellent preceptor, who died at his castle of Bristol, October 31st, this year. The Empress, after the departure of her son, and the death of her brother, had so little comfort or authority in England, that she sailed for Normandy before Lent A.D. 1148., leaving the barons of her party for a time to govern and defend themselves⁹³. King Stephen, during these two years, was so much embroiled with the clergy, and with the barons of his own party, by treacherously seizing their persons, and obliging them to deliver up their castles, that he could make no advantage of these events. “ All England, in the mean time (to use the “ words of a contemporary historian), wore a “ face of misery and desolation. Multitudes “ abandoned their beloved country, and went “ into voluntary exile; others, forsaking their “ own houses, built wretched huts in the church- “ yards, hoping for protection from the sacred- “ ness of the place. Whole families, after sus- “ taining life as long as they could, by eating “ herbs, roots, and the flesh of dogs and horses, “ at last died of hunger; and you might see

⁹³ Annal. Waverlien. p. 156. Gervas Chron. 1363.

“ many pleasant villages without a single inhabitant of either sex.”⁹⁴ A.D. 1147.

Prince Henry being now arrived at the military age of sixteen years, his father Geoffrey sent him through England, with a numerous and splendid retinue, into Scotland, to receive the honour of knighthood from his mother's uncle King David. That ceremony was accordingly performed at Carlisle on Whitsunday, May 22d, with great pomp, in the midst of a prodigious concourse of the nobility of England, Scotland, and Normandy⁹⁵. The Prince having spent about eight months in the court of Scotland, perfecting himself in his military exercises, sailed from thence in January A.D. 1150. into Normandy, which was soon after resigned to him by his father.

Prince Henry, after he had taken possession of Normandy, designed to have made his first essay in arms at the head of his party in England, for the recovery of that crown; but he was prevented from executing that design by a succession of important affairs, which detained him three years on the continent. The first of these affairs was a war with the King of France about the investiture of Normandy, which he at last obtained. The second was the death of his father Geoffrey Earl of Anjou, which happened September 7th, on which he took possession of the territories of Anjou, Touraine, and Maine. The third was his marriage with Eleanor heiress of Guienne

⁹⁴ *Gesta Regis Stephani*, p. 961.

⁹⁵ *J. Hagulstad*, p. 227. *Hen. Hunt.* 1. 8. p. 226.

A.D. 1152. and Poitou, on Whitsunday A.D. 1152., who, about six weeks before, had been divorced from Louis VII. King of France, to whom she had been sixteen years married. There was a great disproportion between the age of Henry, who was only in his twentieth year, and the age of this princess, whose character had also been a little sullied by the breath of fame. But she brought him a great accession of power and wealth by the territories of her family⁹⁶. This excited the jealousy of her former husband; who now seeing his folly in parting with so rich an heiress, formed an alliance against Henry, with King Stephen, his son Prince Eustace, Theobald Earl of Blois, and Geoffrey of Anjou, Henry's younger brother, who was dissatisfied with his appanage. The allies invaded Normandy; which was so well defended, that they were obliged to retire, and abandon their enterprise. While Henry was thus employed on the continent, King Stephen, alarmed at his increasing power, endeavoured to get his eldest son Prince Eustace crowned; but could not prevail upon Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury to perform that ceremony.⁹⁷

A.D. 1153. Prince Henry invades England, and makes peace with Stephen. Prince Henry, having made a truce with the King of France, set sail with a fleet of thirty-six ships, and landed in England, January 6th, attended by a small army, consisting of one hun-

⁹⁶ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 227.

⁹⁷ Annal. Waverlien. p. 137. Gervas Chron. p. 1371, 1372. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 227.

dred and forty knights, and three thousand foot. A.D. 1153.
Though it was now the middle of winter, the flames of the civil war broke out with greater violence than ever, and the Prince, being joined by the barons of his party, besieged the town and castle of Marlborough. King Stephen, having collected all his forces, attempted to raise the siege; but being prevented from executing that design by excessive rains, he returned with his army to London. After the surrender of Marlborough, the Prince marched to Wallingford, where he was met by Stephen at the head of all his troops, which were now become more numerous than those of his competitor. The two armies lay facing each other three days, without coming to an engagement, which gave an opportunity to some of the barons, who deplored the miseries of their country, to propose an accommodation. A treaty was set on foot; the success of which was very much facilitated by the death of Prince Eustace, King Stephen's eldest son, August 17th. After various negotiations, a peace was at last concluded on the following terms: That Stephen should continue to reign during life, and Prince Henry should succeed to the throne at his death, without any opposition. To secure this succession, all the barons of Stephen's party should swear to it, and the most important castles should be put into the hands of Henry's friends. This agreement, which diffused incredible joy over the whole kingdom, was solemnly ratified in a great council held at Winchester in November this

VOL. V. I year,

A.D. 1153. year, and all the prelates and barons of both parties took an oath of fealty, and did homage to Henry as successor in another council, held at Oxford, January 13th, A.D. 1154. The Prince, having regulated his affairs in England, returned into Normandy in the spring of this year.⁹⁸

King Stephen dies.

Though King Stephen had enjoyed more authority, and the country more tranquillity, since the late pacification than in any period of his reign, he was far from being pleased with that transaction, and soon began to show that he did not intend to be very punctual in performing his part of the treaty. By one article it was agreed, that all the castles which had been built on both sides since the death of Henry I. amounting (if we may believe a cotemporary historian) to the number of 1115, should be demolished, as many of them had been nests of thieves, and the occasion of infinite mischiefs to the kingdom⁹⁹. Henry had given strict orders to the barons of his party to execute this article; but Stephen made various excuses and delays. This, and some other things, it is probable, would have rekindled the flames of civil war, if these two princes had continued long on their present footing. But King Stephen was taken ill of the iliac passion, which put an end to his life and reign, at Dover, October 25th, in the fiftieth

⁹⁸ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 228. M. Paris, p. 61. Annal. Waverlien. p. 158. J. Brompt. p. 1037. Rymer Fœdera, l. 1. p. 14.

⁹⁹ M. Paris, p. 61.

year of his age, and the nineteenth of his reign.¹⁰⁰ A.D. 1154.

The following character of King Stephen may be collected from his actions, and from the writings of cotemporary authors. In his person he was graceful, strong, and active; in his conversation, pleasant and facetious; in his deportment popular and condescending, to a degree that many esteemed unsuitable to his dignity. He was a kind husband, a tender but too indulgent parent, and to his favourites not only liberal but profuse. His courage was of the boldest and most intrepid kind; and, if he had never aspired to royalty, he would have lived and died beloved. Ambition was the rock on which he split. His usurpation of the throne of England involved him in the guilt of the most impious perjuries and most vile ingratitude; and to preserve what he had usurped, he was led to commit many acts of injustice, treachery, and oppression. In a word, his reign was uncomfortable to himself, unhappy to his family and his country, being one continued scene of confusion, misery, and civil war, from the beginning to the end.

The events which happened in Wales in this period, were not of such importance as to merit a minute detail in this work. That country still continued to be harassed by wars between its several princes, whose mutual jealousies were the

History of
Wales.

¹⁰⁰ Chron. Gervas, col. 1376. Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 228.

A.D. 1154. occasion of frequent quarrels and of many miseries. In the intervals of these quarrels, they sometimes made incursions into the territories of the English, which drew upon them the resentment of that more powerful nation.¹⁰¹

History of
Scotland.

King Edgar, the eldest surviving son of Malcolm Canmore, was seated on the throne of Scotland at the beginning of this period, when Henry, the youngest son of William the Conqueror, mounted the throne of England; who soon after married the Princess Matilda, King Edgar's sister. This near relation between the two royal families produced a long and cordial peace between the two nations. Nor was the internal tranquillity of the kingdom interrupted by any civil commotions during the reign of this prince; who dying at Dundee, January 8th, A.D. 1107., was succeeded by his younger brother Alexander¹⁰². This prince was as happy as his predecessor in cultivating the friendship of his brother-in-law the King of England; but discovered more activity in suppressing certain bands of robbers, by whom the northern parts of the kingdom were much infested, and in reducing the licentious nobility to a due obedience to the laws, by an impartial administration of justice; which procured him the surname of *The Fierce*. Alexander was married to Sibylla, natural daughter of

¹⁰¹ See Dr. Powel's History of Wales, p. 157—204.

¹⁰² Chron. Mailros, p. 163. Fordun. Scotchron. l. 5. c. 28. Buchan. Hist. l. 7.

Henry

Henry I.¹⁰³; but died without issue, A. D. 1124.; ^{A. D. 1154.} and was succeeded by his youngest brother David; commonly called *St. David*, on account of his great piety (according to the mode of those times), and of his excessive liberality to the church and clergy. David was educated in England, under the care of his uncle Edgar Atheling; and after the marriage of his sister to King Henry, he resided chiefly in the English court; where he married Matilda, the only child of Waltheof Earl of Northumberland and Huntington, by which he obtained a title to these two earldoms. By his long residence in England he acquired a taste for the English manners and way of living, which he laboured to introduce among his own subjects after his accession to the throne of Scotland¹⁰⁴. As Earl of Huntington he was the first of the laity who swore, A. D. 1126., to support the succession of the Empress Maude to the crown of England; and when that oath had been shamefully violated by almost all who had taken it, this pious prince invaded England several times (as hath been already mentioned), to pull down the usurper Stephen, and raise the Empress to the throne. In the last years of Stephen's reign he remained in the quiet possession of the four northern counties of Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham; and these counties were ceded to him and his

¹⁰³ Dalrymple's Collections, p. 371.

¹⁰⁴ W. Malmf. l. 5. p. 90.

A.D. 1154. heirs by Prince Henry Plantagenet, afterwards Henry II., when he received the honour of knighthood from him at Carlisle, May 22d, A.D. 1149.; and that cession was confirmed by an oath, that it should never be resumed ¹⁰⁵. In his old age this excellent King lost his only son Henry, who is represented by all the historians of those times, as one of the most virtuous and accomplished princes of the age in which he flourished. When Henry was at the English court, A. D. 1139., he fell in love with, and married, Ada, sister of William Earl of Warren and Surrey; by whom he left, at his death, A. D. 1152., three sons, Malcolm, William, and David, and three daughters, Margaret, afterwards married to Conan Duke of Brittany, Adama, married to Florence Earl of Holland, and Matilda ¹⁰⁶. King David did not long survive his amiable and much-beloved son, but falling sick at Carlisle, where he frequently resided, he died there, in a very pious manner, May 24th, A. D. 1153.; and was succeeded by his grandson, Malcolm IV. surnamed *The Maiden*.

¹⁰⁵ W. Neubrigenf. l. 1. c. 24. l. 2. c. 4.

¹⁰⁶ Fordun. Scotichron. l. 5. c. 33.

SECTION III.

The civil and military history of Great Britain, from the accession of Henry II. to the throne of England, A.D. 1154. to his death, A.D. 1189.

HENRY PLANTAGENET, eldest son of the Empress Maude, and of Geoffrey Plantagenet Earl of Anjou, was besieging the castle of a rebellious baron in Normandy, when he received the important and unexpected news of the death of King Stephen. Having finished the siege in which he was engaged, by taking the castle, he began to make preparations for his voyage to England, where he landed, near Hurst castle, December 8th, and was crowned at Westminster on the 19th of the same month, with his consort Eleanor, by Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury, in a great assembly of prelates and nobles¹. This event gave inexpressible satisfaction to the people of England, as it put an end to the irregular succession of their kings, and to those destructive civil wars which had brought their country to the very brink of ruin.

A.D. 1154.

Coronation of Henry II.

The first acts of Henry's government were equally wise and vigorous, and confirmed the high opinion which his subjects entertained of

A.D. 1155.

First measures of his government wise and vigorous.

¹ Chron. Normā. p. 989. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 1. M. Paris, p. 65. Annal. Waverliē. p. 158.

A.D. 1155. his spirit and abilities. He immediately issued a proclamation, commanding all the foreign mercenaries, who in the preceding reign had committed the most horrible depredations, to depart the kingdom by a certain day, under the pain of death; and they all vanished before the appointed time. He gave orders to level with the ground the numerous castles which had been erected, in all parts of England, in the late civil wars, and from which the neighbouring countries had been desolated; and these orders were obeyed, though, in some places, with no small reluctance. Finding the crown greatly impoverished by the many grants of the royal demesnes, which had been made by King Stephen, and even by the Empress, to their respective partisans, he obtained a decree of his parliament or great council, to resume all these grants; which he executed with the most perfect impartiality, and with much greater ease than could have been expected.²

Parli-
aments.

In a parliament held at London, he voluntarily granted a charter of liberties, or rather renewed and confirmed that which had been granted by his grandfather Henry I.³ In another parliament, held at Winchester, about Michaelmas, he found the affairs of his kingdom in such a settled state, that he consulted with his barons, about attempting the conquest of Ireland, to be given to his youngest brother Prince

² Gervas Chron. ann. 1155. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 2, 3.

³ See Judge Blackstone's Law-Tracts, vol. 2. p. 11.

William :

William : but this project not being agreeable to his mother the Empress, the execution of it was postponed ^{A.D. 1155.} ⁴. The coin, which had been shamefully adulterated in the preceding reign, he restored to its standard purity ; and the laws, which had been as shamefully relaxed, he raised to their proper dignity and vigour ⁵. To secure all these blessings to his subjects, and prevent all disputes about the succession, he made all his prelates and barons take an oath of fealty to his eldest son Prince William ; and, failing him, to his second son Prince Henry, who was born in March this year ⁶. In a word, it may be truly said, that no king of England had ever done so much good, or gained so much love, in so short a time, since Alfred the Great, as Henry II. in the first year of his reign, though it was only the twenty-first year of his age.

England being now in perfect tranquillity, Henry embarked at Dover, in January this year ; arrived at Rouen, the capital of Normandy, where his mother the Empress resided, on Candlemas-day ; and, about a week after, had an interview with Louis VII. King of France, to whom he did homage for all his territories on the continent ⁷. After this interview he returned to Rouen ; where he was visited by the Earl and Countess of Flanders, and by his brother Geoffrey, who, discontented with the smallness

⁴ Annal. Waverlien. p. 158.⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 282.⁶ Gervas Chron. ann. 1155.⁷ Chron. Norman. p. 991.

A.D. 1156. of his appanage, claimed the earldom of Anjou, and being refused, retired to his castles, and endeavoured to excite an insurrection. Henry pursued him with an army, and took all his castles, which he demolished; but upon his submission, he restored his lands, and granted him an annual pension of one thousand pounds sterling, and two thousand pounds of Anjouvine money⁸. After this transaction, which was finished in July, he made a progress into Guienne, and the other provinces which he had got by his queen, and received the homage of the prelates and nobles of those provinces.⁹

A.D. 1157.
Henry re-
turns to
England.

Henry's reputation was already become so great, that the Earl and Countess of Flanders having resolved upon a pilgrimage into the Holy Land, appointed him guardian to their infant son, and regent of their dominions in their absence. He spent the beginning of this year in regulating the affairs of that earldom¹⁰. On his return into England, in the week after Easter, he recovered the four northern counties by negotiation from Malcolm IV. King of Scotland, who was in no condition to contend with a prince who was so much his superior in power as well as in abilities.¹¹

⁸ Chron. Norman. p. 991. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 7. M. Paris, p. 67.

⁹ Ypodigma Neustriae, p. 446.

¹⁰ Gervas Chron. ann. 1157. Chron. Norman. p. 993.

¹¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 4.

The Welsh had made frequent incursions into England in the last reign, in which they had not only done much mischief to the country, but had recovered the possession of several extensive districts, of which they had been formerly deprived; and had shaken off their dependence upon the English crown. Henry being now at leisure, raised a great army with which he entered Wales about the beginning of August, and advanced to Basingwerk in Flintshire, without meeting with any opposition. But as he was marching with the van of his army through a narrow defile near that place, he was suddenly assaulted by the Welsh, who pouring showers of arrows, darts, and stones, from the surrounding precipices, put his troops into such confusion, that Henry de Essex, hereditary standard-bearer of England, threw down the royal standard, and, flying, cried out, that the King was slain, and all was lost. This spread such a panic through the army, that it was on the point of disbanding, when the King, by shewing himself, prevented a total defeat¹². After this disaster, Henry, changing his route, marched his army along the sea-coast, attended by his fleet, and proceeded with great caution, cutting down the woods, making roads, and building castles to secure his conquests, as he advanced. Owen Guyneth, Prince of North Wales, convinced of his inability to

A.D. 1157.
Expedition
into Wales.

¹² W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 5. Gervas Chron. ann. 1157. M. Paris, p. 68. Chron. Mailros. ann. 1158.

defend

A.D. 1157. defend his country against an enemy so powerful and so prudent, made his peace, by resigning all his late acquisitions, and doing homage for what he retained.¹³

A.D. 1158. Henry, having spent the first months of this year in a royal progress for the administration of justice, had an interview with Malcolm King of Scotland, at Carlisle, who came thither in hopes of receiving the honour of knighthood; but some misunderstanding arising between the two monarchs, Malcolm did not receive that honour at this time¹⁴. In his return into the south, Henry celebrated the feast of Easter in the suburbs of Lincoln, in compliance with the superstitious terrors of his subjects, who had been taught by a pretended prophecy, that some great calamity would befall the first king of England who presumed to wear his crown within the walls of that city¹⁵. Soon after this he made another voyage to the continent on the following occasion. The people of Nantz in Brittany, having revolted from their rightful sovereign, invited Geoffrey Plantagenet, King Henry's brother, to become their earl; and that prince being now dead, Henry laid claim to the earldom of Nantz, as heir to his brother. This claim, which doth not seem to have been very well founded, was disputed by Conan Duke of Brittany, who, on Geoffrey's death, had taken possession of Nantz,

¹³ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 5. ¹⁴ Chron. de Mailros, ad ann. 1158.

¹⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 282. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 9.

as belonging to his dukedom. At Henry's arrival in Normandy, he had an interview with the King of France; and in order to gain his friendship, and prevent his espousing the cause of the Duke of Brittany, he proposed a marriage between his eldest surviving son, Prince Henry, and Margaret, the eldest daughter of that king by his second queen, Constantia of Castile. This proposal was so agreeable to the French monarch, that it was not only accepted, but Henry was invited to Paris, where he was most magnificently entertained several days, and obtained a commission, as Earl of Anjou, and seneschal of France, to determine the important controversy that had subsisted for some time between Eudo Earl of Penthievre, and Conan Duke of Brittany, about the right to that dukedom. As soon as Conan was informed of this commission, he waited upon Henry, and voluntarily yielded to him the earldom of Nantz, to procure a sentence in his favour; which was accordingly pronounced¹⁶. Thus the King of England, by his policy and power, was making continual additions to his dominions.

Henry had no sooner made good his claim, such as it was, to the earldom of Nantz, than he advanced another, in right of his queen, to the earldom of Thoulouse: which seems to have been better founded. For Queen Eleanor was the grand-daughter of Philippa, the only child

A.D. 1158.

A.D. 1159.

Return
into Eng-
land, &c.

¹⁶ Gervas Chron. ann. 1158. Chron. Norman. p. 994.

A.D. 1159. of William IV. Earl of Thoulouse; but that earl, before his death, conveyed all his dominions to his brother Raimond Earl of St. Giles, whose grandson, of the same name, was now Earl of Thoulouse. When Eleanor was Queen of France, her husband, Louis VII. esteemed her pretensions to the earldom of Thoulouse so good, that he besieged that city; but was prevented from prosecuting the siege, by his expedition into the Holy Land. Henry being now the husband of Eleanor, determined to assert her right to that great earldom, which then comprehended Quercy and the greatest part of Languedoc¹⁷. In order to this, he came over into England in the beginning of this year, and held a great council of his prelates, barons, and military tenants, who willingly agreed to pay a sum of money rather than serve in person in this distant expedition. The sum demanded, and paid, for each knight's fee, was three pounds; by which he raised one hundred and eighty thousand pounds, in England, equal in weight of silver to five hundred and forty thousand pounds, and in efficacy at least to two million seven hundred thousand pounds of our present money.¹⁸

Expedition
against
Thoulouse.

After Easter he returned into Normandy, where he levied a similar tax from his military tenants, and with this money he took into his service great multitudes of adventurers or soldiers of fortune, with whom all the countries of

¹⁷ Chron. Norman. p. 995.

¹⁸ Gervas Chron. c. 1381.

Europe abounded in those times. About Mid-summer Henry assembled his own troops, and those of his allies (among whom were Malcolm King of Scotland, who was knighted in this expedition, and Raimond Earl of Barcelona, and King of Aragon), in Guienne, and from thence invaded Quercy, where he took the city of Cahors. He then directed his march towards Thoulouse, with a view to invest that city; but received intelligence by the way, that the King of France had thrown himself into it, with a body of troops, and declared his resolution to defend it to the last extremity. The famous Thomas Becket, who was then Chancellor of England, and Henry's greatest favourite, vehemently urged him to proceed, and seize, without ceremony, the person of his sovereign lord, of whom he held all his extensive territories on the continent, and to whom he had sworn fealty. But this advice was prudently rejected, as too bold and dangerous, inconsistent with his oath of fealty, and with that respect which he owed to the person of his sovereign, which it was the interest of a prince who had so many powerful vassals of his own, to hold sacred and inviolable. Henry therefore declared, that out of respect to the King of France, he would not besiege Thoulouse; but he prosecuted the war in other places with equal vigour and success¹⁹. This war continued both in Lan-

¹⁹ Fitz-Stephen. Vita S. T. Cantuar. p. 22. Joann. in Quadri-
logo, c. 9, 10. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 10.

A.D. 1159. guedoc, on the frontiers of Normandy, and in other places, from August to December; when a truce was concluded for six months, and negotiations for a peace were set on foot.

A.D. 1160. Before the expiration of this truce, the terms of peace were settled, by which Henry was permitted to retain all those places in the earldom of Thoulouse that he had conquered. But before the final conclusion of the treaty, some misunderstanding arose between the two kings, which put off the ratification of it to the month of October, when the Prince of England did homage to the King of France for the duchy of Normandy.²⁰

War with
France.

This peace was of very short duration. By an article in the treaty, the towns of Gisors, Neufle, and Newchatel, the marriage portion of the Princess Margaret (the eldest daughter of the King of France by his second queen), who had been promised in marriage to Prince Henry about two years before, were to be delivered up, by the knights-templars, to whom they were then committed, into the hands of the King of England, as soon as the espousals between the royal infants were celebrated, with the consent of the church. The King of England dreading a change in the dispositions of the French monarch, who had married a princess of the house of Blois, after a widowhood of only twelve days, and being very desirous to secure his son's marriage

²⁰ Chron. Norman. p. 997.

with

with the French princess, and to get possession of her fortune, prevailed upon the Pope's legate to celebrate the espousals between Henry and Margaret (who had been sent into Normandy to be educated), though the prince was only six, and the princess only five years of age. As soon as this ceremony was performed, he demanded and obtained the three towns from the knights-templars, according to the stipulations of the treaty. The King of France was so much irritated at this transaction, that he banished the three knights who had delivered up the three towns, and commenced hostilities against the King of England.²¹

A.D. 1160.

The operations of this new war were of small importance. For when the two armies lay near each other in the month of June, and neither of the kings discovered any inclination to attack the other, their common friends interposed their good offices, and a peace was concluded about Midsummer, on the same terms with the former.²² This peace gave both kings an opportunity of attending to the affairs of the church, and particularly to the great dispute between the two Popes, Alexander III. and Victor IV.; on which subject each king having held a council of his clergy in July, they both met at a general council at Thoulouse in August, and agreed to acknowledge Pope Alexander.²³

A.D. 1161.

Treaty of
peace.

²¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 24. R. Hoveden, p. 282. M. Paris, p. 68. Ypodigma Neustriæ, ann. 1160.

²² Chron. Norman. p. 998.

²³ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 9.

A.D. 1162.

Interview
with the
King of
France.

Henry spent this year in great tranquillity on the continent, regulating the civil and ecclesiastical affairs of his foreign dominions; and for that purpose he held several assemblies of his prelates and nobility.²⁴ In autumn the Kings of France and England had an interview with their Pope, Alexander III. at Torcy on the Loire, at which these two great monarchs condescended to hold that pontiff's stirrups as he mounted his horse, and to guide the reins of his bridle as they conducted him into the town.²⁵ Such was the real or political humility of princes, and the pride of priests, in those superstitious times.

A.D. 1163.

Henry re-
turns into
England.

After an absence of more than three years, King Henry landed at Southampton, January 26th, and was received with the greatest demonstrations of joy by his English subjects of all ranks²⁶. Malcolm King of Scotland paid him a visit this summer, and renewed the peace between the two kingdoms, giving his youngest brother David, and the sons of some of his earls, as hostages for the performance of the conditions of the treaty, particularly for the surrender of some castles.²⁷ At the same time, viz. July 1st, Owen Guyneth Prince of North Wales, and Rheese Prince of South Wales, did homage to King Henry, and to Prince Henry his eldest son, at Woodstoke, for their respective principalities. In the course of this year, commissioners ap-

²⁴ Chron. Norman. p. 998.²⁵ Id. *ibid.*²⁶ Id. p. 999.²⁷ Id. *ibid.*

pointed by the King, took an inquisition of all the knights' fees that were in England at the death of Henry I., and at this time, together with the various services and prestations due by each to the crown, to serve as a rule for exacting those services and prestations:²⁸ a work still preserved in the exchequer, and, next to Doomsday-book, of the greatest utility.²⁹

A.D. 1163.

The most important transactions of this and of several succeeding years, consisted of the violent disputes between the King and the famous Thomas Becket, now become Archbishop of Canterbury; and belong more properly to the ecclesiastical than to the civil history of England.³⁰

A.D. 1164.
Disputes
with Tho-
mas Beck-
et.

In Lent A.D. 1165., Henry went over into Normandy, and had an interview with the King of France at Gisors, about Easter; after which he was visited at Rouen by his cousin Philip Earl of Flanders, to whom he had been a very faithful guardian³¹. On his return into England, in summer, he received the ambassadors of the Emperor Frederic, at Westminster, who came to demand his eldest daughter Maude in marriage for Henry Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, son of the late Emperor Conrade; and they succeeded in their negociation³². In the autumn he marched with a body of troops into Wales, and defeated a considerable army of the enemy, commanded by three of their princes.

A.D. 1065.
Voyage to
Norman-
dy, and
return into
England.

²⁸ M. Paris, p. 70, col. 2. Dicet. col. 536.

²⁹ Vide Lib. Rub. Scaccarii.

³¹ Chron. Norman, p. 1000.

³⁰ See chap. 2.

³² Powel, p. 222.

A.D. 1166.

Henry returns into Normandy.

Confederacy defeated.

Henry having spent the winter in England, he returned, in Lent A.D. 1166., to the continent, where his presence was become necessary. Some of the powerful and factious barons of La Maine had formed a confederacy, and disregarded the authority of Queen Eleanor, who acted as regent of the dominions on the continent, where she now resided; and several barons of Brittany had also entered into this confederacy. Henry, conducting an army into La Maine, soon reduced the refractory nobility of that country to due submission, by taking and demolishing their castles.

Duke of Brittany resigns his dominions to Henry, &c.

Conan Duke of Brittany had some time ago betrothed his only child, Constantia, to Geoffrey, the King of England's third son; and now finding himself unable to keep his turbulent barons in subjection, he resigned his duchy into the hands of that King, to be governed by him, for the benefit of Geoffrey and Constantia during their minority. Henry accepted of this resignation, made a progress through Brittany, and received the homage of the barons and military tenants of that country, which was a considerable accession to his power³³. On December 5th, he was visited, at Mount St. Michael in Normandy, by William, surnamed *the Lion*, King of Scotland, who had lately mounted that throne on the death of his brother Malcolm IV.³⁴ The affairs of the Christians in the

³³ Chron. Norman. p. 1000. Chron. Trevel. ann. 1165.

³⁴ Chron. Mailros, ann. 1166.

Holy Land being at this time in great distress, A.D. 1166.
 Henry, with the consent of his prelates and
 barons, imposed a tax of two-pence in the pound
 for one year, and one penny in the pound for
 four years after, on the goods of all his subjects
 on the continent, and a similar tax, in the same
 manner, on his English subjects, for their re-
 lief. ³⁵

A misunderstanding arose in the beginning of A.D. 1167.
 this year between the Kings of France and Eng- War with
France,
and truce.
 land, occasioned by several matters of no great
 importance, in which their views and interests
 were incompatible. Both these monarchs raised
 armies, and took and destroyed towns and castles;
 but a stop was put to their destructive ravages
 by a truce, which was concluded in the month
 of August, to continue till the succeeding
 Easter ³⁶. The Empress Maude, who had for-
 merly acted a distinguished part in the affairs of
 Europe, but since the accession of her illustrious
 son to the throne of England had lived in an
 honourable retirement at Rouen, died there on
 September 10th this year, and was buried in
 the abbey of Beec; to which she had been a
 benefactress. ³⁷

The barons of Poitou and Guienne, discon- A.D. 1168.
 tented with some measures of Henry's govern- Henry
suppresses
rebellions
in Poitou,
&c.
 ment, which are not mentioned, having secretly
 put themselves under the protection of the King

³⁵ Chron. Trevel. ann. 1166.

³⁶ Id. ibid.

³⁷ Chron. Norman. p. 1101.

A.D. 1168. of France, and given him hostages for their fidelity, broke out into open rebellion in the first months of this year. But they soon had reason to repent of their rashness. For Henry, marching with great expedition into their country, took and demolished their strongest castles, and reduced them to the necessity of professing their willingness to submit to his authority, if he could recover their hostages from the King of France. To accomplish this, he had an interview with that prince, between Mante and Pacey, about the end of the Easter holidays. But Louis absolutely refused to give up the hostages, and only agreed to prolong the truce till Midsummer. In the meantime the barons of Brittany, who had secretly promised subjection and given hostages to the French monarch, threw off the mask, and refused to obey Henry's commands to join his army. They had no better success than their neighbours of Poitou and Guienne: their castles were seized, and they were constrained to offer submission on the same terms. This produced a second interview between the two monarchs about Midsummer, in which the King of France refusing to give up the hostages which he had received from Henry's rebellious barons, the truce was not prolonged, and an open war broke out, which continued several months without any memorable action.³⁸

³⁸ Chron. Norman. p. 1002.

Both kings being at length weary of a war, A.D. 1169.
 which was very pernicious to their subjects, with-
 out being either honourable or advantageous to Peace with France.
 themselves, a peace was concluded between
 them, January 6th, A. D. 1169. On this oc-
 casion, Prince Henry of England did homage to
 his father-in-law the King of France, for Anjou
 and Maine, as he had formerly done for Nor-
 mandy; Prince Richard, the King of England's
 second son, did homage for Aquitaine; and
 Geoffrey, his third son, for Brittany³⁹. The
 rest of this year was spent in improving the for-
 tifications of the frontier towns of Normandy,
 and in various negociations with Thomas Becket
 Archbishop of Canterbury, which will be related
 in the second chapter of this book.

The ceremonies of coronation and the royal A.D. 1170.
 unction were esteemed more important and es-
 sential in the times we are now delineating than
 they are at present. Hence proceeded that ex-
 treme haste that princes with disputed titles dis-
 covered to have those ceremonies performed upon
 them; and the desire of many of the kings of
 France, to see their sons crowned and anointed
 in their own lifetime as the most effectual secu-
 rity of their succession. Henry, prompted by
 parental affection, and influenced by several po-
 litical reasons, had resolved to have his eldest son
 Prince Henry crowned and anointed King of
 England as soon as possible. But as he was

Henry re-
turns into
England,
crowns his
son Prince
Henry, and
returns to
Norman-
dy.

³⁹ Chron. Norman. p. 1002.

A.D. 1170. now at variance with the Archbishop of Canterbury, who claimed an exclusive right to perform these ceremonies, the execution of this design was attended with no small difficulty. Being sensible of this, he conducted it with great dexterity and art. Having brought all his dominions on the continent to a state of perfect tranquillity, he came over into England, from whence he had been absent about four years, and, landing at Portsmouth, March 3d, soon after held a parliament or assembly of his great men. In this assembly commissioners were appointed to visit each county in the kingdom, and to make strict inquiry into the conduct of the sheriffs and other magistrates during the King's absence, and to bring the result of their inquiries to another great council to be held at London, June 4th. At this last assembly, William King of Scotland, David his brother, the prelates, earls, barons, sheriffs, bailiffs, and aldermen of all England, were present, anxious and uncertain about the King's designs, when, to their great surprise, Prince Henry, who had arrived from Normandy only the week before, was solemnly crowned and anointed King, by Roger Archbishop of York; and, the day after, all the members of this assembly swore fealty to the young King, with a saving of the fealty they owed to his father⁴⁰. About Midsummer King Henry, the father, re-

⁴⁰ Brompton, col. 1060. Gervas Gant. col. 1410. Benedict. Abbas, p. 4. 5.

turned into Normandy, leaving the young King regent of England. He had an interview with the King of France, July 22d, in which that prince complained, that his daughter Margaret had not been crowned with her husband. But on Henry's assuring him, that this was owing only to the dispatch and secrecy that were necessary on that occasion, and promising that this defect should be supplied as soon as possible, he seemed to be contented. Soon after this interview, the King of England, being seized with a severe fit of sickness, made his will, and bequeathed to his eldest son the kingdom of England, the duchy of Normandy, with the earldoms of Anjou and Maine, requiring him to make some provision for his youngest son John; to his second son, Richard, he left the duchy of Aquitaine; and to his third son, Geoffrey, the duchy of Brittany⁴¹. After his recovery from this sickness, he had a dispute with the King of France, about the archbishopric of Bourges, which produced one of those short and unimportant wars that were so frequent in the times we are now considering.⁴²

Henry II. had entertained thoughts of invading Ireland, and attempting the conquest of that island, very soon after his accession to the throne of England. In the second year of his reign, having obtained a bull from Pope Adrian IV. who was an Englishman, authorising and exhorting him to that undertaking, he proceeded so

A.D. 1171.

Henry takes Dermot King of Leinster under his protection.

⁴¹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 56.

⁴² R. Hoveden. Annal. p. 298.

A.D. 1171. far as to communicate his design to a great council of his nobility; but was dissuaded by his mother the Empress from proceeding any further at that time⁴³. An event happened A.D. 1168. which called his attention towards that island, and afforded him a specious pretence for intermeddling in its affairs. Dermot Macmorroh King of Leinster (one of the five kingdoms into which Ireland was then divided) having been expelled from his dominions by his own subjects, with the assistance of the Kings of Meath and Connaught, for his tyranny and other vices, implored the protection of the King of England, promising to hold his kingdom of him as his sovereign lord, if he was restored to it by his aid. Though Henry, who was then in Guienne, was much pleased with this application, he was too much engaged in his disputes with the church and the King of France, to think of an immediate expedition into Ireland in person. But that Dermot might not be quite discouraged, he gave him letters-patent directed to all his subjects in England, and other countries, declaring that he had taken him under his protection, and giving them licence to aid and assist him in the recovering of his kingdom⁴⁴. With these letters, and a decent appointment out of the royal treasury for his support, the exiled prince returned into England, and took up his residence at

⁴³ Chron. Norman. p. 991. Rymer. Fœdera, l. i. p. 15.

⁴⁴ G. Cambrenf. Expug. Hibern. l. i. c. i. p. 76c.

Bristol,

Bristol, on account of its vicinity to his own dominions. A.D. 1171.

Here he entered into a negociation with Richard de Clare, surnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of Strigul or Pembroke, to whom he promised his daughter Eva in marriage, with the succession to his kingdom at his death, on condition that the Earl came over into Ireland next spring A.D. 1169. with sufficient forces to restore him to his throne⁴⁵. After the conclusion of this treaty, Dermot removed to St. David's, to be still nearer Ireland, and engaged two noblemen of these parts, Maurice Fitzgerald and Robert Fitzstephen, to assist in his restoration, by the promise of large estates. Relying on the effect of these treaties, he ventured over into Leinster in the winter; and being joined by Fitzstephen in the spring, and afterwards by Fitzgerald, he recovered all his former dominions in the course of the campaign A.D. 1169.⁴⁶ Elated, but not contented with this success, he began to aspire to the sovereignty of all Ireland, and by frequent messages earnestly solicited Earl Strongbow to fulfil his engagements, by coming to his assistance with a powerful army.

Expedition of some English barons into Ireland.

Though that Earl had made great preparations for his Irish expedition, he durst not venture to engage in it without the permission of his sovereign, when the object was not the restoration of Dermot, but the conquest of Ireland; and in

Earl Strongbow's expedition into Ireland.

⁴⁵ G. Cambrenf. Expug. Hibern. l. 1. c. 2. p. 761.

⁴⁶ Id. l. 1. c. 3—12.

A.D. 1171. order to obtain that permission, he went over to the King in Normandy. Henry hesitated much about granting his request; but having at length let fall some words which seemed to imply a grant of his desire, the Earl laid hold upon them, and hastening into England, pushed his preparations with the greatest vigour. When he had collected an army of twelve hundred men, in which were two hundred knights, with a fleet sufficient to transport them into Ireland, he received positive orders from the King to desist from his enterprize. This threw him into great perplexity, and occasioned some delay. But at length reflecting that he was ruined if he desisted, and had the prospect of a splendid fortune if he proceeded, he ventured to sail from Milford-haven, and landed near Waterford, August 23d, A. D. 1170., and a few days after took that town by storm. Here he was joined by Dermot, and his marriage with Eva the eldest daughter of that prince, was celebrated; after which, the forces of all the English adventurers being united to those of the King of Leinster, they took the city of Dublin, and reduced the whole kingdom of Meath before the end of that campaign⁴⁷. On the 1st day of May, A.D. 1171., Dermot King of Leinster died at Fernes; and was succeeded in that kingdom by Earl Strongbow, his son-in-law, without any opposition.⁴⁸

⁴⁷ G. Cambrenf. Expug. Hibern. l. 1. c. 13—18. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 26.

⁴⁸ Expug. Hibern. l. 1. c. 20. p. 771.

The news of the successes of these adventurers in Ireland being carried to Henry, who was still in Normandy, he was much offended with their presumption, in slighting his orders, and attempting the conquest of kingdoms which he had meditated. To put a stop to their further progress, he issued a proclamation, prohibiting any of his subjects from sailing into Ireland, and commanding all those who were in that island to return into England before the feast of Easter, on pain of perpetual banishment, and the confiscation of their estates⁴⁹. Strongbow was greatly alarmed at this proclamation, as it tended to deprive him of his followers, and indicated the high displeasure of his sovereign; to mitigate which he sent Reymond, one of his greatest confidants, to the King, to make him an offer of all his acquisitions in Ireland, in the most humble and submissive terms⁵⁰. Though this offer could not fail to be agreeable to Henry, he received it with a sullen silence, and Reymond was obliged to return to his master without any positive assurance of pardon.

A.D. 1171.

Henry's
proclamation
against
these expeditions.

Henry having settled his affairs on the continent, and left his dominions there under the government of the young King his son, sailed for England and landed at Portsmouth August 3d. As soon as Strongbow heard of the King's arrival in England, he came over, and threw himself at his feet, imploring his pardon, and

Henry's
expedition
into Ire-
land.⁴⁹ G. Cambrenf. Expug. Hibern. l. i. c. 19.⁵⁰ Id. Ibid.

A.D. 1171. resigning all his conquests to his disposal. Henry's resentment being overcome by this submissive deportment, he received him into favour; restored him his estate in England, which had been confiscated; and even permitted him to retain a great part of the kingdom of Leinster, to be held of the crown of England; but took the city of Dublin and all the towns on the coast into his own hands⁵¹. All things being now in readiness for his Irish expedition, the King embarked his army on board a fleet of four hundred and forty transports at Milford-haven, and sailing from thence, with a fair wind, landed, October 26th, near Waterford, one of the towns resigned to him by Strongbow, where he was received with joy. The fame of his arrival soon spread over all the country, and disposed the petty princes of those parts to make their submissions, and acknowledge him as their sovereign lord. He entertained them with great civility; and having received their homage, and oaths of fealty, and imposed a moderate annual tribute upon each, as an acknowledgment of his sovereignty, he dismissed them with valuable presents⁵². From Waterford he marched at the head of his army to Dublin, which he entered, November 21st, without having seen or heard of any enemy. In this city he celebrated the festi-

⁵¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 26.

⁵² Benedict. Abbas, ann. 1171. p. 27. Expug. Hibern. l. 1. c. 30, 31.

val of Christmas, in a wooden palace erected for that purpose, in which he not only entertained the great men of his own court and army, but many of the Irish princes and chieftains, who were much surpris'd at the great plenty and variety of provisions⁵³. While he resided in this city, Roderic King of Connaught, the supreme monarch of Ireland, had an interview, on the banks of the river Shannon, with Roger de Lacy and William Fitzaldelm, commissioners appointed to receive his homage, and settle his tribute, which they did; and by that transaction, the conquest of the Island was in a manner completed.⁵⁴

A.D. 1171.

The King spent the first months of this year at Dublin, in regulating the affairs of his new dominions, and in improving their police (which was very imperfect), by introducing the English laws and customs⁵⁵. The Irish clergy, in the acts of a council held at Cashel, 25th March this year, confess their obligations to their new sovereign on this account, in very strong terms, acknowledging, "That before his coming into Ireland, many evil customs had prevailed there, which by his power and wisdom were now abolished⁵⁶." Soon after Candlemas, Henry left Dublin, and took up his residence at Wexford, where he impatiently expected news from England. But a succession of violent storms

A D. 1172.
Henry's
return into
England
and voy-
age to
Norman-
dy, &c.

⁵³ Expug. Hibern. l. 1. c. 32.

⁵⁵ M. Paris, p. 88.

⁵⁴ Id. Ibid.

⁵⁶ Expug. Hibern. c. 34. p. 777.

A.D. 1172. interrupted all navigation between the two islands for several weeks. At length, about the middle of Lent, he received intelligence, that two legates from the Pope, about the affair of Becket's murder, had waited for him some months in Normandy, and threatened to lay all his dominions under an interdict, if he did not soon appear. Though he ardently desired to spend the summer in Ireland, he immediately prepared for his departure; and having put garisons into all the places of strength in his possession, and appointed Hugh de Lacy (a nobleman in whose courage, wisdom, and fidelity he reposed the greatest confidence) governor of Dublin, and chief justiciary of the kingdom; he sailed from Wexford on Easter Monday, and in the evening landed at Portfinnan in South Wales⁵⁷. Passing with as much expedition as possible through Wales and England, he embarked, together with his son the young King, at Portsmouth, and landed at Barfleur in Normandy, on the 9th of May⁵⁸. The King of France was so much surprised at the news of his arrival, that he cried out, "this Henry of England rather flies than either rides or fails"⁵⁹. At an interview between these two monarchs soon after, all their differences were, in appearance at least, compromised; and young King Henry, with his Queen Margaret of

⁵⁷ Expug. Hibern. l. i. c. 35, 36, 37. Benedict. Abbas, p. 31, 32. R. Hoveden. Annal. p. 303.

⁵⁸ Benedict. Abbas, p. 33.

⁵⁹ Ypodigma Neustriae, p. 448.

France,

France, were sent over into England, and were both solemnly crowned at Winchester, August 27th, and immediately returned to the continent. On the arrival of these personages, a great council was held at Avranches, September 27th, in which the troublesome affair relating to the murder of Thomas Becket was terminated, and King Henry the father received absolution from the Pope's legates; to procure which he promised, amongst other things, to take the cross next Christmas for the recovery of the Holy Land, and in the mean time to give as much money to the knights templars as would maintain two hundred knights a whole year for the defence of Jerusalem⁶⁰. The King of France, pretending to have a strong desire to see his daughter the young Queen of England, and his son-in-law, they were sent to his court in November, where they continued till they were remanded by Henry, who began to be suspicious that Louis, who never was his real friend, might give his son some improper advice.⁶¹

A.D. 1172.

Henry was in great prosperity in the beginning of this year, and his prosperity seemed to be built on the most solid foundations. He was in the prime of life—had a numerous family of sons and daughters, of whom he was remarkably fond, and for whom he had made the most munificent provisions—his extensive dominions were in a state of the most profound tranquillity, and per-

A.D. 1173.
Conspiracy
formed
against
Henry by
his sons,
&c.

⁶⁰ See Brady's Hist. vol. 1. Append. n. 61, 62.

⁶¹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 37.

A.D. 1173. feſt ſubmiſſion to his authority—and his friendſhip was courted by all the princes of Europe. But, notwithſtanding all theſe fair appearances, he was really on the very brink of ruin. A mine was ready to be ſprung under him, which threatened his deſtruction. This mine was formed by his own family, who were the objects of his ſtrongeſt affection, and of whom he had merited the warmeſt returns of gratitude and duty. His eldeſt ſon Henry had ſome good, but many bad qualities. In particular, he was fond of flattery, extravagantly expensive; and his vanity and ambition were both unbounded⁶². Being crowned at the age of fifteen, he became impatient to reign independent of his father. This impatience was inflamed by his mother Queen Eleanor (who was enraged at her huſband on account of his gallantries), by her uncle Ralfe de Faye, by his father-in-law the King of France, and, in a word, by all who were about his perſon, or had any ſhare in his favour⁶³. By theſe an unnatural conſpiracy was formed for dethroning Henry the father, and inveſting young Henry with all his authority. This plot was conducted with great ſecrecy; and beſides the King of France, ſeveral foreign princes were engaged in it, by extravagant grants made to them by the young King;—as William the Lion, King of Scotland, to whom were granted the counties of Cumberland and Northumber-

⁶² *Topographia Hiberniæ Diſtinct.* 3. l. 49, 50. p. 752.

⁶³ *W. Neubrigen.* l. 2. c. 27.

land;

land;—Philip Earl of Flanders, to whom was granted the earldom of Kent; his brother Matthew Earl of Boulogne, to whom were granted the county of Mortain in Normandy, and some lands in England;—and Theobald Earl of Blois, to whom were granted an annuity, and all Henry's estates in Touraine⁶⁴. Many of the most powerful barons, both in England and in all the provinces on the continent, were brought to join in this conspiracy, together with the two young Princes, Richard and Geoffrey.⁶⁵

A.D. 1173.

The last hand was put to this plot when young Henry resided in the court of France, in the end of the preceding year; and on his return from thence, he demanded of his father the immediate and entire possession either of the kingdom of England, or of Normandy, Anjou, and Maine. On receiving a refusal to this demand, he was at no pains to conceal his discontent; and from thenceforward behaved in the most offensive manner to his too indulgent father. Of this it will be sufficient to give one example. Humbert Earl of Maurienne and Savoy, being in the English court at Limoges in the beginning of this year, contracted his eldest daughter Adelais to Prince John, King Henry's youngest son, February 2d, and in that contract granted all his dominions to the prince, if he died without male issue, and a very considerable part of them, even though he should leave a son. King Henry being asked by

Undutiful
behaviour
of young
Henry to
his father.

⁶⁴ Benedict. Abbas, p. 50, 51.

⁶⁵ Id. p. 51, 52, 53.

A.D. 1173. the Earl, what establishment he designed to make for his son, proposed the three castles of Loudun, Chinon, and Merebeau. But to this he could not by the most earnest entreaties procure the consent of the young King, who totally disregarded all his father's solicitations, though in favour of his brother, and for so small a share of so great an inheritance.⁶⁶

Young
Henry
flees from
his father.

On this, King Henry removed several persons from about his son, who he imagined gave him bad advice, and placed others, of whom he had a better opinion, in their room. But this had no other effect, than to hasten his flight into France, which he accomplished about the middle of Lent. His afflicted father pursued him as far as Alençon; but finding he could not overtake him, and beginning to apprehend what soon after happened, he applied himself with great diligence to put his frontier towns and castles in the best posture of defence.⁶⁷

The con-
spiracy
breaks out.

The flight of the young King was the signal of rebellion to all who were engaged in this conspiracy. He was soon after followed by his two brothers, Richard and Geoffrey, and by a prodigious number of the barons of Normandy, Anjou, Maine, and other countries⁶⁸. Even Queen Eleanor meditated a flight to the court of her former husband, from whom she had been divorced; but being apprehended in disguise,

⁶⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 46.

⁶⁷ Id. p. 47. Trivet. Chron. an. 1173.

⁶⁸ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 27.

she was kept in strict confinement ⁶⁹. The defection from King Henry the father on this occasion became so great that he knew not whom to trust; and the world in general gave him up for lost.

A.D. 1178.

Though the spirit of this brave prince was wounded in the most tender part by the revolt of his own children, and of many on whom he had bestowed the greatest benefits, it was so far from being broken that he never displayed greater activity, wisdom, and valour, than at this trying juncture. He sent ambassadors to the court of France to expostulate with Louis for encouraging and supporting his sons in their rebellion; — he wrote accounts of this event to all the princes of Europe; — he solicited the Pope to launch the thunders of the church against his undutiful children, and their accomplices; — he dispatched letters to all the governors of his towns and castles to be upon their guard, and prepare for their defence; — and to all his barons in whom he had any confidence, to be in readiness with their followers; and he took no fewer than twenty thousand Brabançons (a kind of soldiers of fortune) into his pay. ⁷⁰

Wife conduct of King Henry.

It soon appeared that none of these precautions were unnecessary. For immediately after Easter the flames of war broke out at once in many different places. The King of France, with

Open war in many places.

⁶⁹ Gervas Chron. p. 1424.

⁷⁰ R. Hoveden. Annal. p. 306, 307. P. Blesins Epist. 153. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 27.

A.D. 1173. young Henry, at the head of a prodigious army, entered Normandy on one side, and invested Verneuil. The Earls of Flanders and Boulogne entered it on the other, and laid siege to Aumale; while the rebellious barons of Anjou, Maine, Aquitaine, and Brittany, took the field, and desolated the royal demesnes in these provinces⁷¹. Nor did England enjoy greater tranquillity. For the King of Scotland invaded Cumberland, besieged Carlisle, and destroyed the adjacent country with fire and sword; while the vassals of the rebellious Earl of Leicester, and others, appeared in arms in the centre of the kingdom.⁷²

Remark-
able events
of this war
on the con-
tinent.

In the midst of all these dangers, Henry continued serene and cheerful, waiting at Rouen with his Brabançons, and a few of his faithful barons, for an opportunity to act with efficacy; trusting much to the strength of his fortified places, and to the fidelity and valour of his garrisons. The Earls of Flanders and Boulogne appeared at first the most formidable of his enemies, having taken in a short time the towns of Aumale, Neuchatel, and Driencourt. But at the last of these places the Earl of Boulogne received a wound in his knee, of which he died in a few days; and his brother the Earl of Flanders was so much affected with grief at this disaster, and with remorse for the unnatural war in which he was engaged, that he retired out of Normandy with his own troops, and those of

⁷¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 27.

⁷² Benedict. Abbas, p. 54.

Boulogne.

Boulogne ⁷³. Delivered from those dangerous A.D. 1173.
 enemies on that side, Henry began to think of
 acting offensively against his other foes. With
 this view he marched from Rouen to attempt the
 relief of Verneuil, which had been bravely de-
 fended, but was now reduced to great distress
 for want of provisions. The King of France
 treated the first reports of his approach with
 scorn, as thinking them incredible, but when he
 found them real, he raised the siege, and retired
 into his own territories, August 9th, with such
 precipitation, that he left his camp a prey to
 his enemies. The French barons were so much
 discouraged with this ill success, that, the legal
 time of their service being ended, they dis-
 banded ⁷⁴. The defection of the barons of
 Brittany, had been the most general, and they
 had done the greatest mischief; and therefore
 Henry, immediately after the dissolution of the
 French army, detached a great body of his brave
 and trusty Brabançons into that province, who
 defeated the rebels in a pitched battle, August
 20th, and shut up all the chiefs of them in the
 castle of Doll, to which they had fled for refuge.
 As soon as Henry received this agreeable news,
 he set out from Rouen, and, travelling all night,
 arrived at Doll next morning, and pressed the
 siege with so much vigour, that the Earl of
 Chester, the Baron de Fougères, and about a

⁷³ R. Hoveden. Annal. p. 306. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 28,

⁷⁴ Id. ibid.

A.D. 1173. hundred other nobles, were obliged to surrender at discretion, August 26th, and were sent to different prisons⁷⁵. The news of these events struck such terror into the rebellious barons in the other provinces, that they dismissed their followers, and retired to their castles. Thus were all the numerous enemies of Henry on the continent dissipated in a few months, with little loss or labour.

Events of
this war in
Britain.

Nor were his adversaries in Britain more successful. For Richard de Lucy, chief justiciary, took the town of Leicester, July 28th, which belonged to Robert de Bellomont, Earl of Leicester, the King's most inveterate enemy, who was then with the young King in France. After this, marching northward with Humphrey de Bohun, high constable of England, and other loyal barons, they compelled the King of Scotland, who had committed the most horrid ravages in the northern counties, to retire into his own dominions; into which they followed him, and would probably have committed equal ravages, if they had not received intelligence, that the Earl of Leicester had landed near Walton castle in Suffolk, October 17th, with an army of Flemings. Carefully concealing this intelligence from the King of Scots, they concluded a truce with that prince to the feast of St. Hilary; and marching into the south with great expedition, encountered and defeated the Earl of Leicester's army

⁷⁵ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 29.

near St. Edmondsbury, November 1st, taking A.D. 1173.
that Earl, with his countess, and several noble-
men, prisoners ⁷⁶. Thus ended this active cam-
paign, in a manner equally glorious and happy
to the elder Henry; who, in December, con-
cluded a truce with the Kings of France and
Scotland, from the feast of St. Hilary, to the end
of the Easter holidays next year. ⁷⁷

Though the operations of war were suspended A.D. 1174.
for some months, by the truce and the season of Plan of the
the year, preparations for it were going forward. conspira-
The confederates resolving to make the most tors for
vigorous efforts, especially against England, this cam-
formed the following plan for the operations of paign.
the next campaign. While the King of Scotland
invaded the northern counties, the young King
Henry, with the Earl of Flanders, whose ambi-
tion had conquered his remorse, were to land in
the south, at the head of a powerful army of
Flemings; and several English earls, who had
been perverted from their duty, were to rise
with their followers in different counties, to in-
crease the public confusion. To detain the elder
Henry on the continent, the King of France
(accompanied by the two young princes, Richard
and Geoffrey) was to invade Normandy with all
his forces. ⁷³

In consequence of this well-concerted plan, Opera-
the King of Scotland, at the expiration of the tions of
the war.

⁷⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 69. M. Paris, p. 89.

⁷⁷ Benedict. Abbas, p. 72.

⁷³ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 31, 32.

truce,

A.D. 1174. truce, entered England with a great army, and spread terror and desolation over all the northern counties; while David Earl of Huntingdon, brother to the King of Scots, Robert Earl of Ferrers, Hugh Bigot Earl of Norfolk, Roger de Mowbray, and the numerous vassals of the two powerful Earls of Leicester and Chester, took the field at the head of their followers in their respective counties. If the young King, with the Earl of Flanders, had landed at this time, England must have submitted to their authority. But by their delays the whole scheme was disconcerted. Richard de Lucy, with some loyal barons, made head against the rebels in the centre of the kingdom; while the well-affected nobility of Lincolnshire and Yorkshire, commanded and animated by Geoffrey, Bishop-elect of Lincoln, King Henry's natural son by the Fair Rosamond, defeated Roger de Mowbray, and put a stop to the progress of the King of Scotland, obliging him to retire nearer to his own dominions.⁷⁹

Arrival of
Henry in
England,
and visit to
the tomb of
T. Becket.

When things were in this posture, King Henry, having put his territories on the continent in the best state of defence, embarked at Barfleur, July 8th, and landed that evening at Southampton, bringing with him the two Queens, Eleanor and Margaret, with the captive Earls of Chester and Leicester. Influenced by motives, about which we can only form uncertain guesses, he hastened

⁷⁹ R. Hoveden, p. 307, 308. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 32. Benedict. Abbas, p. 73. 748. Anglia Sacra, l. 2. p. 378, 379.

to Canterbury, to perform his devotions at the shrine of Thomas Becket, who was now esteemed the guardian of the English nation, and was become the favourite object of their adoration. Having spent a whole day and night in prostration, fasting, and prayer, before the tomb of Becket, and exposed his naked shoulders to the flagellations of the monks, he received absolution, and set out for London; where he arrived, July 13th,—a day distinguished by one of the most memorable and happy events of his reign — the captivity of the King of Scotland. ^{A.D. 1174.}

That prince had invested Alnwick castle; and fancying himself secure from the approach of any enemy, had sent out the bulk of his forces in three different bodies, to plunder the adjacent countries, retaining only his household troops about his person, to restrain the excursions of the garrison. The famous Ranulph de Glanville, then sheriff of Yorkshire, afterwards chief justiciary of England, receiving intelligence of this state of things, collected a choice body of about four hundred knights, with which he arrived at Newcastle in the evening of July 12th. Here he halted a few hours to refresh his men and horses, and marching about day-break, approached very near the enemy's camp next morning, quite undiscovered, under the cover of a thick fog. When the fog cleared up, Alnwick castle was seen at a small distance, and the King

King of
Scotland
taken pri-
soner.

A.D. 1174. of Scots, with about seventy knights, engaged in the fashionable exercise of tilting in a neighbouring field. The King was not in the least alarmed at the sight of these armed troops, believing them to belong to his own subject Duncan Earl of Fife. Even when he discovered that they were enemies, he was so far from attempting to save himself by flight, that, shaking his spear, and crying to his attendants, "it will now be seen who is a good knight," he boldly advanced to the attack. But his horse being killed in the first encounter, he was thrown to the ground and taken prisoner; at which his followers were so much confounded that they either fled or yielded.

Consequences of that event.

Henry being awakened from his sleep at midnight by the messenger who brought the news of this event, leapt from his bed, and wept for joy, commanding all his friends to be called to him immediately, and all the bells of London to be rung to proclaim the happy tidings⁸¹. Nor was this excessive joy without foundation. For the captivity of the King of Scots blasted all the schemes of the confederates, and put an end to the troubles of England almost in a moment. The Scotch army immediately retired, and the several corps of which it was composed quarrelling amongst themselves, gave their enemies ample revenge for the injuries they had done them. The rebellious barons laboured to anticipate one

⁸¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 23. 25. Benedict. Abbas, p. 77, 78. R. Hoveden, p. 308, 309.

another in making their submissions, and giving up their castles; and young Henry, with the Earl of Flanders, who were ready to sail with a great fleet and army, no sooner heard of these events, than they laid aside all thoughts of an invasion. A.D. 1174.

The King of France having summoned all his nobility to attend him, with their followers, marched at their head, and sat down before Rouen, the capital of Normandy, July 21st, where he was soon after joined by young Henry and the Earl of Flanders, with all their forces, which enabled him to push the siege with great vigour, and without intermission. But the city was defended with equal vigour by the inhabitants, and several loyal barons who had thrown themselves into it with their vassals, and repelled all the open assaults of the besiegers, and also defeated an attempt that they had made to take it by surprise, on St. Laurence's day, August 10th, when a truce had been proclaimed.²² The King of France besieges Rouen.

Henry, hearing of the danger of his Norman capital, and having settled his affairs in England, embarked at Portsmouth, August 7th, with his Brabançons, and a thousand Welsh, whom he had taken into his pay; carrying with him the King of Scots, and the two potent Earls of Chester and Leicester; but leaving the two Queens behind him. He met with a favourable passage, and landed next day at Barfleur, having Henry returns to Normandy, and raises the siege of Rouen.

²² W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 36.

A.D. 1174. spent no more than one month on this most fortunate expedition, by which he saved his kingdom from the most imminent danger. Committing his royal and noble captives to prison at Falaise, he marched towards Rouen, which he entered by the bridge over the Seine, on Sunday, August 11th, and was received with every possible demonstration of joy. Next morning he commanded the gate towards the enemy's camp, which had been walled up, to be opened, and the ditch to be filled; and sent his Welsh troops into the neighbouring woods, who were so fortunate as to take a large convoy of provisions. The besiegers now despairing to take the city, became anxious about their retreat, in order to which the King of France sent ambassadors to propose a conference to be held at Malaunay, and a truce for two days; to both which Henry consented. Under the protection of this truce, Louis marched his army through the Green Forest; but instead of halting at Malaunay to attend the conference, he pursued his march with great precipitation into his own territories.⁸³

Henry
concludes
an honourable
peace.

Though the King of France had escaped from a dangerous situation by this dishonourable stratagem, he was now convinced that all his efforts to ruin Henry would be in vain, and might end greatly to his own disgrace. He therefore seriously proposed a conference to be held at a place between Tours and Amboise; where an

⁸³ R. de Diceto, col. 579. J. Brompt. col. 1098.

end was put to this unnatural war, September 29th, by a peace, of which Henry prescribed the terms. By this peace the formidable confederacy against him was dissolved, and all who had been engaged in it, released from their oaths. His three rebellious sons threw themselves at his feet, implored his pardon, and acknowledged his authority as a father and a king; and he assigned them appointments for their support, more suitable to his own generosity than to their merits. All prisoners were set at liberty on both sides, and restored to their estates, except the King of Scots, and the Earls of Leicester and Chester, with whom a separate peace was to be made. A total oblivion of all injuries on both parts was declared, and young Henry agreed to confirm all the grants that had been made by his father during the war.⁸⁴

Thus did this great prince, by his wisdom, valour, activity, and good fortune, baffle all the attempts of a powerful combination, which seemed to threaten him with inevitable ruin. Nor was his lenity on this occasion less conspicuous than his other virtues. He set at liberty, without any ransom, no fewer than nine hundred and sixty-nine noblemen and gentlemen; and even those few who were excepted out of this pacification were not treated with severity. The kingdom of Scotland, after the captivity of its

Great
lenity of
King
Henry.

⁸⁴ Benedic. Abbas, p. 87—92. W. Neubrigen. l. 2. c. 38. R. Hoveden, p. 309, 310. Rymer Fœdera, p. 37, 38.

King

A.D. 1174.

King, became a scene of the most deplorable anarchy and confusion, which made that prince and his nobility willing to submit almost to any terms to procure his liberty; and Henry very prudently embraced this opportunity of reducing both to a feudal subjection to the crown of England. On this single condition a peace was concluded at Falaise, December 8th, and the King of Scots engaged that he and his successors, Kings of Scotland, together with all their prelates and barons, should do homage and swear fealty to Henry and his successors, Kings of England; for the due performance of which, in the first instance, certain hostages were given, and the King was set at liberty.⁸⁵

A.D. 1175.

Henry's
kind treat-
ment of
his sons.

Henry, who was a very fond indulgent parent, was so much delighted with the recovery of his sons out of the hands of his enemies, that he treated them, not only with the greatest kindness, but with the greatest confidence; giving to the young King a commission in Normandy; to Prince Richard in Poitou; and to Prince Geoffrey in Brittany, to command the forces of these provinces, for executing the late treaty, by dismantling certain castles belonging to their own adherents.⁸⁶

Seemingly
perfect re-
conciliation be-

When the time approached for their returning into England, young Henry began to betray some fears (which are said to have been suggested

⁸⁵ Rymer Fœdéra, l. i. p. 39, 40.

⁸⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 95—97.

by messages from the King of France) that his father might treat him with greater severity, and even put him in prison in that kingdom. But these fears being at length dispelled, he threw himself once more at his father's feet, in the castle of Bure, near Caen, April 1st, professing his sorrow for his former undutifulness, with many tears, and earnestly intreating him to allow him to do homage, and swear fealty, like his other subjects, as a token of his forgiveness. This was accordingly done; and Henry was so fully convinced of his son's sincerity and steadiness, that he sent him to the court of France (where he had been formerly seduced) to take his leave of his father-in-law; from whence he returned to his father at Cherburg; where they celebrated the festival of Easter; after which they embarked together at Barfleur, and landed, May 9th, at Portsmouth⁸⁷. For some time after their landing, the two kings constantly eat together at the same table, and even slept together in the same bed⁸⁸, to convince the world of the cordiality of their reconciliation. In order to make the terms of the late pacification more firm and better known, they were read and ratified in a great council or parliament held at Westminster, May 20th, in which young Henry renewed his homage, and repeated his oath of fealty to his father⁸⁹. After this King Henry

A.D. 1175.

tween
Henry and
his eldest
son, and
their return
together
into Eng-
land.

⁸⁷ Diceto, col. 585, 586. Benedict. Abbas, p. 96, 97.

⁸⁸ M. Paris, p. 91.

⁸⁹ Diceto, col. 588.

A.D. 1175. the father (accompanied by the young King) made a progress into those parts of the kingdom, where the defection of the nobility had been most general, to see their castles demolished, and to punish them by heavy fines for their transgressions of the forest-laws; in which he seems to have had two ends in view,—the replenishing his own treasury, which was much exhausted,—and impoverishing his disloyal subjects.⁹⁰

King and
nobility of
Scotland
do homage
to Henry
and his son.

In this progress the two kings were met at York, August 10th, by William King of Scotland, with all the prelates, earls, barons, and freeholders of his kingdom, who, according to the convention at Falaise, did homage to both kings, and swore fealty, first to King Henry the father, and then to King Henry the son, saving their fealty to the father; on which their hostages were set at liberty⁹¹. Thus was this important transaction of the feudal subjection of the crown and kingdom of Scotland to the crown and kingdom of England completed.

King of
Connaught
submits to
Henry.

At the return of the two kings from their northern progress, they held a great council at Windsor, about Michaelmas, where a treaty was concluded with the ambassadors of Roderic O'Connar, King of Connaught, by which that prince agreed to hold his kingdom of the King of England, and to pay by way of tribute the

⁹⁰ Benedict. Abbas, p. 112.

⁹¹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 113—120. R. Hoveden, p. 312. M. Paris, p. 91.

tenth hide of all the cattle killed in his dominions.⁹² A.D. 1175.

Since their return from Normandy, Henry had kept his son almost continually in his company, with a view to gain his affections by the kindest and most respectful treatment, as well as to instruct him in the arts of government. But this soon became irksome to the young King, who ardently desired to be at a distance from so grave a monitor, that he might enjoy greater liberty. With this view he frequently solicited his father to give him leave to pay a devotional visit to St. James of Campostella. The King for some time resisted these solicitations; but at length was obliged to yield to the teasing importunity of his son, who was waiting at Portsmouth for a fair wind, when his two brothers, Richard and Geoffrey landed at Southampton, on Good Friday. This brought Henry back to court to visit his brothers; and his father prevailed upon him to accompany his brother Richard into Poitou, to assist him in reducing the refractory barons of that province: and on that expedition he sailed from Portsmouth, April 19th⁹³. But as soon as he reached the continent, he paid little regard to his father's injunctions, or his own engagements, spending his time in the company of those who had been his greatest confidants in his former revolt. Henry, informed of his son's suspicious

A.D. 1176.
Henry sends his three sons, Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey into Poitou.

⁹² Rymer Fœdera, p. 41, 42. Benedict. Abbas, p. 122—126.

⁹³ Benedict. Abbas, p. 140, 141.

A.D. 1176. conduct, endeavoured to guard against its consequences, by demolishing some of the castles of those barons who had been engaged in the late rebellion, and taking others of them into his own possession.⁹⁴

A.D. 1177.
Henry
pardons
the Earls
of Chester
and Lei-
cester.

Though Henry was under a necessity of diminishing the power of some of his barons who were of doubtful loyalty, he took much greater pleasure in pardoning, when he imagined it would be productive of a good effect. Of this he gave the clearest proof, in pardoning the two potent Earls of Leicester and Chester, who had been excepted out of the late pacification, and restoring to them their great estates, in a parliament held at Northampton in January this year.⁹⁵

Great
council at
Marlbo-
rough.

In another great council held at Marlborough, about Candlemas, orders were given to all the sheriffs to make a strict inquiry into the number of knights fees in their respective counties; and a proclamation was issued to all who held of the king by knights service, to attend him at London, May 1st, with their horses and arms, in order to an expedition into Normandy⁹⁶. But the report of these preparations seems to have rendered the use of them unnecessary.

Disputes
between
the Kings

Henry was no less famous over all Europe for his wisdom and justice as a judge, than for his

⁹⁴ R. Hoveden, p. 317.

⁹⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 320. Benedict. Abbas, p. 166.

⁹⁶ Id. Benedict. Abbas, 170, 171.

power and greatness as a king; which engaged Sanchez King of Navarre, and Alphonso King of Castile, to make a reference to him of all their differences, which had been the occasion of long wars and much bloodshed. In consequence of this, both these princes sent the most learned and eloquent advocates to plead their cause, which was solemnly heard in a great council held at London, March 13th, and determined in a manner perfectly agreeable to both parties⁹⁷: a transaction more honourable to Henry than many victories.

A.D. 1177.
of Castile
and Na-
varre, de-
termined
by Henry
in a parlia-
ment at
London.

Much important business was transacted in another great council held at Oxford, in May, at which the princes and chief lords of Wales attended, and did homage to Henry for their territories and estates. In this council he declared his youngest son Prince John Lord of Ireland, to be held by him and his heirs, as a fief under the crown of England; and distributed the conquered countries in that island, to such of his barons as he thought most deserving, and most able to defend and enlarge these conquests⁹⁸. About this time Queen Margaret (confort of young Henry), who had secretly withdrawn from England, was delivered of a son at Paris, who died soon after his birth.⁹⁹

Transac-
tions of a
parliament
at Oxford.

⁹⁷ Benedict. Abbas, l. 1. p. 172—175. Hoveden. Annal. p. 321—323. Rymer Fœdera, l. 1. p. 43, 44.

⁹⁸ Benedict. Abbas, p. 206—209.

⁹⁹ Hoveden, p. 324.

A.D. 1177.

Henry's
voyage to
Norman-
dy. In-
terview
with the
King of
France, &c.

A new subject of dispute, which continued long, and was attended with the most important consequences, now broke out between the King of France and the King of England. By one of the articles of the peace concluded between these two monarchs at Montmirail, January 6th, A. D. 1169., it was agreed, that Prince Richard, Henry's second son, should marry the Princess Adelais, Louis's youngest daughter; and that princess was soon after delivered to Henry, to be educated in the court of England.¹⁰⁰ As both the parties were now become marriageable, Louis insisted that their marriage should be consummated without delay; to which Henry (who is said to have contracted a criminal affection for the princess) discovered a reluctance, which could never be overcome. Louis, finding all his own applications ineffectual, prevailed upon the Pope to interpose his authority, who threatened to lay all Henry's dominions under an interdict, if he did not immediately allow the marriage to be completed. To ward off this blow, he embarked at Portsmouth, August 17th, and had an interview with the King of France, at which a legate from the Pope was present, September 21st; in which he managed matters with so much art, as to prevent the interdict, and elude the immediate completion of his son's marriage, by consenting to take upon him the cross, and

¹⁰⁰ Epist. J. Sarisburin, apud Epist. S. T. Cantuarien, l. 2. p. 66. Epist. 268.

engaging to go (in company with Louis, who A.D. 1177. took upon him the cross at the same time) on an expedition into the Holy Land.¹⁰¹

Though Henry had taken the cross, it is not A.D. 1178. very certain that he ever seriously intended to Henry re- conduct an army into the Holy Land, as he al- turns to ways had recourse to excuses when he was urged England. to perform that engagement. Having spent the Knights first six months of this year in regulating the his son civil and ecclesiastical affairs of his continental Geoffrey, dominions, he landed, July 15th, in England, &c. and there employed his time to the same beneficent purposes. On August 6th, he knighted his third son Geoffrey, with great solemnity at Woodstock; who soon after went abroad to display his valour and dexterity in tournaments, emulous of the fame which his two elder brothers, Henry and Richard, had acquired in those fashionable exercises.¹⁰²

The frequent absences of Henry from his A.D. 1179. kingdom, were attended with many ill effects, Henry and, in particular, encouraged some of his she- punishes riffs, foresters, and other officers, to venture several upon acts of tyranny and oppression, which they sheriffs. durst not have attempted under the eye of their sovereign. Being now at leisure, he called many of these delinquents to a severe account, and made several new arrangements for the better

¹⁰¹ Hoveden. Annal. p. 326. Benedict. Abbas, l. 1. p. 230—242.

¹⁰² Id. *ibid.* p. 266.

A.D. 1179. administration of justice, which will be more properly delineated in the third chapter of this book.¹⁰³

A.D. 1180. Henry's attention was again called to the continent by some important changes that had lately happened in the royal family of France. Louis VII. having been seized with a palsy, his only son Philip, a youth of about fifteen years of age, was crowned, with his consent, and took upon him the administration of affairs; in which he was wholly directed by Philip Earl of Flanders. At the instigation of this Prince, the young King treated his own mother Queen Adelaïs, and her three brothers, the Earls of Blois and Sancerre, and the Archbishop of Rheims, with so much severity, that they retired into Normandy, and implored the protection of the King of England¹⁰⁴. On this occasion Henry acted a very noble part. Instead of fomenting the discord in the royal family of France, as Louis had done in his, he laboured to restore its peace. In order to this, he made a voyage into Normandy, and had an interview with King Philip at Gisors, in which he reconciled that prince to his mother and uncles, on reasonable terms, in spite of all the opposition made to it by the Earl of Flanders. In this interview also he renewed the peace with Philip that he had made with Louis about three

¹⁰³ Diceto, col. 605. Petri Blesens. Epist. 95.

¹⁰⁴ Hoveden. p. 339. Benedict. Abbas, p. 325, 326.

years before, and concluded with that Prince an alliance for their mutual defence.¹⁰⁵

A.D. 1180.

When Henry had settled all his affairs in Normandy, and was ready to embark for England, he received an embassy from the young King of France, earnestly intreating his assistance to compose the differences which had again broke out in his court and family. In consequence of this intreaty he returned to Gisors, and once more allayed the storm that raged with great violence in the court of France, between the parties of the Queen-mother and the Earl of Flanders; after which he embarked at Cherbourg, and landed at Portsmouth, July 26th.¹⁰⁶

A.D. 1181.

Henry returns to England.

As all Henry's extensive dominions now enjoyed a profound peace, he thought it the best time to provide for their future security and defence. With this view he published his famous assize of arms, as it is called; a regulation so wise and useful, that it was immediately adopted by several other nations. By this law every earl, baron, and knight, was to have constantly in his possession as many complete suits of armour (each suit consisting of a coat of mail, a helmet, a shield, and a lance) as he had knights fees. Every freeman who had rents or goods to the value of sixteen marks, was to have one suit of the same armour; every freeman who had only ten marks, was to have a habergeon, a cap of

Henry's assize of arms.

¹⁰⁵ Rymer Fœdera, l. 1. p. 53, 54. Id. ibid. p. 325—329.

¹⁰⁶ Id. ibid. p. 263, 264.

iron,

A.D. 1181. iron, and a lance; and every free burgeſs was to have a wambois, a cap of iron, and a lance. Theſe arms were neither to be lent, fold, pawned, nor given for payment of debt, but kept in conſtant readineſs for uſe.¹⁰⁷

A.D. 1182. Henry was again called to the continent by the diſputes in the court of France, which had now broken out into a civil war. But he was for ſome time prevented from making that voyage by contrary winds, and did not land in Normandy till about Midlent. Having procured an interview after Eaſter with the King of France, and the heads of the two contending parties, he once more reſtored tranquillity to that diſtracted court and kingdom.¹⁰⁸

Henry's
kindneſs
to the
Duke of
Saxony
his ſon-in-
law.

While he was engaged in this beneficent tranſaction, ſo worthy of a great and good king, he received the melancholy news of the expulſion of his ſon-in-law, Henry the Lion, Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, from all his territories, by the united forces of the Emperor and empire. About the end of July, that unhappy prince, his afflicted confort, his infant family, and a few faithful friends, who had not abandoned them in their diſtreſs, arrived in Normandy; and were received by Henry with the moſt ſoothing tenderneſs. On the Duke and his family he ſettled a maintenance ſuitable to their rank and his affection; and on their faithful attendants he be-

¹⁰⁷ Benediſt. Abbas, p. 365—368. Hoveden, p. 351.

¹⁰⁸ Benediſt. Abbas, p. 373, 374.

flowed valuable presents, and procured them permission to return to their native country.¹⁰⁹

A.D. 1182.

Henry prevents a rupture with his eldest son.

Nor was this his only domestic uneasiness at this time. For his eldest son Henry, who had spent much of his time, for several years, in frequenting tilts and tournaments, attended by an expensive retinue of knights, importunately demanded the cession of Normandy to enable him to reward his followers; and meeting with a refusal, retired into France in violent discontent. But by frequent messages, and generous offers of an establishment of one hundred pounds of Anjouvine money a-day for himself, ten pounds of the same money for his consort, and suitable rewards for one hundred knights, he prevailed upon him to return, and profess his satisfaction with this appointment.¹¹⁰

A.D. 1183.

Rupture in the royal family of England.

Henry was earnestly desirous of increasing and perpetuating the harmony which now subsisted in his family, and amongst his sons, by adding the feudal ties, which were then esteemed inviolable, to those of blood. At Angers, in the beginning of this year, he held an assembly of his nobles; in which he proposed, that his sons, Richard and Geoffrey, should do homage to their eldest brother Henry, for their respective territories of Aquitaine and Brittany, that they might be engaged to support one another by the mutual obligations established by that ceremony. Geoffrey complied with his father's will, and did

¹⁰⁹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 377.

¹¹⁰ Id. p. 378. 380.

homage

A.D. 1183. homage to his brother for Brittany; but Richard rejected the proposal with so much haughtiness, that it occasioned an immediate and most violent animosity between him and his eldest brother. These fiery spirits immediately flew to arms, and the war was carried on between them with so much rancour, that no quarter was given on either side. Their afflicted father for some time did not interpose. But at last, observing that his second son Richard was in danger of being overpowered by the united forces of his two brothers, and of some powerful barons of Aquitaine, who had revolted, he raised an army, and marched to his relief. This brought on a treaty between the contending parties near Limoges, which was managed with great duplicity on the part of the two associated brothers; and the elder Henry, suspecting no harm when engaged in a negotiation with his own children, was twice in danger of being killed.¹¹¹

Death of
young
King
Henry.

During this negotiation, the mind of young Henry was agitated—by the most violent rage against his brother Richard—by the strongest resentment against his father for interposing in his behalf—and by the most tormenting uncertainty, whether to venture a battle or submit to peace. At length he was persuaded by his brother Geoffrey, and the revolted barons of Aquitaine, to hazard a battle. But the horror attending this unnatural resolution, added to his other pas-

¹¹¹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 385, &c.

sions,

sions, threw him into a fever. When his physicians acquainted him, that they had no hopes of his recovery, his soul was seized with bitter remorse and anguish for his repeated rebellions against his indulgent parent, to whom he sent a message, expressing his repentance, and earnestly intreating a visit. Henry, prevented from complying with this request by the representations of his friends, took a ring from his finger, and sent it to his son as a mark of his forgiveness. The dying prince received it with much emotion, and pressing it to his lips, soon after expired (June 11th) on a heap of ashes, where he had commanded himself to be laid, with a halter about his neck, and in fearful agonies of mind¹¹². When Henry was assured of his son's death, all his fortitude of mind and strength of body failed him. He fainted away thrice; after which a flood of tears coming to his relief, he broke out into loud lamentations, extolling the beauty, bravery, and other good qualities of the departed Prince, and forgetting all his faults¹¹³. On the death of young Henry, his army disbanded, his confederates hastened to make their submissions, and the public tranquillity was restored.

Henry, after the death of his eldest son, became desirous of making some new arrangements in the disposal of his territories amongst his sur-

A.D. 1183.

A.D. 1184.

Fresh disputes between

¹¹² Benedict. Abbas, p. 392, 393. W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 7.
R. Hoveden. Annal. p. 354.

¹¹³ Benedict. Abbas, p. 394.

viving

A.D. 1184.

Henry and
his sons.He returns
to Eng-
land. Ex-
pedition
into Wales,
&c.

viving sons, which unhappily gave rise to new disputes in his family. As Richard was now become heir apparent to the kingdom of England and the duchy of Normandy, his father proposed that he should resign Aquitaine in favour of his youngest brother John. Richard required a few days to consider of this proposal; at the end of which he returned a refusal in the strongest terms, declaring, that no man should ever possess Aquitaine while he lived¹¹⁴. Henry, much offended at this refusal, placed his favourite son John, now seventeen years of age, at the head of an army, in hopes of terrifying Richard into a compliance, and in the mean time went himself into England, where he landed June 13th¹¹⁵. The Welsh had committed some ravages on the English borders during the King's absence; but as soon as he approached their territories with an army, their Prince, Rees ap Griffin, waited upon him, and made the most humble submissions. While he was engaged in this expedition, he received the unwelcome news that an actual war had broken out between his sons abroad: on which he sent messengers, commanding them to dismiss their forces, and come to him immediately; which none of them dared to disobey. At their arrival, Henry held a great council of his prelates and nobility at London, November 30th, in which his three sons were publicly

¹¹⁴ Benedict. Abbas, p. 404.¹¹⁵ Id. p. 406.

reconciled.

reconciled. After which Geoffrey was sent back A.D. 1134.
to the continent, and the other two remained in
England.¹¹⁶

Queen Eleanor, who had been several years in A.D. 1185.
a state of confinement, was set at liberty on the English court in a state of tranquillity.
arrival of the Duke and Duchess of Saxony, with
their family, in England, in the summer of the
preceding year, and now lived on decent terms
with her royal consort, when the King's ambaf-
sadors brought the Emperor's permission to the
Duke of Saxony to return into Germany, with
hopes of being restored to some part of his do-
minions; which diffused the greatest joy over the
English court. When Henry was in good hu-
mour on account of this agreeable news, he
yielded to the sollicitations of his son Richard,
and permitted him to return into Aquitaine, and
then set out on a progress into the north of
England.¹¹⁷

When Henry had reached Nottingham, in his The patri-
arch of
Jerusalem
arrives in
England,
and endea-
vours to
excite
Henry to
an expedi-
tion into
the Holy
Land.
way to York, he was overtaken by a messenger,
with the news, that Heraclius, the patriarch of
Jerusalem, was arrived in England. On which
he returned, and received him at Reading. The
patriarch, falling at the King's feet, accosted
him in this pathetic strain: "The Lord Jesus
"Christ, O King! calls thee, and the people of
"God intreat thee, to come to the defence of
"the Holy Land; and in their name I present
"thee with the royal standard, with the keys of

¹¹⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 415.¹¹⁷ Id. p. 432.

" the

A.D. 1185. " the city of Jerusalem, and of the sepulchre of
 " our Lord. Come, O great Prince! and rescue
 " us out of the hands of our enemies; for in
 " thee, under God, we place all our hope and
 " confidence." The King raised the patriarch
 from the ground, and promised to consult with
 his prelates and nobles on the subject of his peti-
 tion¹¹⁸. A great council was accordingly held
 at London, on the first Sunday of Lent; in
 which, after long deliberation, it was agreed,
 that it was more proper for Henry to stay at
 home, and govern his own dominions, than to
 go on so distant an expedition; and that he
 should consult with the King of France before he
 gave a final answer to the patriarch; but that
 such prelates, nobles, and others, as pleased,
 might take the cross¹¹⁹: a liberty which too
 many embraced.

Henry
 grants
 Hunting-
 ton to the
 King of
 Scotland,
 and sends
 his son
 Prince
 John into
 Ireland.

Henry
 goes into
 Norman-
 dy, and re-
 duces his

Another council was held at Windsor, April
 1st, in which Henry made a grant of the county
 of Huntington to William King of Scotland, who
 was present; and having solemnly knighted his
 own youngest son Prince John, he sent him into
 Ireland, with a considerable army.¹²⁰

The King of England's presence was now be-
 come very necessary on the continent, to extin-
 guish a fresh war that had broken out between
 his two restless and ambitious sons, Richard and

¹¹⁸ Benedict. Abbas, p. 434. R. Hoveden, p. 359.

¹¹⁹ Diceto, col. 626. Benedict. Abbas, p. 435.

¹²⁰ Id. ibid. Hoveden, p. 359. Expug. Hibern. l. 2. c. 31.

Geoffrey; and therefore, embarking at Dover, April 16th, he landed at Whitland, and from thence went by land into Normandy, where he immediately raised an army. But, being unwilling to proceed to extremities with his own children, he sent a message to Prince Richard, commanding him to lay down his arms, and resign the duchy of Aquitaine to his mother Queen Eleanor, to whom it belonged; threatening, that if he did not obey, that princess should appear at the head of an army, and take possession of it by force. Richard, by the advice of his wisest friends, complied with this command; and coming to his father, was again received into favour. ¹²¹

A.D. 1185.
son Richard to obedience.

After this, Henry had a consultation with the King of France, on the affairs of the Holy Land, at which Heraclius was present. But neither of these princes could be prevailed upon to undertake a croisade in person, though they both promised very considerable aids in men and money, with which the patriarch was far from being contented. ¹²²

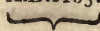
Henry hath a conference with the King of France about the Holy Land.

Prince John's expedition into Ireland this year was unsuccessful, owing to the imprudent and insolent behaviour of the prince himself, and of the young nobility in his retinue, to the Irish chieftains, by which the well-affected were disgusted, and the disaffected were confirmed in

Ill success of Prince John's expedition into Ire-

¹²¹ Benediſt. Abbas, p. 436.

¹²² Id. p. 437.

A.D. 1185.  their opposition¹²³. Having therefore squandered away a great sum of money, and lost the best part of his army, he returned into England, December 17th, leaving the chief direction of affairs in Ireland to the brave John de Cury.

A.D. 1186. A few days before the beginning of Lent this year, Henry had an interview with Philip King of France at Gisors; in which some disputes that had arisen about the dowry of Queen Margaret, widow of young King Henry, were amicably adjusted; and Henry also solemnly engaged no longer to delay the marriage of his son Richard with the Princess Adela¹²⁴. But he found means to elude the fulfilling of this engagement, by sending his son to prosecute a war, the causes of which are not mentioned, against the Earl of Thoulouse, while he himself came over into England, where he landed April 27th.

Death of
Prince
Geoffrey.

Henry's second surviving son Geoffrey, not contented with the duchy of Brittany, petitioned his father for the earldom of Anjou; which was refused. Irritated at this repulse, and being naturally of a restless intriguing disposition, he retired to the court of France, and engaged in very criminal machinations against his royal father, and the peace of his dominions. But, while he was thus employed, he was seized with a fever, occasioned by the bruises he had received in a tournament, and died at Paris, August

¹²³ Expug. Hibern. l. 2. c. 35.

¹²⁴ Benedict. Abbas, p. 444.

19th¹²⁵. Though an excessive fondness for his children was one of Henry's greatest failings, he was not much affected with the news of his death, as he was no stranger to his restless deceitful character, and the pernicious schemes in which he was engaged.

Geoffrey left only one daughter, an infant, who was the innocent occasion of a breach between the Kings of France and England. For Philip sent ambassadors to Henry, claiming the guardianship of the heiress of Brittany, and the government of her dominions during her infancy; and threatening to declare war against him, if these things were not granted. Though this claim was ill founded, Henry, being averse to an immediate rupture, sent ambassadors to the court of France, who procured a truce to the beginning of the next year, which was afterwards prolonged to Easter.¹²⁶

Henry, desirous of avoiding a war with the King of France, embarked for Normandy, February 20th, and held two conferences with that prince, in the months of March and April; but without effect: Philip being much irritated, and with good reason, that the marriage of his sister with Prince Richard had not been completed; and that Henry kept that princess in a kind of captivity in England.¹²⁷ War being

Dispute between Henry and the King of France, about the guardianship of the heiress of Brittany.

A.D. 1187. War between Henry and Philip concluded by a truce.

¹²⁵ Diceto, col. 630.

¹²⁶ Hoveden, p. 361. Benedict. Abbas, p. 455.

¹²⁷ Gervas Chron. col. 1486.

A.D. 1187. now unavoidable, both kings took the field at the head of very great armies; and, after various operations of less importance, they were on the point of engaging in a general action, June 21st, when the Pope's legates, who were in the King of England's army, interposed their good offices, and brought about a truce for two years.¹²⁸

Undutiful
behaviour
of Prince
Richard.

After the conclusion of this truce, Prince Richard visited the King of France, in his camp, and from thence accompanied him to Paris, and contracted so intimate a friendship with him, that it surprised the whole world, and greatly alarmed his father, who sent frequent messages, intreating him to return, and promising to deny him nothing that he could reasonably desire. The prince, after various delays, at length promised to comply; but when he was on his way, he seized a considerable treasure of his father's at Chinon, with which he went into Poitou, and began to fortify his towns and castles. Though Henry could not but be much offended at this undutiful behaviour, he still pursued the method of negotiation; and at last prevailed upon Richard to come to him at Angers; where he repeated his oaths of fealty and allegiance before a great assembly.¹²⁹

Birth of
Arthur
Duke of
Britanny.

In the mean time Constantia Duchess-dowager of Britanny was delivered of a posthumous son, March 29th; who, at the request of the nobles

¹²⁸ Gervas Chron. col. 1500. Benedic^t. Abbas, p. 467, 468.

¹²⁹ Id. p. 471.

of that duchy, was named Arthur; and his mother was appointed guardian of his person and dominions, under the protection and superintendency of his grandfather Henry.¹³⁰

Towards the end of this year the melancholy news arrived from the Holy Land, that the Christian army had been entirely defeated, and the city of Jerusalem taken, by the famous Saladin Sultan of Egypt; which filled all Europe with consternation, and excited many princes, and, amongst others, Richard Plantagenet Prince of England, to take the cross.¹³¹

Prince
Richard
takes the
cross.

Though Henry had often promised to conclude the marriage of his son Richard with the Princess Adela, he still delayed, on various pretences, the consummation of that marriage. At this her brother Philip King of France was greatly irritated, and raised an army with a design to compel him to fulfil his promise, or to deliver up the lady, together with Gisors and its territories. To avert this storm, he had an interview with Philip near Gisors, January 21st; at which William Archbishop of Tyre, ambassador from the Christians in the Holy Land, was present, and represented their deplorable situation in such affecting strains, that the two kings, forgetting the original intention of their meeting, took the cross from the hands of the archbishop;

A.D. 1188.
The Kings
of England
and France,
&c. take
the cross.

¹³⁰ W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 7.

¹³¹ R. Hoveden, p. 362—365. Benedict. Abbas, p. 471—493.
W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 17, 18.

A.D. 1188. in which they were imitated by the Earl of Flanders, the Earl of Champagne, and many other nobles.¹³²

Henry returns to England, and makes preparation for a croifade.

Henry haftened into England, where he landed January 31st, to make preparations for his expedition into the Eaft, and held a great council of his prelates and barons at Gritington in Northamptonfhire, February 11th; in which a tenth of all rents for one year, and a tenth of all moveable goods, except the books of the clergy and arms of the laity, were granted to defray the expences of the intended croifade. But all who took the crofs were exempted from the payment of thefe taxes. Even with this exemption, one hundred and thirty thoufand pounds were raifed; a fum equal in efficacy to two millions of our prefent money¹³³. Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury, preached, before this affembly, a very pathetic fermen on the myftery of the holy crofs, and perfuaded prodigious numbers of prelates, nobles, knights, and others, to enlift in this holy war. With the fame intention, and no lefs fuccefs, he afterwards made a progrefs through Wales.¹³⁴

War breaks out on the continent,

While great preparations were making in England, for the projected expedition into the Eaft;

¹³² Itinerarium Gaufr. Vinifauf. l. i. c. 17. Benedict. Abbas, p. 495, 496. W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 23.

¹³³ Hoveden, p. 366. Benedict. Abbas, p. 496, 497. Gervas Chron. col. 1529.

¹³⁴ Vide Itinerarium Cambriæ, apud Camden, Anglica Normannica, &c. p. 820, &c.

a war broke out on the continent, between the Earl of Thoulouse and Prince Richard Duke of Aquitaine, which was attended with the most fatal consequences, though it proceeded only from a trifling dispute about some merchants. The Earl of Thoulouse, seeing many of his towns taken, and his capital threatened with a siege, implored the protection of his sovereign the King of France; who warmly espoused his cause, and marched at the head of a great army, into the King of England's territories at Berry, where he took several towns. Henry, astonished at the news of this unexpected invasion, sent ambassadors to expostulate with that prince, and, if possible, to prevent a war. But these ambassadors were ill received, and returned without any satisfactory answer, which obliged Henry to hasten to the continent, where he landed July 11th, and immediately retaliated the hostilities of the King of France.¹³⁵

A.D. 1188.

in which
Henry en-
gages.

This war was very disagreeable to the Earl of Flanders, and several other princes, who were impatient to proceed on their expedition into the Holy Land; and, at their request, the two kings held one conference in October, and another in November. In the last of these conferences, a scene opened, that involved the King of England in great perplexity and distress, from which he never recovered. At this conference, the King of France (who had made a private agree-

Conference
between the
Kings of
England
and France,
in which
Prince
Richard
forsakes his
father, and
joins the
King of
France.

¹³⁵ Benedict. Abbas, p. 503—516.

A.D. 1188. in which they were imitated by the Earl of Flanders, the Earl of Champagne, and many other nobles.¹³²

Henry returns to England, and makes preparation for a croifade.

Henry haftened into England, where he landed January 31st, to make preparations for his expedition into the Eaft, and held a great council of his prelates and barons at Gritington in Northamptonshire, February 11th; in which a tenth of all rents for one year, and a tenth of all moveable goods, except the books of the clergy and arms of the laity, were granted to defray the expences of the intended croifade. But all who took the crofs were exempted from the payment of thefe taxes. Even with this exemption, one hundred and thirty thoufand pounds were raifed; a fum equal in efficacy to two millions of our prefent money¹³³. Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury, preached, before this afsembly, a very pathetic fermen on the myftery of the holy crofs, and perfuaded prodigious numbers of prelates, nobles, knights, and others, to enlift in this holy war. With the fame intention, and no lefs fuccefs, he afterwards made a progrefs through Wales.¹³⁴

Warbreaks out on the continent,

While great preparations were making in England, for the projected expedition into the Eaft,

¹³² Itinerarium Gaufr. Vinifauf. l. i. c. 17. Benedict. Abbas, p. 495, 496. W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 23.

¹³³ Hoveden, p. 366. Benedict. Abbas, p. 496, 497. Gervas Chron. col. 1529.

¹³⁴ Vide Itinerarium Cambriæ, apud Camden, Anglica Normannica, &c. p. 820, &c.

a war broke out on the continent, between the Earl of Thoulouse and Prince Richard Duke of Aquitaine, which was attended with the most fatal consequences, though it proceeded only from a trifling dispute about some merchants. The Earl of Thoulouse, seeing many of his towns taken, and his capital threatened with a siege, implored the protection of his sovereign the King of France; who warmly espoused his cause, and marched at the head of a great army, into the King of England's territories at Berry, where he took several towns. Henry, astonished at the news of this unexpected invasion, sent ambassadors to expostulate with that prince, and, if possible, to prevent a war. But these ambassadors were ill received, and returned without any satisfactory answer, which obliged Henry to hasten to the continent, where he landed July 11th, and immediately retaliated the hostilities of the King of France.¹³⁵

A.D. 1188.

in which
Henry en-
gages.

This war was very disagreeable to the Earl of Flanders, and several other princes, who were impatient to proceed on their expedition into the Holy Land; and, at their request, the two kings held one conference in October, and another in November. In the last of these conferences, a scene opened, that involved the King of England in great perplexity and distress, from which he never recovered. At this conference, the King of France (who had made a private agree-

Conference
between the
Kings of
England
and France,
in which
Prince
Richard
forsakes his
father, and
joins the
King of
France.

¹³⁵ Benedict. Abbas, p. 503—516.

A.D. 1188. ment with Prince Richard) proposed to put an end to the war, and restore all his conquests in Berry, on these two conditions, — that the marriage of his sister Adelais and Richard should be immediately consummated—and that all Henry's subjects in England and on the continent should do homage to Richard as the heir of all his dominions. The prince declared his entire satisfaction with these proposals, earnestly pressing their acceptance; and when they were rejected by Henry, Richard, in the presence of the whole assembly, went over to Philip, and did homage to him for Normandy, Maine, Anjou, Berry, and Aquitaine¹³⁶. After this transaction the conference broke up in great confusion.

A.D. 1189. As soon as the season of the year permitted, Death of Henry II. King Philip, accompanied by Prince Richard and many barons of Normandy and Aquitaine, who had revolted with that prince, invaded Henry's territories with fire and sword¹³⁷. About Easter hostilities were suspended, and a conference appointed by the influence of the Pope's legate, who had been sent into France to attempt the reconciliation of the two kings. In this conference, which was held at la Ferté Bernard, June 5th, Philip made the same proposals as formerly, but Prince Richard added another, That his brother John should accompany him to the Holy Land, that he might not have an opportunity of supplanting him in his absence.

¹³⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 521.

¹³⁷ Id. p. 534.

All these conditions being equally disagreeable A.D. 1189.
 to Henry, they were rejected by him, and the war
 was renewed with great fury: but that prosperity
 and good fortune which had long attended this
 great prince, now forsook him, and he was obliged
 to flee before his enemies¹³⁸. In this reverse of
 fortune, when he was pursued from place to
 place by his eldest son Richard, he was basely
 abandoned by his youngest and favourite son
 John, who deserted to his enemies. This last
 event, added to all his other causes of chagrin,
 gave a mortal wound to his affectionate heart,
 and threw him into a fever, of which he died, at
 Chinon, on Thursday July 6th, in the thirty-
 fifth year of his reign, and the fifty-seventh of
 his age.¹³⁹

Thus died Henry II., who was certainly the His cha-
racter.
 greatest and most accomplished prince that had
 filled the throne of England since the Norman
 conquest, and inferior to very few of our princes
 in any period. In his person (which is very
 minutely described by several contemporary
 writers), he was of middle stature, remarkably
 strong and active, but inclining to corpulency,
 which he guarded against by abstemiousness and
 continual exercise. His countenance was comely,
 and his eyes had a mild lustre, except when he
 was angry; and then they were uncommonly
 fierce and sparkling. In the very last years of

¹³⁸ W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 25. Hoveden, p. 372.

¹³⁹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 546. W. Neubrigen. l. 3. c. 25.

his

A.D. 1189. his life he mounted a horse with greater agility, and rode with greater spirit, than any of his courtiers, either in hunting or on a journey. In his deportment he was exceedingly polite and affable, except to persons of a haughty spirit and carriage, whom he delighted to humble. His conversation was pleasant and facetious; his elocution easy, eloquent, and graceful. His heart was warm, and his passions strong, which rendered him an ardent lover, but not a faithful husband, — a zealous friend, but formidable enemy, — a kind master, and too indulgent parent. His understanding, which was naturally good, was improved by an excellent education, under his uncle the Earl of Gloucester, by assiduous reading of the best books, particularly history, and by frequent conversation with the wisest men; by which means he became the most learned prince and the greatest politician of the age in which he flourished. His memory was so tenacious, that he remembered almost all he read or heard, and never forgot a face he had once seen. He avoided war from principles of prudence and humanity; but when it became necessary, he carried it on with so much courage, conduct, and activity, that he constantly baffled all the schemes of all his enemies. In the arts of peace he greatly delighted and excelled; being a strict and vigorous, but not unmerciful justiciary, a munificent patron of learning and learned men, and a great encourager of the arts, expending immense sums in fortifying towns and castles, repairing

repairing old and building new palaces, and
adorning them with gardens, parks, and fish-
ponds. In a word, one of his greatest enemies
acknowledges, "That he was endowed with so
" many excellent qualities, both natural and
" acquired, that there was no prince in the
" world comparable to him."¹⁴⁰

A.D

THE internal history of Wales, in this period, consists of a prodigious number of battles, skirmishes, mutual invasions, depredations, and murders, between the petty princes of its several principalities; a minute relation of which would swell this work, without affording either entertainment or instruction to its readers.¹⁴¹

History of
Wales.

Malcolm IV., surnamed *the Maiden*, mounted the throne of Scotland about a year before the accession of Henry II. to that of England; and being a prince of a feeble constitution and pacific temper, was ill qualified for contending with that powerful and enterprising neighbour. Accordingly he relinquished the northern counties of Cumberland and Northumberland, without a struggle, to Henry; and in an interview with that prince at Chester, A.D. 1157., he did homage to him for the county of Huntingdon, with a saving of his royal dignity¹⁴². Malcolm

History of
Scotland.

¹⁴⁰ Epist. S. Thom. l. i. ep. 103. Epist. Petri Blesens. ep. 66. Hibern. Expug. Girald. Camden. l. i. c. 45. J. Sarisburiens. de Nugis Curialium, l. 6. c. 18.

¹⁴¹ See Powel's Hist. Wales, p. 205—240.

¹⁴² Chron. Mailros, ann. 1157.

A.D. 1189. accompanied Henry in his expedition against Thouloufe A.D. 1159., and was knighted by him in the city of Tours. But this complaisance of his to the English monarch was very disagreeable to many of the Scotch nobility, who gave him a very indifferent reception on his return to Scotland; and the few remaining years of his reign were disturbed by frequent insurrections¹⁴³. Malcolm died of a lingering disease, at Jedburgh, December 9th, A.D. 1165.; and was succeeded by his brother William, surnamed *the Lion*, whose wars with England, captivity, and submission to pay homage, and hold his kingdom of Henry, have been already mentioned. After William recovered his liberty, A.D. 1174., he reduced the people of Galloway, who had revolted in the time of his captivity, and obliged Gilbert, the lord of that country, to do homage to the King of England, and to himself¹⁴⁴. Though the yoke to which this King of Scotland had submitted to regain his freedom, was, no doubt, very galling both to himself and to his subjects, he made no attempt to throw it off; but lived in constant peace and amity with the King of England; and was married to Ermingard, a near relation of that monarch, at Woodstocke, September 5th, A.D. 1186.¹⁴⁵ As William survived Henry II. more than twenty-five

¹⁴³ Chron. Mailros, ann. 1157. Buchan. Hist. p. 124.

¹⁴⁴ Benedict. Abbas, ann. 1176.

¹⁴⁵ Id. *ibid*.

years,

years, the most important and fortunate events of his reign will be related in the next section of this chapter. A.D. 1189.

SECTION IV.

The civil and military history of Great Britain, from the accession of Richard I. A.D. 1189. to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.

RICHARD, the eldest surviving son of Henry II., having paid the last honours to the remains of his illustrious father, with marks of contrition for his former undutiful behaviour, and having also settled the affairs of his foreign dominions, landed at Portsmouth, August 13th, and was crowned at Westminster, September 3d.¹

Accession and coronation of Richard I.

This solemnity occasioned a prodigious concourse of people from all parts of England. Amongst others, many wealthy Jews came to London, to consult with their brethren in that city about making a free gift of great value to the king on his accession. Richard had issued a proclamation, that none of that people should presume to enter either the church or Westminster-hall on the day of his coronation. Some of them being detected pressing into the hall, were assaulted at first with opprobrious language, and afterwards

Slaughter of the Jews.

¹ Hoveden, p. 373, 374. W. Neubrigen, l. 4. c. 1.

with

A.D. 1189. with sticks and stones. The Jews, perceiving their danger, fled towards the city, pursued by an enraged mob; amongst whom a cry arose, that the King had given orders to put all the Jews to death. This cry proved fatal to many of that hated nation, who were massacred in the streets. Others, who retired to their houses, were either burnt in them, or slain in attempting to escape. The tumult gradually increased, and spread into all parts of the city. Hatred, inflamed by avarice and religious zeal, rendered the mob ungovernable; and all attempts to quell them were in vain, till wearied with slaughter, and overloaded with booty, they retired to secure their prey. The King justly offended at this outrageous violation of the laws, and contempt of his authority, in the very beginning of his reign, commanded a few of the ringleaders of the mob to be hanged.²

First acts
of Rich-
ard's ad-
ministra-
tion very
gracious.

Some of the first acts of Richard's government were gracious and beneficent. He was so far from discovering any resentment against those who had adhered to his father, and opposed himself, that he continued them in their places, and honoured them with peculiar marks of his royal favour. He immediately released his mother Queen Eleanor from her long confinement, allowed her a considerable share of power, and, in particular, gave her authority to set all prisoners at liberty,

² W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 1. Benedict. Abbas, p. 560. M. Paris, p. 108.

who

who were confined for transgressions of the forest-laws, and several other crimes. His brother Prince John he loaded with riches and honours, bestowing upon him at once no fewer than eight castles, with the estates annexed to them, and the government or earldoms of seven counties³: favours that made him a formidable enemy, instead of an affectionate brother and obedient subject.

As Richard was the first prince in Europe who assumed the cross, on the news of the victories of Saladin over the Christians in the Holy Land; so his thoughts were chiefly employed at this time about collecting money, and making preparations of all kinds for his expedition into the East, in conjunction with the King of France. In his father's coffers at Winchester, he found a prodigious mass of treasure, amounting, according to some writers, to nine hundred thousand pounds, but according to others, only to ninety thousand pounds, in gold and silver, besides plate, jewels, and precious stones⁴. To this he added immense sums by the sale of the royal castles, manors, parks, woods, and forests. Nay, so great was his rage for money, that the highest honours, and most important offices, became venal. He even sold the superiority of the crown of England over the kingdom of Scotland,

Richard
collects
money,
troops, &c.
and em-
barks on
his expe-
dition into
the Holy
Land.

³ Benedict. Abbas, p. 555. R. Hoveden, p. 374. col. 1. W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 3.

⁴ Benedict. Abbas, p. 553. M. Paris, p. 107. col. 2. R. Hoveden, p. 374.

A.D. 1189. the most glorious acquisition of his father's reign, for the paltry sum of ten thousand marks, equivalent to about one hundred thousand pounds of our present money⁵. By these and various other methods, some of them very dishonourable and unjust, Richard amassed a much greater treasure than had ever been in the possession of any king of England; which was all dissipated in this romantic expedition. While he was thus employed, Rotrow, Earl of Perche, arrived in England in November, and acquainted him, that the King of France, with all his barons, had solemnly sworn, in a council held at Paris, that they would appear with their followers at Vezilay before the close of next Easter; requiring the like security from Richard and his barons, that they would appear at the same time and place; which was granted⁶. Having constituted William Longchamp Bishop of Ely, and Hugh Bishop of Durham, regents of the kingdom in his absence, he embarked at Dover, December 11th; and landed in the evening near Gravelines; from whence he marched through Flanders into Normandy.⁷

A.D. 1190. The monarchs of England and France, attended by their principal prelates and nobility, had an interview about the middle of January, at Gué St. Reme, to settle all the preliminaries of their

⁵ Benedict. Abbas, p. 568. M. Paris, p. 109. Hoveden, p. 376. 378.

⁶ Benedict. Abbas, p. 570.

⁷ Id. p. 579.

intended

intended expedition. At this interview the two kings took a solemn oath of mutual friendship and defence, and agreed, that if either of them died on the voyage, the other should have his money and the command of his forces : and finding that it would not be possible to have all things in readiness against Easter, the general rendezvous at Vezilay was put off to Midsummer⁸. Richard held a great council on English affairs, February 2d, in which he obliged Prince John and his natural brother Geoffrey, now Archbishop of York, to swear, that they would not return into England for three years : but he afterwards imprudently released them from the obligation of that oath. After this council he dismissed William Bishop of Ely (who had lately been appointed the Pope's legate for England, Scotland, and Ireland), and sent him over to take upon him the government of his kingdom, and hasten the preparation of ships, men, and horses, for his expedition.⁹

A.D. 1190.

prelimi-
naries of
their ex-
pedition.

Many of the English who had assumed the cross, and were preparing for their voyage into the Holy Land, imagined it would be a good beginning of their pious enterprise, to murder as many Jews as possible, and seize their riches. In consequence of this imagination, many thousands of that devoted nation were butchered in cold blood, at Norwich, Stamford, York, and other

Massacres
of the
Jews.

⁸ Benedict. Abbas, p. 583. R. Hoveden, p. 379.

⁹ Id. ibid.

A.D. 1190. places, in the months of March and April this year¹⁰. The croifaders who were concerned in thefe cruel maffacres, made hafte to embark in their holy warfare, and thereby efaped the punifhment that they juftly deferved for their injufice and barbarity.

The Kings
of England
and France
arrive at
Meffina
with their
armies,
where they
winter.

When the time appointed for the general rendezvous approached, the two kings put themfelves at the head of their refpective armies, and marched towards the plains of Vezilay, where they arrived in the laft week of June. When their forces were united, they amounted to one hundred thoufand of the braveft troops of France and England¹¹: an army that would have been invincible if the fcene of action had not been fo diftant. Instructed by the misfortunes of the leaders of former croifades, who had marched by land into the Eaft, they had wifely refolved to go by fea, and for that purpofe had provided fleets. From Vezilay the whole army decamped, July 1ft, and marched in one body to Lyons; where the two kings feparating, Philip, with his army, marched towards Genoa, where they were to embark, and Richard towards Marfeilles, where he expected his fleet; having, before they feparated, appointed their next rendezvous to be at Meffina in Sicily. Richard reached Marfeilles before the arrival of his fleet from England, which had been difperfed by a

¹⁰ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 7, 8, 9.

¹¹ Gaufred. Vinifauf. Iter. Hierofol. l. 2. c. 9.

storm; and becoming impatient of delay, he embarked with his household on board three large buffes and twenty galleys, August 7th, leaving directions to his army and fleet to follow him to the place of rendezvous as soon as possible¹². The English fleet arrived at Marseilles August 22d; and sailing from thence with the army on board, about the end of that month, reached Messina September 14th; and, two days after, the French fleet, with Philip and his army, entered the same harbour; as King Richard also did, September 23d, in great pomp, with ensigns flying and trumpets sounding¹³. At this place the two kings wintered; Philip with his army in the city of Messina, and Richard with his army in the suburbs.

A.D. 1190.

It was hardly to be expected that two such numerous armies, composed of nations who had long been rivals, and often enemies, should remain six months in one place, without any disputes with one another, or with the people of the country. There were several such disputes happened at Messina in the course of this winter, which destroyed that sincere and cordial friendship between the two kings, so necessary to the success of their enterprise, and to which they were engaged by the most solemn oaths. Of this these two princes at length became sensible; and in order to extinguish the present, and prevent

Transactions at Messina.

¹² Benedict. Abbas, p. 590. 594. G. Vinisau. l. 2. c. 10.

¹³ M. Paris, p. 112, 113. Benedict. Abbas, p. 604, 605.

A.D. 1190. all future animosities, a treaty was concluded, in which, amongst many other articles, Richard was released from his obligations to marry the Princess Adelais, King Philip's sister, to whom he had been long contracted.¹⁴

Treaties
between
Richard
and Tan-
cred King
of Sicily.

The King of England had also several causes of complaint against Tancred King of Sicily, who had lately usurped that throne, and detained Queen Jane, King Richard's sister, and widow of William II. in prison, because she had opposed his usurpation; declining to pay her dower, and a valuable legacy left by William to his father-in-law, Henry II. But Tancred, finding himself in no condition to dispute any of these points with Richard at the head of so great an army, immediately released the Queen-dowager, and sent her to her brother, with an offer of twenty thousand ounces of gold, as a full compensation for her dower, and an equal sum for the late King's legacy. These offers were accepted by Richard; who became so fond of Tancred, or of his treasures, that he contracted his nephew and heir, Arthur Duke of Brittany, to one of that King's daughters, and received another twenty thousand ounces of gold as her marriage-portion.¹⁵

A.D. 1191.
Queen
Eleanor
and the
Princess
Berengaria

King Richard had been long in love with Berengaria, daughter of Sanchez King of Navarre, but did not think it prudent to marry her during his father's life, and while he was under engage-

¹⁴ Rymer Fœd. t. i. p. 69.

¹⁵ Benedict. Abbas, p. 612, 613.

ments to the Princess Adelais¹⁶. At his setting out on his expedition into the East, he prevailed upon his mother Queen Eleanor to accompany the Princess of Navarre to Naples, where they arrived over land in February this year, escorted by the Earl of Flanders; and it being improper on several accounts to bring them to Messina, they took up their residence at Brindisi, till after the departure of the King of France, who failed towards the Holy Land, March 30th. On the day after, Queen Eleanor, with the Princess Berengaria, landed at Messina; where the former staid only four days, and then embarked for England; but the latter was committed to the care of the Queen-dowager of Sicily, who had resolved to accompany her brother into the Holy Land.¹⁷

A.D. 1191.

arrive at
Messina,
from
whence
the King
of France
had sailed.

Richard, impatient to reach the seat of war, where he expected to gather many laurels, would not stay at Messina to celebrate his marriage, but sailed from thence, April 10th, with a gallant army, on board a fleet of about two hundred ships and galleys; which was unfortunately overtaken, two days after, by a violent storm. The King, with the greatest part of the fleet, put into a harbour in Crete; but missing three of his largest ships, in one of which his royal bride and his sister Queen Jane had embarked, he sent in quest of them; and was soon informed, that two of these ships had been stranded on the

Richard
sails from
Messina.

¹⁶ G. Vinisau. l. 2. c. 26.¹⁷ R. Hoveden. p. 392.

A.D. 1191.

coast of Cyprus, and all their crew either drowned, or imprisoned by the sovereign of the country; and that the other, with the princesses on board, was riding before Limisso, the capital of the island, having been refused admittance into the harbour.¹⁸

Richard conquers Cyprus, and solemnizes his marriage with Berengaria.

Richard immediately sailed to Cyprus; and having received a haughty refusal to a respectful request for leave to enter the harbour of Limisso, from Isaac, a vain-glorious tyrant, who then reigned in Cyprus, and had assumed the pompous title of emperor, he landed his army, defeated the tyrant in two battles, and at length obliged him to surrender his person, his country, and a beautiful princess, his only child, to the conqueror. This important conquest detained him some time in Cyprus: where he solemnized his marriage with the Princess Berengaria, May 12th, who was the same day crowned Queen of England.¹⁹

Richard fails from Cyprus, and arrives at Acon.

While he was engaged in receiving the homage of the nobility of Cyprus, who made him a free gift of great value, he sent away the two Queens, and the Cyprian Princess (who is said to have made a conquest of her conqueror), with a part of his fleet and army, to join the Christian army at the siege of Ptolemais or Acon; where they landed, June 1st. Having settled all the

¹⁸ R. Hoveden, p. 393. R. de Diceto, col. 657. J. Brompt. col. 1197.

¹⁹ R. Hoveden, p. 193, 194. Benedict. Abbas, p. 645—653. G. Vinislaus. l. 2. c. 35.

affairs of Cyprus, and appointed Richard de Camville, and Roger de Turnham, governors of that island, he sailed with the rest of his fleet and army, taking a great Saracen ship in his passage, and arrived at Acon June 8th, to the great joy of the besiegers and dismay of the besieged.²⁰ A.D. 1191.

The city of Acon had been invested about two years by the Christian army, composed of warriors from every nation in Europe, who had performed many glorious actions, and suffered many grievous calamities under its walls, which had been bravely defended by a very numerous garrison; while Saladin, with a powerful army, besieged the besiegers, and harassed them with continual combats²¹. On the arrival of the English army with their gallant leader, the siege, that had languished for some time, was pushed with the greatest ardour; the walls were battered night and day with various machines, the artillery of those times; frequent furious assaults were given; and the besieged, despairing of relief, agreed to surrender the city, July 12th, on the following conditions:—"That the garrison
" should be allowed to march out only in their
" shirts, leaving all their arms and baggage behind them:—That Saladin should restore the
" true cross, with two thousand five hundred of
" his Christian prisoners of the greatest note:—
" That he should pay to the two Kings two hun-

Siege and
surrender
of Acon.

²⁰ G. Vinisau. l. 3. c. 2.

²¹ Id. l. 2. c. 25—42.

A.D. 1191. governor of the castle; but making his escape, took refuge in St. Martin's church; from whence he was violently dragged by Longchamp's orders, and imprisoned in Dover castle.²⁸

Confederacy
against
Long-
champ, by
which he is
expelled.

This outrageous insult on an archbishop, the son and brother of a king, together with the violation of the rights of sanctuary, excited universal indignation against the high justiciary, and gave his enemies a greater advantage than all his former acts of tyranny. Several bishops excommunicated all who had been concerned in the horrid deed. Prince John and the chief nobility had a meeting at Reading, October 5th, in which the King's commission to the Archbishop of Rouen, and others, to be co-adjutors to Longchamp, was produced; and he was summoned to attend another meeting at Lodbridge, three days after; but instead of complying with that summons, he shut himself up in the tower of London. As this storm was unexpected, he had not laid in a sufficient stock of provisions to stand a siege; which obliged him to submit, and appear before the prelates and nobility; by whom he was deprived of his two great offices of chancellor and chief justiciary: and not being able to bear his fall with fortitude, he made his escape out of the kingdom, October 29th, in disguise²⁹. Walter Archbishop of Rouen, a prelate of great wisdom and virtue, acted as chief justiciary, with the

²⁸ Anglia Sacra, l. 2. p. 390, 391.

²⁹ Benedic. Abbas, p. 707. Hoveden, p. 400.

advice

advice of his colleagues, by virtue of the former commission; and the custody of the great seal was given to Benedict Abbot of Peterborough, the historian.³⁰ A.D. 1191.

Soon after the two Kings of France and England had taken possession of Acon, the former began to intimate his intention of returning into Europe, pretending that the climate of Palestine did not agree with his constitution, and that his life would be endangered by a longer stay. This however was not the real, or at least not the chief, reason of his forming this resolution—Many disputes had arisen between the two monarchs at Messina and in the Holy Land, which made their union neither cordial nor agreeable—He beheld his own glory eclipsed by the superior splendour of Richard's achievements, which gave him great disgust—The Earl of Flanders had died before Acon without issue, and he expected, by his presence in France, to secure a part, if not the whole, of his succession,—to say nothing of his intention to seize some of Richard's dominions in his absence. Great efforts were made to persuade him to stay longer; but they were ineffectual. Having renewed his engagements not to invade any of the territories of the King of England, while that Prince continued in the Holy Land, or within forty days after his return home; and having left a considerable

The King
of France
returns
from the
Holy Land.

³⁰ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 18. Benedict. Abbas, p. 714. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 58.

A.D. 1191. body of his troops under the command of the Duke of Burgundy, he sailed from the port of Acon, with the rest of his fleet and army, August 1st, and landed in France a few days before the festival of Christmas, which he solemnized at his palace of Fountainbleau.³¹

Operations
of the war
in the Holy
Land.

Richard, after the departure of the King of France, having repaired the walls of Acon, marched from thence, August 25th, with the Christian army, to reduce the other cities on the sea-coast. The famous Saladin, at the head of a very numerous army, attended all their motions, and harassed them with perpetual combats, in which astonishing acts of valour were performed on both sides³². At length these two great armies, animated by the most implacable hatred, inflamed by religious zeal, and conducted by the two bravest leaders in the world, came to a general action, September 6th, which continued from morning to night; when the Turkish army was put to flight with great slaughter³³. Saladin, after this defeat, despairing to be able to keep the field, and to defend so great a number of towns, dismantled Cæsarea, Afcalon, Joppa, and several others, and with their garrisons reinforced his army, and strengthened the garrisons of Jerusalem, and of the other towns he resolved to defend³⁴. After this victory the Christian

³¹ Benedict. Abbas, p. 667—670. W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 22. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 57.

³² G. Vinifaus. l. 4. c. 10—16.

³³ Id. ibid. c. 18—22.

³⁴ Id. ibid. c. 23.

army

army proceeded on their march with little molestation; and reaching Joppa, found it deserted, and almost quite demolished; and received intelligence that the enemy were acting the same part at Ascalon. A council of war was held, in which King Richard proposed to march to Ascalon with all possible expedition, and rescue it out of the hands of the Turks before it was demolished; but the Duke of Burgundy, and the other French generals (who had been secretly instructed by their sovereign to thwart the King of England in all his designs), obstinately insisted on rebuilding Joppa; to which Richard reluctantly consented, and seven weeks were spent in that work³⁵. In the beginning of November the Christian army marched from Joppa towards Jerusalem, rebuilding the ruined castles as they advanced, and being also much retarded in their progress by heavy rains and frequent assaults of the enemy. But when they had overcome all these difficulties, and had reached the neighbourhood of the holy city, in the last week of this year, the Templars, Hospitallers, and Pisans, joining with the French, opposed the besieging of it, at that time, with many specious arguments; and obliged Richard to return with his army towards Ascalon, to his own unspeakable mortification, and the great grief of many of the crusaders.³⁶

The King of France, in his passage from the Holy Land, had visited Rome, and made bitter

A.D. 1191.

A.D. 1192.

Conduct
of the King³⁵ G. Vinifauf. l. 4. c. 27—30.³⁶ Id. l. 5. c. 1, 2.

A.D. 1192.
 of France,
 after his
 return
 from the
 Holy Land,
 and his
 intrigues
 with Prince
 John.

complaints to the Pope of many affronts and injuries which he pretended to have received from the King of England; earnestly intreating his Holiness to release him from his oaths, that he might take vengeance on his enemy, by invading his dominions. But with this most shameful request the Pope would not comply³⁷. Not discouraged with this repulse, on his arrival in France, he made no secret of his resolution to violate all his oaths, in order to gratify his revenge, or rather his ambition. In a conference with the seneschal of Normandy, January 20th, he made a demand of Gisors, and its territories, threatening immediate war on receiving a refusal³⁸. He engaged in dark intrigues with Prince John, to whose profligate character he was no stranger, tempting him with an offer of all Richard's dominions on the continent, to join with him in the war against his absent brother; to which he would have consented, if he had not been dissuaded by his mother Queen Eleanor, and deterred by the threats of the justiciaries of England to confiscate his estates. Though disappointed in these intrigues, Philip would have invaded Normandy, if he had not been prevented by his barons, who absolutely refused to follow him in so unjust an enterprise.³⁹

Attempts
 of Long-
 champ to

The government of England was also much disquieted at this time, by the violent efforts of

³⁷ Benedict. Abbas, p. 720.

³⁸ Id. 27, 28.

³⁹ Id. p. 728.

William Longchamp, the expelled justiciary ; A.D. 1192.
 who having gained the Pope to espouse his
 cause, and renew his legantine commission, recover his
 power de-
 feated.
 threatened to lay the kingdom under an inter-
 dict if he was not restored to all his former
 power. But by the prudence and firmness of
 the Archbishop of Rouen, assisted by Queen
 Eleanor, all his efforts were baffled.⁴⁰

While Richard's dominions in Europe were Proceed-
 ings of the
 Christian
 army in the
 Holy Land.
 torn by factions and threatened with invasions,
 that prince was involved in the greatest diffi-
 culties and dangers in the Holy Land. No
 march was ever attended with more afflictive
 circumstances than that of the Christian army,
 in the beginning of this year, from Jerusalem
 to Ascalon, where they arrived, January 20th,
 much diminished and dispirited by storms, fa-
 tigue, and famine⁴¹. To complete their mis-
 fortunes, they found that place so completely
 ruined and deserted, that it afforded them neither
 food, lodging, nor protection. The reparation
 of it cost them three months incessant toil ; from
 which the King himself was not exempted, who
 wrought with greater ardour than any common
 labourer⁴². Before this work was completed,
 the Duke of Burgundy, with the French, Ge-
 noese, and all whom he could entice to follow
 him, separated from the army, and marched,
 first to Acon, and afterwards to Tyre.⁴³

⁴⁰ Benedict. Abbas, p. 731.⁴¹ G. Vinifauf. l. 5. c. 3.⁴² Id. ibid. c. 6.⁴³ Id. ibid. c. 10.

A.D. 1192.

King
Richard
prepares
for his re-
turn to
England.
His gene-
rous be-
haviour.

About the middle of April, the prior of Hereford arrived at Aſcalon, with letters to the King from William Longchamp, acquainting him with the troubles in England, with his own expulſion, and with the machinations of Prince John, and earneſtly intreating him to return immediately, if he deſired to preſerve his crown⁴⁴. Aſtoniſhed at this intelligence, Richard called a council of all the princes and nobles in the Chriſtian army, and communicated to them the news he had received, and the neceſſity of his return to England; to which they conſented, on condition that he terminated the diſpute between the two pretenders to the crown of Jeruſalem, Guy de Louzignan and Conrade Marquis of Montferrat, that they might know whom to follow, after his departure. On this occaſion, Richard acted a very noble part, leaving the deciſion of that queſtion to the members of the council; and when they declared in favour of Conrade, who had long been his open enemy, he confirmed their choice, and ſacrificed his private reſentment to the public peace⁴⁵. Still further to ſecure the tranquillity of the army and the country in his abſence, he generously beſtowed the kingdom of Cyprus on Guy de Louzignan, the other competitor for the crown of Jeruſalem; a valuable gift, which he and his poſterity enjoyed almoſt three centuries.

⁴⁴ G. Vinſauf. l. 5. c. 22.⁴⁵ Id. ibid. c. 23, 24.

Conrade

Conrade was transported with joy when he received the news of his election, and hastened to Aſcalon to be crowned. But he was unhappily murdered, April 28th, on the ſtreets of Tyre, by two desperadoes, who had been ſent for that purpoſe, by the Prince of the Affaſſins; or, as he was commonly called, *the Old Man of the Mountain*⁴⁶. The murderers were both apprehended; and were ſo far from denying, that they gloried in what they had done, declaring, that it was in obedience to the commands of their lord, the Old Man of the Mountain, to revenge an injury he had received from Conrade. Yet ſo malevolent and ſhameleſs was the King of France, that he calumniated Richard as the author of that affaſſination, and pretended to dread a like attempt upon his own perſon.⁴⁷

A.D. 1192.

Conrade
King of
Jerusalem
killed, of
which
Richard is
unjuſtly
accuſed.

On the death of Conrade, Henry Earl of Champagne married his widow, and was declared King of Jeruſalem; who, being nephew to Richard, brought back the French and their confederates to join the Chriſtian army at Aſcalon, under that prince; who had lately taken the ſtrong fortreſſes of Darum from the Turks⁴⁸. The Chriſtian army being aſſembled, a reſolution was taken to make another attempt on the city of Jeruſalem; and they began their march from Aſcalon, June 6th, and in five days reached Belinople (within

Further
proceed-
ings of the
Chriſtian
army in
the Holy
Land.

⁴⁶ G. Vinifauf. c. 26.⁴⁷ Rymer Fœd. l. I. p. 71. W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 24, 25.⁴⁸ G. Vinifauf. l. 5. c. 39.

A.D. 1192. about four miles of that city), where they encamped a month waiting for the troops they expected to join them from Acon. In this interval King Richard surprised and took a Turkish caravan, with immense wealth in gold, silver, silk, spices, sugars, and other precious commodities⁴⁹. When all the forces were collected, a council of war was held, in which, after long deliberation, and many angry disputes, it was concluded not to attempt the siege of Jerusalem at that time; and the French with their confederates again separating from the army, Richard conducted his own troops, and all who chose to follow him, to Acon, where they arrived July 26th⁵⁰. From thence he proposed to embark for England; but before all things were ready, he received the melancholy news that Saladin had invested Joppa with a prodigious army, and that the garrison must fall a sacrifice if he did not come to their relief. Deeply affected with their distress, he gave orders to the army to march to Joppa by land, while he, with a chosen body of knights, went by sea; and by performing prodigies of valour, raised the siege of Joppa, and defeated the enemy in two actions⁵¹. But Richard soon after falling sick, and finding it impossible to persuade the French to return to the army, concluded a truce with Saladin for three years, three months, three weeks, three

⁴⁹ G. Vinisau. l. 6. c. 4.

⁵⁰ Id. *ibid.* c. 8, 9, 10, 11.

⁵¹ Id. *ibid.* c. 22, 23.

days,

days, and three hours; consenting to the demolition of Ascalon; but stipulating, that the Christians should retain all the other towns they possessed in Palestine, and be permitted to visit the holy places at Jerusalem.⁵² A.D. 1192.

Richard recovered slowly from his indisposition; and having sent away the Queens of England and Sicily, with their attendants, he went, with a small number of select friends, on board a swift-sailing ship in the port of Acon, October 9th, followed by the tears, prayers, and benedictions of an infinite multitude of people, who had tasted his bounty and beheld his valour⁵³. His voyage was most unfortunate; for after tossing several weeks at sea, he was shipwrecked near Aquileia; and attempting to pass through Germany in disguise, he was discovered in a village near Vienna, December 20th, and thrown into prison by Leopold Duke of Austria; who, prompted by avarice or malice, respected neither his rank, nor the cause in which he had been engaged.⁵⁴ King Richard embarks for England, is shipwrecked, and taken prisoner.

As soon as the Emperor Henry VI. heard of the detention of the King of England, to whom he was an enemy, he claimed and obtained the royal captive, promising to pay Leopold sixty thousand pounds out of the expected ransom.⁵⁵ A.D. 1193. Richard delivered to the Emperor.

⁵² G. Vinisau. c. 27. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 61.

⁵³ Vinisau. l. 6. c. 37.

⁵⁴ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 31. Hoveden, p. 409. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 62. M. Paris, p. 121.

⁵⁵ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 33. M. Paris, p. 121.

A.D. 1193.

Conspiracy
of the
King of
France
and Prince
John de-
feated.

In this ignominious manner was this illustrious prince, and great champion of Christianity, bought and sold, by those who could hardly invent a pretence for offering him any violence.

The King of France, transported with joy at the news of Richard's captivity, and forgetting all his oaths, hastened to make the utmost advantage of it, by invading his dominions, — by inviting Prince John to join with him in sharing the plunder of his unhappy brother, — and by negotiating with the Emperor to deliver up his royal prisoner to him, or to detain him in perpetual durance⁵⁶. His negotiations with the Emperor were unsuccessful. But Prince John, regardless of all the ties of nature, of gratitude, and of the most solemn oaths, entered with eagerness into all the schemes of Philip, for the destruction of his brother and the division of his spoils. On his return from Normandy, where he had an interview with the King of France to settle their plan of operations, he besieged and took the castles of Wallingford and Windsor⁵⁷. Coming to London, he gave out that his brother was dead, and required Walter Archbishop of Rouen, chief justiciary, and his colleagues, to swear fealty to him, and perform the ceremony of his coronation. But his assertions being discredited, and his requisitions despised, the justiciaries raised an army, and prosecuted the war

⁵⁶ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 34. Hoveden, p. 412.

⁵⁷ Hoveden, p. 412. Rymer Fœd. l. 1. p. 85.

against

against him with so much vigour, that they A.D. 1193.
 compelled him to beg a truce; which was
 granted, and he returned to his ally the King of
 France⁵⁸. That Prince had been more successful
 in his invasion of Normandy, where he met with
 little opposition, till he invested Rouen, which
 was so bravely defended by the valiant Earl of
 Leicester, who had lately returned from the
 Holy Land, that Philip was obliged to raise the
 siege, and retire with precipitation. This repulse,
 together with the threats of the Pope to lay his
 dominions under an interdict, engaged him to
 listen to proposals for a suspension of hostilities;
 and a truce was concluded July 9th.⁵⁹

King Richard lost none of his usual courage, or even cheerfulness, by his captivity. Though he was at first treated with great indignity, thrown into a dungeon from whence no man had ever escaped with life, loaded with irons, and surrounded day and night with armed men, his countenance was serene, and his conversation pleasant and facetious.⁶⁰

As soon as Queen Eleanor and the justiciaries of England heard of his misfortune, they sent the abbots of Broxley and Pont-Robert to attend him; who meeting him with his guards on the road to Worms, where a diet of the empire was soon to be held, were received by him in a manner equally cheerful and affectionate. He asked

Richard's
undaunted
deport-
ment in his
captivity.

Negotia-
tions for his
deliver-
ance.

⁵⁸ Chron. Gervas, col. 1581. R. Hoveden, p. 413. col. 1. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 64.

⁵⁹ Rymer Fœd. t. 1. p. 81.

⁶⁰ M. Paris, p. 121.

A.D. 1193. them the state of his friends, his subjects, and his dominions; and particularly inquired after the health of the King of Scotland, on whose honour he said he entirely relied. On hearing of the base behaviour of his brother John, he was shocked, and looked grave; but presently recovering his good humour, he said with a smile, *My brother John is not made for conquering kingdoms*⁶¹. Many of the King's personal friends, as William Bishop of Ely, Hubert Bishop of Salisbury, &c. on hearing of his disaster, flew to his relief, and assisted in negotiating his deliverance. Queen Eleanor addressed several most mournful and pathetic letters to the Pope, intreating and conjuring him to launch the thunders of the church against those impious princes who detained her heroic son, and who ravaged his dominions.⁶²

Richard's
noble be-
haviour
before the
diet of the
empire.

The Emperor, to wipe off some part of the odium he had brought upon himself by his conduct towards Richard, presented him before all the prelates and princes of the empire, in a diet held at Worms July 13th; and accused him, — of having protected Tancred, who had usurped the crown of Sicily, — of having made war on the Emperor of Cyprus, a Christian prince, when he should have been fighting against the infidels, — of having driven the King of France out of the Holy Land by many injuries, — of having affronted the Duke of Austria, — of having hired

⁶¹ R. Hoveden, p. 411. col. 2.

⁶² Rymer Fœd. t. I. p. 72—78.

assassins to murder the Marquis of Montferrat, — and of having concluded a truce with Saladin on too easy terms. But Richard being permitted to speak for himself, answered all these accusations in so clear and full, and at the same time in so elegant and affecting a manner, that he not only convinced the whole assembly of his innocence, but drew tears from many of his noble hearers.⁶³

A.D. 1193.

After this the Emperor treated him with greater decency; and by the mediation of several princes, the negotiation for his freedom was concluded, July 31st, on the following terms: — that as soon as the King of England had delivered to the Emperor one hundred thousand marks, Cologne weight, of pure silver, and had given hostages for other fifty thousand marks of the same weight and fineness, he should be set at liberty, and have a safe conduct to the port where he was to embark⁶⁴. As soon as the King of France heard of the conclusion of this agreement, he sent a message to his confederate Prince John, to take care of himself, for *the devil was unchained*⁶⁵. The justiciaries of England raised the money for the King's ransom in a short time, by a scutage of twenty shillings on every knight's fee, a talliage on the boroughs and the royal demesnes, and by several other methods⁶⁶. The money being collected, Queen

Treaty for his deliverance concluded, and money for his ransom collected.

⁶³ M. Paris, p. 121, 122.

⁶⁴ Rymer Fœd. t. I. p. 84.

⁶⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 415. col. 1.

⁶⁶ Id. p. 417. col. 1.

A.D. 1193. Eleanor, and the Archbishop of Rouen, set out with it for Germany a little before Christmas, leaving the chief direction of affairs in England in the hands of Hubert, formerly Bishop of Salisbury, lately constituted Archbishop of Canterbury and chief justiciary.

A.D. 1194. The terrors of the King of France, and of his friend Prince John, redoubled as the time of Richard's release drew near, which engaged them to make a great effort to prevent what they so much dreaded. With this view they sent letters to the Emperor, engaging to pay him one hundred and fifty thousand marks of pure silver, if he would detain Richard only one year longer⁶⁷. With this magnificent offer the Emperor, the most sordid and most mercenary of men, was not a little staggered, and began to make excuses and delays; but many of the princes of the empire, who had been guarantees of the agreement between him and Richard, insisting that it should be fulfilled, he found himself under the necessity of giving that Prince his liberty, on February 4th, at Mentz, to the great joy of his mother Queen Eleanor, and several of his nobles who were present to receive him.⁶⁸

King Richard arrives in England, and takes the castle of Nottingham. Having spent some days with his great friend the Bishop of Cologne, he proceeded on his journey towards the port of Swine, at the mouth of the Scheld, where he embarked on board an English fleet, and landed at Sandwich, March

⁶⁷ R. Hoveden, p. 418.

⁶⁸ Id. *ibid.*

20th, after an absence of four years, three months, and nine days, in which he had experienced great variety of fortunes⁶⁹. He was received at London with great demonstrations of joy, and such an ostentatious display of wealth, as astonished the German nobility in his train, and made one of them say, — “ If our Emperor
 “ had known the riches of England, your ransom,
 “ O King, would have been much greater⁷⁰. ”
 Having spent only three days at London, he hastened to put himself at the head of his army, besieging the castle of Nottingham, belonging to Prince John; which surrendered at discretion, March 28th.⁷¹

A.D. 1194.

Here the King held a great council of his prelates and nobility, which began March 30th, and ended April 2d. On the second day of the council it was decreed, that if Prince John did not appear before the King and his court within forty days, to answer for his conduct, all his estates in England should be forfeited⁷². On the third day a tax of two shillings on every hide of land was granted; and on the last several criminal processes were determined.⁷³

Great council at Nottingham.

At this council it was resolved, that the ceremony of the King's coronation should be repeated, to wipe off the stain of his captivity; and the 17th of April was appointed for the day of the solemnity, at Winchester; where it was accord-

Richard crowned at Winchester, and refuses to admit the claim

⁶⁹ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 41.⁷⁰ Hemingford, l. 2. c. 69.⁷¹ R. Hoveden, p. 419.⁷² Id. *ibid.*⁷³ Id. *ibid.*

ingly

A.D. 1194. ingly performed with great pomp ⁷⁴. William the Lion, King of Scotland, was present at the council of Nottingham, attended the King from thence to Winchester, and assisted at his coronation, earnestly soliciting a grant of the counties of Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmorland; which was refused, but in the softest terms. ⁷⁵

Richard collects money, and raises an army, with which he fails to the continent.

After his second coronation, Richard resumed many of the honours and estates which he had alienated before his departure for the Holy Land, alleging that they were absolutely necessary for the support of the crown, and that the purchasers of them had already indemnified themselves ⁷⁶. He prevailed upon the monks of the Cistercian order, by flattery and fair promises, to make him a present of a year's wool, and by various other arts replenished his empty coffers ⁷⁷. Receiving intelligence of the hostile intentions and preparations of the King of France, he collected his forces with all possible expedition, and embarking them at Portsmouth, on board a fleet of one hundred sail, he landed with them at Barfleur may 12th. ⁷⁸

Richard pardons Prince John.

Next morning his brother Prince John suddenly entered his apartment, threw himself at his feet, and with many tears confessed his crimes, and implored forgiveness; with which Richard was so much affected, that he raised him from

⁷⁴ W. Neubrigen. l. 4. c. 42.

⁷⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 420.

⁷⁶ W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 1.

⁷⁷ Id. *ibid*.

⁷⁸ R. Hoveden, p. 421.

the ground, embraced him in the most affectionate manner, and granted him a pardon; but did not immediately restore him to his possessions.⁷⁹

A.D. 1194.

Taking the field with his army, he raised the siege of Verneuil May 29th, took the castle of Lochis June 13th, and gained a still greater advantage over his enemies July 5th, at Fretteval, where all the baggage and treasure of the King of France, together with his chancery, containing many valuable papers, fell into his hands⁸⁰. From thence Richard marched his army into Guienne, which had revolted, and in the space of sixteen days reduced it to its former state of obedience and subjection⁸¹. But a stop was put to these military operations by a truce, which was concluded for one year by the plenipotentiaries of the Kings of France and England, July 23d.⁸²

Operations of the war with France suspended by a truce.

Richard employed this interval of tranquillity in making a very strict inquiry into the state of all the branches of the royal revenues. For this purpose he sent commissioners into every county of the kingdom, to make the necessary enquiries, and to levy the sums that should be found due to the crown on any account⁸³. One object of this enquiry was, to raise the money that was still due to the Duke of Austria for the King's ransom,

Richard's employment during the truce.

⁷⁹ M. Paris, p. 123. col. 2. Diceto, col. 673.

⁸⁰ R. Hoveden, p. 421. W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 2. ⁸¹ Id. ibid.

⁸² Id. ibid. c. 3. R. Hoveden, p. 422. ⁸³ Id. p. 423, 424.

that

A.D. 1194. that his hostages might be redeemed; but he was unexpectedly relieved from the necessity of paying that money by the following event.

Duke of
Austria
sets
Richard's
hostages
at liberty.

As the Duke of Austria was tilting with his courtiers on St. Stephen's day, December 26th, his horse fell upon him, and crushed his foot in such a manner, that it threw him into a fever, and brought on a gangrene. When his physicians acquainted him that there were no hopes of his recovery, he was seized with remorse for the cruelty and injustice of which he had been guilty towards the King of England; and gave orders to set his hostages at liberty.⁸⁴

A.D. 1195.

War with
France
renewed,
and termi-
nated by a
peace.

The late truce between the Kings of France and England was not very well observed; and as soon as it expired, the war was renewed by Philip, who made an incursion into Normandy, plundering the country, and demolishing such castles as fell into his hands. Richard having collected his forces, marched to meet his enemies, and came up with them near Vaudreuil, where a negotiation was proposed by Philip, who during the continuance of it, secretly employed his troops in undermining the walls of that fortress. One day as the two kings were engaged in a conference, they were interrupted by a dreadful noise, occasioned by the fall of the greatest part of the castle of Vaudreuil, which at once discovered to Richard the artifice of his adversary, and inflamed him with the most violent resent-

⁸⁴ W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 8.

ment. He hastened to put himself at the head of his army, and to prepare for taking his revenge in a general engagement; but the French, who had all things in readiness for their march, retired with so much precipitation, that he could not overtake them⁸⁵. The war was prosecuted for some months after this with various success, but without producing any general action or important event; and was at length terminated by a treaty of peace concluded by the two monarchs in a personal interview on December 5th.⁸⁶

A.D. 1195.

While Richard was detained in his foreign dominions, the capital of England became a scene of the most violent factions, and of great confusion. This was owing to the unlimited influence which one William Fitz-Osbert, commonly called *Longbeard*, had obtained among the common people and inferior citizens of that metropolis; by declaiming, with great vehemence, on all occasions, against the tyranny of the King's ministers, and their oppressions of the poor. Though William was known to be a man of an abandoned character and ruined fortunes, yet by his learning, eloquence, and fair pretences, he gained such an ascendant over the minds of his followers, that they called him *the saviour of the people*, attended him with loud acclamations whenever he appeared in public,

A.D. 1196.

Tumults
in London
suppressed,
and the
author
Longbeard
executed.

⁸⁵ W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 15. Chron. J. Brompt. col. 1267.

⁸⁶ W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 17. Rymer Fœd. t. 1. p. 91.

and

A.D. 1196. and bound themselves by the most solemn oaths to execute all his orders. The streets were infested day and night by numerous mobs, who committed many disorders, insulted the richer citizens, and threatened them with destruction. Hubert Archbishop of Canterbury, and chief justiciary, summoned Longbeard to appear before the council; but he came, attended by such a prodigious multitude, that they were afraid to ask him any questions, and he returned in triumph into the city. After this the Archbishop very prudently remained quiet, until the political enthusiasm of Longbeard's followers began to languish for want of opposition, when he sent a party of men into the city to seize his person. William made a brave defence, killed one of the party sent to apprehend him, and escaped, with his concubine, and a few of his accomplices, into the neighbouring church of St. Mary le Bow. But no regard was paid to the rights of sanctuary on this occasion. William was dragged out of the church, tried, condemned, and executed, before his partisans recovered from their surprise, or had time to form any scheme for his deliverance. After his death, however, they flocked in great crowds to the place of execution, took down the gallows on which he had been hanged, divided it into a thousand pieces, preserved and adored these pieces as the most precious relics, pretending that they wrought many miracles. But as these pretended miracles were not countenanced by the clergy,

clergy, to whom William had been no friend, A.D. 1196.
they were soon forgotten.⁸⁷

The animosity between the Kings of France A.D. 1197.
and England was so violent, that it could not War with
be restrained within the bounds of peace by the France be-
most solemn treaties. Some disputes having arisen gun and
in Brittany about the guardianship of the young ended.
duke of that country, who was now about nine
years of age; Richard sent an army to support
his title to that office; which was disputed by
many of the nobility, who put themselves, their
sovereign, and their country, under the protec-
tion of the King of France. Philip warmly
espoused their cause, and another war broke out
between him and Richard, which continued from
Midsummer A. D. 1196., to September 17th,
this year, when it was terminated by a truce,
without having produced any events worthy of a
place in history.⁸⁸

While Richard found it necessary to continue A.D. 1198.
on the continent to defend his dominions against Famine
his most inveterate enemy the King of France, and plague
England was governed with great wisdom, and in Eng-
preserved in perfect tranquillity, by Hubert land.
Archbishop of Canterbury, who being both papal
legate and chief justiciary, had great influence in
all affairs civil and ecclesiastical⁸⁹. But though
this kingdom enjoyed the blessing of peace, it

⁸⁷ W. Neubrigen, l. 5. c. 20, 21. Chron. Gervasii, col. 1591.

⁸⁸ Chron. Brompt. col. 1272, &c. W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 32.

⁸⁹ Gervas Acta Pontific. Cantuariens. col. 1679, &c.

A.D. 1198. was grievously afflicted with famine, occasioned by a succession of cold and rainy seasons; and this famine at length brought on a plague, that raged with so much violence for six months, that there were hardly so many persons in perfect health as were sufficient to attend the sick and bury the dead, who were thrown into great pits as soon as they expired⁹⁰. A contemporary writer, who gives a very affecting account of this pestilence, observes, that the monasteries were the only places exempted from its ravages⁹¹: a sufficient proof that the monks of those times enjoyed much better accommodations, and greater abundance of all things, than the rest of their countrymen.

A.D. 1199.

King
Richard
receives a
wound, of
which he
dies.

A truce for five years had lately been concluded between the Kings of France and England, under the mediation of the Pope; and a negotiation was set on foot in the beginning of this year, under the same mediation, for establishing a lasting peace between these monarchs, that they might be at liberty to undertake a second expedition into the Holy Land, when an event happened that put an end to all these projects. A considerable treasure, consisting of ancient coins and medals, had been accidentally found in the lands of Vidomar viscount of Limoges, and was demanded from that nobleman by King Richard, who claimed a right to it as sovereign of the country. Vidomar consented to give up a part

⁹⁰ Chron. Brompt. col. 1271. ⁹¹ W. Neubrigen. l. 5. c. 26.

of the treasure; which Richard rejecting, marched at the head of a body of Brabançons, and invested the castle of Chalus near Limoges, where the treasure was supposed to be concealed, with a design to seize the whole, and to punish his refractory vassal. The garrison offered to surrender the castle, and all things in it, on condition that they should be allowed to march out with their arms. But Richard wantonly rejected this offer, declaring that he was determined to take the castle by force, and put them all to death. On the fourth day of the siege (March 28th), as the King, and Marcadee, commander of the Brabançons, were viewing the castle, in order to discover the most proper place for making an assault, Richard was wounded in the left shoulder with an arrow, discharged from a cross-bow by Bertrame de Gourdon, one of the garrison. After remaining some time in the same place, he mounted his horse, returned to his head-quarters, and gave directions for the assault. The castle was taken, and all its defenders, according to orders, were hanged, except Bertrame de Gourdon, who was probably reserved for some more cruel death. In pulling the arrow from the King's shoulder the iron remained behind, which obliged the surgeon, who seems not to have been expert in his profession, to make several deep incisions, in order to extract it. After some days the symptoms of a gangrene appeared; and a wound which at first was not thought dangerous, was now esteemed mortal.

A.D. 1199.

A.D. 1199. As soon as he became apprehensive of death, he commanded Gourdon to be brought into his presence, and asked him, "What harm have I done to you that hath provoked you to attempt my death?"—"You have killed," replied Gourdon, "both my father and brother with your own hand, and designed to put me to an ignominious death. I am therefore ready to suffer the greatest torments you can invent, with joy, since I have been so happy as to kill one who hath been the author of so many miseries to mankind⁹³." The King, conscious of the truth of this bold reply, bore it with patience; and commanded Gourdon to be set at liberty. But this command was not obeyed. For Marcadee kept him in prison, and as soon as the King expired, put him to a painful death⁹³. Though Richard, at his departure for the Holy Land, had declared his nephew Arthur Duke of Brittany his heir, he made a different disposition on his death-bed, by bequeathing all his dominions, and three-fourths of his treasure, to his brother Prince John⁹⁴. No reasons are given for this important change by contemporary historians; and our conjectures concerning the motives to it can be but uncertain. Having expressed great penitence for his vices, and undergone a very severe discipline from the hands of the clergy who attended him in his last mo-

⁹³ Hoveden, p. 450. col. I.

⁹³ Id. Ibid.

⁹⁴ Rymer Fœder. L. I. p. 66. 68. Hoveden, p. 450.

ments, he died on the tenth day after he was A.D. 1199. wounded, April 6th, in the forty-second year of his age, and the tenth of his reign.⁹⁵

Thus fell Richard I. in the prime of life, when engaged in an enterprize unworthy of his power, and not very honourable to his character.

Character
of King
Richard.

In his person he is described by one who was intimately acquainted with him, to have been tall, strong, and handsome; his countenance fair and comely; his eyes blue and sparkling; his hair yellow; and his air stately and majestic⁹⁶. The natural endowments of his mind were not inferior to the perfections of his body. His understanding was excellent, his memory retentive, his imagination lively, and his courage so undaunted, that it procured him the surname of *Cœur de Lion*, or *the Lion-hearted*⁹⁷. In consequence of these endowments, he is celebrated by contemporary writers, as a wise politician, an eloquent orator, an admired poet, and the most illustrious warrior of the age in which he flourished. One of these writers, who attended him in his expedition into the Holy Land, compares him to Ulysses for policy; to Nestor for eloquence; to Hector, Achilles, Alexander, and Rolland, for military talents⁹⁸. In his conversation he was pleasant and facetious; and his

⁹⁵ Chron. Brompt. col. 1279.

⁹⁶ Gaufréd. Vinisau. l. 2. c. 5.

⁹⁷ Chron. Brompt. col. 1278. Girald. Cambrensis Topograph. Hibern. Distinct. 3. c. 50.

⁹⁸ Gaufréd. Vinisau. l. 2. c. 5.

A.D. 1199. pleasantry did not forsake him even at the approach of death. When the Archbishop of Rouen told him, in his last illness, that it was now high time to part with his three favourite daughters, his pride, avarice, and luxury; I am resolved, replied he, to dispose of them in marriage without delay; the first to the templars, the second to the monks, and the third to the prelates, because I know they love them dearly, and will treat them kindly⁹⁹. This prince was not so eminent for his virtues as for his accomplishments. On the contrary, though on some occasions he acted in a noble manner, especially to his prostrate enemies, he was in general haughty, cruel, covetous, passionate, and sensual, an undutiful son, an unfaithful husband, and a most pernicious king, having, by his long absence and continual wars, drained his English dominions both of men and money.

King
John's ac-
cession and
coronation.

John Earl of Mortain, youngest son of Henry II. succeeded his brother Richard in the throne of England, as well as in his foreign dominions, to the exclusion of Arthur Duke of Brittany, the only son of Geoffrey, his elder brother¹⁰⁰. The regular course of succession to the crown of this kingdom, in the representative of the eldest branch of the royal family, was, in this period, so imperfectly established, and had been so often violated, that this deviation from it occasioned little or no disturbance. John

⁹⁹ Chron. Brompt. col. 1279.

¹⁰⁰ Hoveden, p. 451. col. 1.

being in Normandy at the time of his brother's death, immediately flew to Chinon, where his treasures were deposited, and had them delivered to him, by Robert de Turnham, to whose custody they had been committed; after which he dispatched Hubert Archbishop of Canterbury, and William Marechal Earl of Strigul, into England, to secure the succession and preserve the peace of that kingdom¹⁰¹. The influence of these commissioners was so great, that, with the assistance of Jeffrey Fitz-Peers, the chief justiciary, they prevailed upon the body of the clergy, nobility, and people of all ranks, to swear fealty to John; and having had a meeting at Northampton, with a few of the barons, who discovered some reluctance, they persuaded them also, by many fair promises, to take the same oath¹⁰². John's succession met with greater opposition on the continent, many of the barons of Anjou and Maine having declared in favour of Arthur Duke of Brittany. This young Prince, who was now about twelve years of age, was, by his mother Constantia, put into the hands of the King of France, to whom he did homage for all the dominions of his family on the continent, which engaged Philip to espouse his cause¹⁰³. This did not prevent John's being acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated Duke of Normandy at Rouen, April 25th, by the Archbishop of that

¹⁰¹ Hoveden, p. 451. col. 1.¹⁰² Id. *ibid.*¹⁰³ M. Paris, col. 138.

A.D. 1199. city; after which he prepared for his passage into England; where he arrived, May 25th, and was crowned at Westminster, by the Archbishop of Canterbury, on the 27th of that month¹⁰⁴. On the very day of this solemnity, John shewed his gratitude to the three persons who had contributed most to his peaceable accession, by appointing the Archbishop Chancellor of England, and creating William Marechal Earl of Pembroke, and Jeffrey Fitz-Peers Earl of Essex.¹⁰⁵

War with
France.

John perceiving that a profound tranquillity prevailed in England, embarked for Normandy, and landed at Dieppe, June 18th, and soon after concluded a truce with the King of France, till August 16th, when the two monarchs were to have a personal interview, in order to adjust all their differences. At this interview, which was held near Gaillon, Philip behaved with so much haughtiness, and his demands both for himself and for Prince Arthur appeared to John so exorbitant that he rejected them¹⁰⁶. On this the war was renewed; and Philip having made himself master of several places in Le Maine, in the months of September and October, demolished some, and retained others of them in his own possession.

Prince Ar-
thur de-
livered to

This circumstance raised strong suspicions of his selfish views in the mind of William de

¹⁰⁴ M. Paris, col. 138. Hoveden, p. 451.

¹⁰⁵ Id. ibid.

¹⁰⁶ M. Paris, p. 138. Hoveden, p. 452.

Roches,

Roches, the General of Prince Arthur's forces; who, by a stratagem, conveyed that young Prince from Paris to Le Mans, of which he was governor. Here he concluded a treaty with King John, into whose hands he put Prince Arthur, and his mother Constantia, expecting greater favour to them from so near a relation, than from the King of France. But he soon had reason to repent of this transaction. For on the very next day he received intelligence, that the cruel uncle had formed designs against the life of his unhappy nephew; from which danger he was rescued by that faithful servant, who escaped with the Prince and his mother from Le Mans to Angers.¹⁰⁷

A.D. 1199.
John, and
afterwards
rescued
from him.

In the beginning of this year a peace was concluded between the kings of France and England, under the mediation of the Cardinal of Capua, the Pope's legate, and cemented by a contract of marriage between Prince Louis, Philip's eldest son, and Blanche of Castile, King John's niece¹⁰⁸. Being now at liberty, John passed over into England, to collect the sum of twenty thousand marks, which by an article of the peace he was to pay to the King of France, and to have an interview with the King of Scotland, who was become very importunate in his demands of the northern counties. He succeeded in the first of these designs; but failed in the second, the King of

A.D. 1200.
Peace with
France,
and return
to England.

¹⁰⁷ Hoveden, p. 452.

¹⁰⁸ Rymer Fœd. l. 1. p. 117, 118. Annal. Burton. p. 260.

A.D. 1200. Scotland declining the interview in discontent; on which John returned into Normandy.¹⁰⁹

John's
marriage.

In a progress which he made into Guienne, in the summer of this year, to receive the homage of the barons of that province, he was captivated with the charms of Isabel, the young and fair daughter of Aymar, Earl of Engoulesme, and the betrothed wife of Hugh le Brun, Earl of La Marche, to whom she had been delivered. Aymar, dazzled with the lustre of a crown, decoyed his daughter from her betrothed husband; and John having obtained a divorce from his wife, to whom he had been married ten years, and with whom he had received the earldom of Gloucester, and many great estates, was married to Isabel by the Archbishop of Bourdeaux¹¹⁰. This marriage, equally criminal and imprudent, created him many enemies; amongst whom the injured husband was the most violent and implacable. The King conducted his young queen into England, and they were both solemnly crowned at Westminster, October 8th, by the Archbishop of Canterbury.¹¹¹

King of
Scotland
does ho-
mage to
John.

William King of Scotland, conducted by the Bishop of Durham and three English earls, arrived at Lincoln November 21st, and the day after did homage to King John, for the territories that he held of the crown of England, on a hill without that city, in presence of a great con-

¹⁰⁹ M. Paris, p. 139.

¹¹⁰ Hoveden, p. 457. M. Paris, p. 140.

¹¹¹ R. Hoveden, p. 461.

course of the nobility of both kingdoms; insisting, at the same time, with much earnestness, on the immediate restitution of the northern counties. But the final decision of that claim was put off to the next Whitsuntide.¹¹²

King John, with his young queen, and a very splendid court, spent the first months of this year in a continued course of feasting, in which he much delighted; and, celebrating the festival of Easter at Canterbury, he and his queen wore their crowns and royal robes, in imitation of the ancient kings and queens of England¹¹³. But he was soon awakened from this dream of pleasure, by receiving intelligence from the continent, that the enraged Earl of La Marche, his brother the Earl of Eu, and several other barons, had raised a rebellion in Guienne: on which he summoned all his English vassals and military tenants, to meet him with their horses and arms at Portsmouth, on Whitsunday, in order to attend him to the continent. Many of the English barons began on this occasion to discover their discontent; and, thinking the war too trifling for such an expensive expedition, declined to obey the summons; which obliged him to embark with a smaller army than he intended¹¹⁴. Soon after his arrival on the continent, he had an interview with the King of France, who invited him to Paris, where he was lodged with

A.D. 1200.

A.D. 1201.
John's expedition into Guienne, &c.

¹¹² R. Hoveden, p. 462.

¹¹³ Diceto, col. 709.

¹¹⁴ R. Hoveden, p. 466. col. 1.

A.D. 1201. his queen and court in the royal palace, and nobly entertained¹¹⁵. Departing from Paris, he put himself at the head of his army, and marched to the borders of Guienne. But instead of prosecuting the war with vigour, he entered into a negotiation with the rebellious barons; and having pacified them a little, by promising to remove all the causes of their complaints, he returned to Rouen, to enjoy the society of his queen and the pleasures of his court.¹¹⁶

Prince
Arthur
becomes
Duke of
Britanny.

In the mean time, Constantia Duchess of Brittany dying at Nantes, August 31st, her only son Arthur took possession of that duchy, and soon after began to enter into engagements with the discontented barons of Guienne, and to lay claim to all the dominions of his family on the continent, to which he had an undoubted right.¹¹⁷

A.D. 1202.
King of
France
espouses
the cause
of Prince
Arthur.

Philip, King of France, had for some time past been greatly embroiled with the Pope, who had laid his kingdom under an interdict; and, on that account, he had thought it prudent to cultivate peace with all his neighbours, and particularly with King John¹¹⁸. But being in the beginning of this year reconciled to the court of Rome, he found himself at liberty to pursue different measures. He now openly declared himself the protector of the discontented barons of Guienne, and of the young Duke of Brittany,

¹¹⁵ R. Hoveden, p. 466. col. 1.

¹¹⁶ Gul. Breto. Philip. l. 6.

¹¹⁷ Annal. Burton. p. 262.

¹¹⁸ Hoveden, p. 456.

and

and threatened John with an immediate war, if he did not do them justice. John, to divert this storm, if possible, proposed a personal interview. But at this interview, which was held, March 25th, near Andely, Philip's demands were so high, that they were rejected, and a war immediately commenced.¹¹⁹

In the beginning of this war the King of France made himself master of several towns in Normandy. But a very unfortunate event soon after happened that put a stop to his further progress. The youthful Arthur Duke of Brittany, being now about sixteen years of age, full of spirit, and animated with the most violent resentment against a cruel ambitious uncle, who had robbed him of so fair a succession, took the field at the head of two hundred knights, and was soon after joined by many of the disaffected barons of Poitou and Guienne. As he was marching with his little army near the castle of Mirabel in Poitou, he received intelligence, that his grandmother Queen Eleanor, who had warmly espoused the cause of her son against her grandson, resided in that castle. At the earnest intreaty of his barons, to whom the Queen was very obnoxious, he invested it. The bas-court of the castle was taken; and the Queen with the garrison driven into the tower or keep, when John, informed of his mother's danger, flew to her relief with an army of English and Braban-

A.D. 1202.

Prince Arthur taken prisoner by King John.

¹¹⁹ M. Paris, p. 144. col. 2.

A.D. 1202. cons. At the approach of this army the besiegers marched out to meet them, August 1st; but being overpowered by superior numbers, they fled back into the castle, where they were all either killed or taken prisoners. Among the latter was the unfortunate Duke of Brittany, and the Earl of La Marche (John's two greatest enemies), with many barons, and above two hundred knights, who were all loaded with irons, and sent to different prisons in Normandy and England¹²⁰. The King of France was so much affected with the news of this disaster that had befallen his friends, that he raised the siege of Arques, in which he was then engaged, and retired to Paris.¹²¹

A.D. 1203.
Prince Ar-
thur mur-
dered.

If King John had known how to use the advantage he had gained with moderation and prudence, it might have contributed not a little to the peace and prosperity of his future reign. But by pursuing a contrary conduct, it involved him in guilt, disgrace, and misery. Prince Arthur was at first confined in the castle of Falaise; where several persons were solicited to dispatch him, but rejected the base proposal. On this he was conducted to the castle of Rouen, where King John resided. Here the unhappy Prince was murdered, April 3d, in a manner not certainly known, and differently reported by

¹²⁰ M. Paris, p. 144, 145. Annal Waverlien, p. 167. Ypodigma Neustria, p. 458.

¹²¹ M. Paris, p. 145. col. 1.

historians,

historians, though they all agree, that the horrid deed was perpetrated at the instigation, if not by the hand, of his most cruel uncle. ¹²² A.D. 1203.

Immediately after this execrable act, John hastened into England, carrying with him the Princess Eleanora, commonly called *The Maid of Brittany*, the sister of the late Prince Arthur; and having committed her to prison, under keepers, on whom he could depend, he returned to Normandy ¹²³. Many of the other prisoners were so cruelly treated, that they perished in their confinement, and no fewer than twenty-two of the noblest and bravest of them were starved to death in Corf castle. ¹²⁴

No sooner were those cruel transactions published to the world, than John became the object of general execration ¹²⁵. The barons of Brittany accused him of the murder of their Prince before the King of France, of whom he held all his continental territories; and on his not appearing to answer to that charge, he was found guilty of treason and felony, and all his dominions forfeited ¹²⁶. To execute this sentence Philip put himself at the head of his army; and being joined by several barons of Poitou, Anjou, and Maine, he made great progress in the con-

King John having brought over the Maid of Brittany, returns to Normandy.

John's foreign dominions invaded by the King of France.

¹²² Annal. Margan, p. 13. Chron. T. Wikes, p. 36. Chron. W. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 94. M. Paris, p. 145. col. 1. Hen. Knighton, col. 2414.

¹²³ Chron. T. Wikes, p. 36.

¹²⁴ Id. ibid.

¹²⁵ M. Paris, p. 145. col. 2.

¹²⁶ Annal. de Margan, p. 13.

A.D. 1203. quest of Normandy in the course of this campaign, while his infatuated rival spent his time at Rouen, in a succession of sleeping and rioting; and at length, December 6th, he abandoned the continent, and embarked for England.¹²⁷

A.D. 1204. After this shameful retreat of King John, John having returned to England, Philip redoubled his efforts to complete the reduction of Normandy, which he accomplished before the end of this summer¹²⁸. At the same time, and with equal facility, he got possession of the provinces of Anjou, Poitou, and Maine, except a few places.¹²⁹

John's
oppressive
government.

To alleviate in some measure the intolerable ignominy of losing so many fair provinces, the inheritance of his ancestors, without so much as attempting to preserve them, John endeavoured to throw some part of the blame upon his English barons, who, he pretended, had forsaken him, and thereby put it out of his power to defend his territories; for which he fined some, and confiscated the estates of others¹³⁰. In these oppressive measures he was supported by the great influence and authority of Hubert Archbishop of Canterbury in the church, and of Geoffrey Fitz-Peters, the chief justiciary, in the state¹³¹. He also prevailed upon a parliament, held at Oxford, to grant him a scutage of two marks and a half

¹²⁷ Annal. de Margan, p. 13. M. Paris, p. 146. col. 1. Chron. Trevite, ann. 1203.

¹²⁸ Annal. Waverlien. p. 168. Chron. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 100.

¹²⁹ Ypodigma Neustriæ, p. 459.

¹³⁰ M. Paris, p. 146. col. 1.

¹³¹ Id. *ibid.*

upon every knight's fee, for raising an army to be sent to Normandy¹³². But no army was either raised or sent. A.D. 1204.

In the spring of this year, King John, feigning to have formed a resolution to attempt the recovery of his foreign territories, summoned all his barons, and other military tenants, to meet him at Portsmouth on Whitsunday, in order to attend him in an expedition to the continent. But when the army was assembled, and all things in readiness, he suffered himself to be persuaded by the Archbishop of Canterbury to change his mind, and dismiss his troops. In a few weeks, however, changing, or pretending to change, his mind a second time, he embarked at Portsmouth with a small retinue, and put to sea, July 15th; but two days after returned to Stodland near Wareham, where he landed, making this ridiculous excursion a pretence for exacting money from his military tenants for their non-attendance¹³³. By this conduct, equally capricious and tyrannical, he incurred still more and more the contempt of his enemies and the hatred of his subjects. A.D. 1205.
John's further oppressions.

John, being importuned by some of the nobles of Poitou, who still adhered to the English interest, to come to their assistance; and being also encouraged to that undertaking by Guy de Thouars, who governed Brittany, and was become jealous of the increasing power of France, A.D. 1206.
John's unsuccessful expedition to the continent, and his return to England.

¹³² Mat. Westmonasteriens. ann. 1204.

¹³³ M. Paris, p. 148.

seemed

A.D. 1206. seemed at last to be raised from his ignominious indolence, and raised an army, with which he embarked at Portsmouth, June 25th, and landed at Rochelle, July 9th¹³⁴. But he did not conduct this enterprize in such a manner as to retrieve his honour, or recover any part of his dominions. For though he was joined by many barons of Poitou and Brittany, he did little more than plunder the open country; and as soon as the King of France approached with an army, he began to think of making his retreat. In order to accomplish this, he proposed a personal interview with Philip to treat of an accommodation; to which that Prince agreed. But John, instead of appearing at the time and place appointed for the interview, made use of that opportunity of retiring with his army to Rochelle. By the mediation of the Pope, and at the earnest intreaty of certain ecclesiastical negotiators, a truce for two years was concluded at Thouars, October 27th; not long after which John embarked with his army for England, and landed at Portsmouth December 12th.¹³⁵

A.D. 1207.
and 1208.

John's
quarrel
with the
Pope.

The famous quarrel between King John and the Pope about the choice of an archbishop of Canterbury was now commenced, and had come to so great a height, that the kingdom of England was laid under an interdict, March 24th, and the King was threatened with excommunica-

¹³⁴ M. Paris, p. 149.

¹³⁵ Id. *ibid.* Rymer Fœd. t. i. p. 141.

tion.

tion ¹³⁶. To guard against the effects of these papal thunders, which in those days of darkness and superstition made the greatest monarchs tremble, John demanded and obtained hostages from his chief nobility, as a further security for their obedience and fidelity. ¹³⁷

A.D. 1207.
and 1208.

William King of Scotland had long been discontented, because the consideration of his claim to the northern counties had been put off from time to time. John, on the other hand, was no less dissatisfied with that prince — for having demolished a fort near Berwick — for having entertained fugitives from England — and for other causes ¹³⁸. To put an end to these disputes, John marched into the north in the spring of this year, at the head of a very powerful army, and was met by William at the head of his forces, on the borders of Scotland. When the two armies lay facing each other near the castle of Norham, a treaty was proposed and concluded: By this treaty, which was ratified at Northampton, August 7th, William agreed to pay to John fifteen thousand marks at four different terms, in consideration of certain concessions made to him in another charter, which is not preserved; and also to send his two daughters to be educated in the court of England, but not to be considered as hostages. ¹³⁹

A.D. 1209.
John's expedition
against
Scotland,
and peace
made.

¹³⁶ See chap. II. cent. 13.

¹³⁷ M. Paris, p. 158.

¹³⁸ Chron. Hemingford, l. 2. c. 101. M. Paris, p. 151. col. 2.

¹³⁹ Rymer Fœd. t. I. p. 155.

A.D. 1209.

John's un-
popular
govern-
ment.

After his return from this northern expedition, John issued a proclamation, commanding all freeholders and tenants of the crown to repeat their homage, and renew their oaths of fealty; which prevented any commotions arising when the long-dreaded sentence of excommunication was pronounced against him in the month of November ¹⁴⁰. But though the affection of his subjects was at this time so necessary to the support of his government, this imprudent prince could not refrain from an unpopular and tyrannical exercise of his authority. He forbid the two admired diversions of hunting and hawking, under the severest penalties, and commanded all the fences about the royal forests to be thrown down, that his deer might have free access to the corn-fields. ¹⁴¹

A.D. 1210.

John's ex-
pedition
into Ire-
land.

In the first four months of this year, King John was keenly engaged in extorting money from his subjects, both clergy and laity, and particularly from the Jews, in order, as he pretended, to raise an army for an expedition into Normandy ¹⁴². But when the army was raised, instead of directing his march towards Normandy, he passed through Wales, and landed in Ireland, June 6th. At his arrival in Dublin, more than twenty of the chieftains and petty princes of that country waited upon him, did homage, and swore fealty to him as their sove-

¹⁴⁰ M. Paris, p. 159.

¹⁴¹ Id. *ibid*.

¹⁴² Annal. Waverlien. p. 172. M. Paris, p. 160.

reign ¹⁴³. During his stay in Ireland, which was A.D. 1210.
 about three months, he reduced the province of
 Connaught; drove Hugh de Lacy Earl of Ulster,
 and his brother Walter de Lacy Earl of Meath,
 against whom he had a quarrel, out of the coun-
 try; and having thus overcome all opposition to
 his authority, he established the English laws in
 that island; and coined money of the same de-
 nominations, weight, and fineness, with that of
 England. ¹⁴⁴

After his return from his Irish expedition, John ex-
torts mo-
ney from
the monks
and nuns.
 which was the most successful transaction of his
 unhappy reign, he held an assembly of all the
 abbots, abbesses, priors, and superiors of re-
 ligious houses at London; and forced them to
 pay him no less than one hundred thousand
 pounds before he would allow them to depart ¹⁴⁵:
 a sufficient proof of *their* wealth, as well as of
 his tyranny.

The honour that John had acquired by his ex- A.D. 1211.
John's ex-
pedition
into
Wales.
 pedition into Ireland, encouraged him to un-
 dertake one this year, against Llewellyn Prince
 of North Wales, though he was his own son-in-
 law, by having married his natural daughter,
 named Jane. In his first attempt his army was
 reduced to great distress for want of provisions,
 which obliged him to return to England. Irrita-
 ted at this disappointment, he collected suffi-
 cient quantities of victuals of all kinds, and

¹⁴³ M. Paris, p. 160.¹⁴⁴ Id. *ibid*.¹⁴⁵ Id. *ibid*.

A.D. 1211. marched back into Wales, with so great an army, that Llewellyn, despairing of being able to defend his country, sent his consort to her father to implore a peace; which she obtained on these conditions, that Llewellyn should do homage to John for his principality,—pay twenty thousand head of cattle, and forty horses, for the expences of the war,—and give twenty-eight hostages for his future fidelity¹⁴⁶. Returning triumphant from this expedition, John obliged all his military tenants who had not attended him in it, to pay a scutage of two marks for every knight's fee.¹⁴⁷

A.D. 1212. The success of his three expeditions into Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, contributed not a little to support John's authority, and prevent any commotions in England, though that kingdom had now been about four years under an interdict. He was on the best terms with his nearest and most powerful neighbour the King of Scotland, with whom he had an interview at Durham, February 2d, and whose eldest son, Prince Alexander, he knighted at London, March 4th¹⁴⁸. But notwithstanding this external tranquillity, and all these fair appearances, many of the English barons were secretly disaffected, and waited only for a favourable opportunity to revenge the injuries they had suffered from the avarice, lust, and cruelty of their

¹⁴⁶ Powel Hist. Wales. p. 264. M. Paris, p. 160.

¹⁴⁷ M. Paris, p. 160.

¹⁴⁸ Id. p. 161.

sovereign.

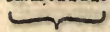
sovereign. Such an opportunity was soon presented. A.D. 1212.

The Pope finding that the interdict and excommunication had not produced the desired effect, proceeded to greater extremities, pronounced a formal sentence of deposition against John, absolved all his subjects from their oaths of fealty, and invited the King of France, and all other Christian princes and people, to join in a croisade for putting that sentence in execution¹⁴⁹. Llewellyn Prince of Wales was the first who took the field to execute this papal decree; and falling with an army into the English marches, destroyed the country with fire and sword. Enraged at these cruelties, John raised a great army; and threatening the total extirpation of the Welsh, marched to Nottingham, where he commanded the twenty-eight young gentlemen who had been given as hostages for the late peace, to be hanged¹⁵⁰. At this place he received the first hints of the designs that were secretly forming against him by his barons, in letters from the King of Scotland, which were confirmed by similar intimations sent him by his daughter the Princess of Wales. Alarmed at this intelligence, and not knowing whom to suspect or whom to trust, he shut himself up in the castle of Nottingham, for fifteen days; when recovering a little from his first surprise, he

John deposed by the Pope, and deserted by many of his barons.

¹⁴⁹ Annal. Waverlien. p. 174. M. Paris, p. 162. Mat. Westmonasteriens. ann. 1212.

¹⁵⁰ M. Paris, p. 161.

A.D. 1212.  marched forward to Chester. But here, receiving accounts from several quarters, that the plots against him were ripe for execution, and that if he proceeded any further he would either be assassinated or delivered to the enemy, he dismissed his army, and hastened back to London, to take measures for his preservation. Some of the conspirators, as Eustace de Vesci, and Robert Fitz-Walter, fled out of the kingdom; others were imprisoned on suspicion; and the rest gave their sons and nearest relations as hostages for their fidelity¹⁵¹. Still further to guard against the dreaded danger, he seldom appeared in public, and kept certain companies of foreign mercenaries constantly about his person¹⁵². Conferences were held towards the end of this year with Pandulph and Durand, the Pope's agents, in order to an accommodation with the court of Rome; but John being not yet sufficiently humbled to submit to the ignominious yoke they intended to wreath about his neck, these conferences broke off without effect.¹⁵³

A.D. 1213.
Prepara-
tions in
France for
invading
England.

The effects of the sentence of deposition that had been pronounced by the Pope against the King of England, now began to appear in a very formidable light. The King of France had spent the greatest part of last year in preparing a fleet and army for executing that sentence, by invading England, dethroning John, and seating

¹⁵¹ M. Paris, p. 161. Chron. Trivetii, ann. 1212.

¹⁵² Annal. Waverliën. p. 173.

¹⁵³ Id. p. 174, 175.

himself

himself in his room. All things being in readiness, the French army was appointed to rendezvous at Rouen, April 21st, and from thence to march to Boulogne, where a fleet of seventeen hundred ships was prepared for their reception.¹⁵⁴ A.D. 1213.

John was not wanting to himself on this occasion; but made every possible preparation for a brave defence. On March 3^d, he sent precepts to the bailiffs of all the sea-ports of England commanding them to take an exact list of all the ships in those ports capable of carrying six horses or upwards, and to order the masters of these ships to have them at Portsmouth on or before the 24th of that month¹⁵⁵. About the same time he sent similar precepts to the sheriffs, commanding them to summon all the earls, barons, knights, military tenants, or others who had or ought to have arms, in their respective counties, to appear at Dover, April 21st, for the defence of the kingdom, of the King's life, and of their own lives¹⁵⁶. In obedience to his summons, such prodigious multitudes crowded to the rendezvous, that a scarcity of provisions followed, and obliged the King to dismiss all who were imperfectly armed; after which no fewer than sixty thousand brave and well-appointed troops remained.¹⁵⁷

John's preparations for opposing the invaders.

¹⁵⁴ M. Paris, p. 162.

¹⁵⁵ Id. *ibid*.

¹⁵⁶ Id. p. 163.

¹⁵⁷ Id. *ibid*.

A.D. 1213.

John re-
conciled to
the Pope,
and be-
comes his
vassal.

When the Kings of France and England were thus stationed on the opposite shores, at the head of all their forces, ready to determine the fate of this mighty kingdom, Pandulph, the Pope's legate, sent two knights templars to John to propose a private conference. The proposal was accepted; and the legate, in an interview with John at Dover, painted the power of Philip in such strong colours, and gave him such convincing evidence of the general disaffection of his own nobility, that he was overwhelmed with dismay, and declared himself ready to submit to any terms for his preservation from impending ruin. The artful agent of Rome having brought the wretched prince to this point, produced the conditions on which the Pope was willing to relax him from the censures, and receive him into the protection, of the church; which were immediately subscribed, May 13th, by him and his greatest barons. By this agreement John engaged to receive Stephen Langton, the archbishop appointed by the Pope, with all the bishops and clergy who had adhered to him, into favour, and to repair all the damages they had sustained, in the course of this long and violent quarrel, on the performance of which the interdict was to be taken off¹⁵⁸. To give a more effectual check to the King of France (of whose power the Pope began to be afraid), and to bring

¹⁵⁸ Chron. N. Trivetii, ann. 1213. Annal. Waverlieni. p. 177.
M. Paris, p. 164.

the thunders of the church to point directly upon him if he presumed to proceed in his enterprize against England, it was contrived, most probably by Pandulph, that John should resign his kingdoms of England and Ireland into the hands of his holiness, and agree to hold them of him; paying a tribute of seven hundred marks a-year for the former, and three hundred marks for the latter: and this ignominious ceremony was actually performed at Dover, May 15th.¹⁵⁹

A.D. 1213.

Pandulph having thus effectually accomplished his designs in England, and acquired the sovereignty of two kingdoms to the church of Rome, returned to France, and commanded Philip, in the Pope's name, to desist from attempting any thing against the King of England, who was become the vassal of the holy see. To this insolent command that monarch, after some angry but vain expostulations, thought it prudent to yield obedience¹⁶⁰. In this manner, in those days of darkness and superstition, did an old infirm priest, sitting in his chamber at Rome, regulate all the motions of the most powerful princes as he pleased!

The papal legate commands the King of France to desist from his intended invasion of England.

The King of France being thus obliged to abandon his intended invasion of England, turned his arms against Ferrand Earl of Flanders, who, with some other princes on the continent, had entered into an alliance with King John, to form

Engagement between the English and French fleets.

¹⁵⁹ M. Paris, p. 165. Knighton, l. 11. c. 15. col. 2419.

¹⁶⁰ M. Paris, p. 165.

A.D. 1213. a balance against the increasing power of Philip¹⁶¹.

The French army being very great, took several of the strongest towns of Flanders in a little time, and threatened the conquest of the whole country. In this extremity, Ferrard implored the assistance of all his allies, and particularly of the King of England; who commanded his fleet, consisting of five hundred ships, which had been collected for the defence of the kingdom against the expected invasion, to sail from Portsmouth, and attack the French fleet on the coast of Flanders. These two great fleets (that of France being still more numerous than the other) met off the port of Dam, where they immediately engaged, and the English obtained a complete victory, taking three hundred vessels loaded with provisions, &c. destroying one hundred, and dispersing all the rest¹⁶². Philip was so much confounded at the news of this great disaster, by which he and his nobility had lost their most valuable effects, that he retired with his army into his own dominions, and gave orders to burn such of his ships as were in danger of falling into the hands of the English.

John's intended expedition into Normandy prevented this year.

John, as much elated as his rival was dejected by this event, formed the scheme of an expedition to the continent for the recovery of his foreign territories; which, if it had been executed with spirit, could hardly have failed of success. But when this design was communi-

¹⁶¹ Rymer Fœd. l. i. p. 157. 160, 161.

¹⁶² M. Paris, p. 166. Mezeray, vol. 2. p. 622.

cated to the nobility, who were in general dis- A.D. 1213.
 affected, they refused to engage in it, alleging
 that the time of their service was expired, and
 that their provisions were exhausted¹⁶³. Though
 John was much enraged at this refusal, not hav-
 ing it in his power to compel them by force, he
 tried to bring them by a stratagem to engage in
 this expedition. With this view he embarked
 with his household troops, and sailed from Portf-
 mouth to Jersey, hoping that his barons would
 follow him with their forces. But, instead of
 this, they separated, and retired to their respec-
 tive countries: of which John being informed,
 he returned to England more enraged than ever.
 Having collected a considerable army, chiefly of
 mercenaries, he directed his march towards the
 north, with a resolution to chastise some of the
 barons in those parts, who were the chief objects
 of his resentment. But when he had proceeded
 as far as Nottingham, he was overtaken by Arch-
 bishop Langton, who threatened him and all his
 followers with the terrible sentence of excom-
 munication, if he prosecuted his revenge any
 further; which obliged him to desist¹⁶⁴.

Though John had been thus constrained to A.D. 1214.
 delay his expedition to the continent, he had by John's un-
 no means abandoned the design; in which he was successful
 encouraged by his allies, the Earls of Flanders, expedition
 Boulogne, Thoulouse, and Auvergne. All these to the con-
 princes came over to England in January this tinent.

¹⁶³ M. Paris, p. 166.¹⁶⁴ Id. p. 167.

A.D. 1214. year, and formed a plan for invading France on both sides at the same time; on the side of Flanders, by Otho Emperor of Germany, the Earls of Flanders and Boulogne, assisted by some English troops; on the other side by King John, in conjunction with the Earls of Thoulouse, Auverne, and his other confederates in those parts¹⁶⁵. To execute his part of this plan, King John embarked with an army at Portsmouth February 2d, landed at Rochelle February 15th; and being joined by his allies, took several towns in Poitou and Anjou¹⁶⁶. His other allies invaded France on the other side, at the same time, with an army of one hundred and fifty thousand men. But this great army was defeated at Bovines, July 27th: the Earls of Flanders, Holland, Boulogne, and Salisbury, with about one hundred and forty other earls and barons, were taken prisoners; and the Emperor Otho made his escape with much difficulty¹⁶⁷. On receiving the news of this disaster, and of the approach of Louis Prince of France with an army, John retired with great precipitation, abandoned all his conquests, and returned to England, October 19th, having concluded a five years' truce with King Philip.¹⁶⁸

A.D. 1215.
Civil war
between

The schemes that had been forming for some time past among the English barons, for recover-

¹⁶⁵ M. Paris, p. 172.

¹⁶⁶ Id. p. 172, 173. Rymer Fœd. t. 1. p. 189.

¹⁶⁷ Chron. Mailros, p. 187. M. Paris, p. 174, 175.

¹⁶⁸ Rymer Fœd. p. 192.

ing and securing their liberties, being now ^{A.D. 1215.} become ripe for execution, a great number of ^{King John and his barons.} these barons, attended by their followers in arms, waited upon the King, at London, January 6th, and demanded a confirmation of the liberties that had been granted to their ancestors by Henry I. in his charter, a copy of which they produced ¹⁶⁹. After some altercation, the King promised to return an answer to this demand at the end of Easter next; and the Archbishop of Canterbury, with the Bishop of Ely and the Earl of Pembroke, becoming sureties for his performing this promise, the barons were satisfied, and retired. John, resolving in his own mind not to grant the demands of his barons, employed various arts to secure himself from the effects of their resentment. With this view he commanded all his subjects to renew their oaths of fealty;—granted to all cathedrals, monasteries, and conventual societies, the right of electing their superiors;—took the cross for the recovery of the Holy Land; and sent ambassadors to his sovereign lord the Pope, to accuse his barons of rebellion, and solicit the thunders of the church against them ¹⁷⁰. By these steps, the barons being convinced that nothing could be obtained without a sufficient power to enforce their demands, assembled at Stamford in Easter week, with all their followers, who constituted a formidable army, and marched, April 27th, to

¹⁶⁹ M. Paris, p. 176.¹⁷⁰ Id. *ibid.* Rymer Fœd. p. 197.

A.D. 1215. Bracley, about fifteen miles from Oxford, where the King then resided ¹⁷¹. On the approach of the barons, John sent the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Earl of Pembroke, to ask what were the liberties and privileges that they desired. To these ambassadors the barons delivered a schedule, containing the heads of their demands; which being presented to the King, he rejected them with indignation, declaring that he never would grant such liberties to his subjects as would make himself a slave ¹⁷². On receiving this answer, the barons, without paying any regard to the Pope's letters, threatening them with excommunication, broke out into open war, and invested the castle of Northampton, which they could not take for want of battering engines ¹⁷³. But they were more successful in their next attempts. For after they had taken the castle of Bedford, having received an invitation from the chief citizens of London, they marched thither, and took possession of that capital, May 24th. ¹⁷⁴

King John grants the great charter.

The King, who had retired from Oxford to Odeham, finding himself abandoned almost by all the world, sent the Earl of Pembroke to the insurgents at London, to propose a conference in order to an accommodation. This conference was accordingly held in a large meadow between Windsor and Stanes, where, on Friday, June

¹⁷¹ M. Paris.

¹⁷² Idem.

¹⁷³ Rymer Fœd. t. i. p. 196, 197. M. Paris, p. 177.

¹⁷⁴ Id. *ibid*.

19th, the famous charter called *Magna Charta*, A.D. 1215. or, *The Great Charter*, was granted by King John¹⁷⁵. To secure the possession of those inestimable privileges granted by this charter, the palladium of English liberty, many precautions were taken by the barons, and, in particular, twenty-five of their own number were appointed to be conservators of the charter, and invested with the most extensive powers for that purpose.¹⁷⁶

After King John had granted this charter, he became sullen, melancholy, and dejected; and retiring with a few confidants to the Isle of Wight, he began to form schemes for recovering the prerogatives which he had relinquished. With this view he dispatched orders to all the commanders of his castles, to repair their fortifications, and furnish them with provisions. He sent agents to the continent, to collect an army of Brabantines and other mercenaries, and bring them into England; — and by ambassadors he again applied to the Pope for his protection and assistance¹⁷⁷. While these emissaries were executing their commissions, John lived for three months in the greatest obscurity in the Isle of Wight, conversing only with the sailors of the Cinque ports, whose affections he thereby gained.

John's discontent at his granting the great charter, and his preparations for recalling it.

The King's ambassadors met with a most favourable reception at the court of Rome; and

The Pope condemns the great

¹⁷⁵ See Judge Blackstone's *Law-tracts*, vol. 2. introduc. See chap. 3.

¹⁷⁶ M. Paris, p. 181.

¹⁷⁷ Id. p. 183, 184.

having

A.D. 1215.
 {
 charter,
 and excom-
 municates
 the barons.

having read some of the most offensive articles of the great charter to the Pope, his holiness knit his brows, and swore by St. Peter, "that he would not suffer a king who bore the sign of the cross, and was a vassal of the Holy See, to be treated in that manner with impunity¹⁷⁸." To execute these threats, he issued one bull, August 24th, annulling the great charter, as extorted by force; and another, not long after, denouncing excommunication against the barons and all their favourers.¹⁷⁹

John takes
 Rochester
 castle.

About the time that these bulls were brought to England, John received a more effectual succour, by the landing of a great army of Brabantines, and other mercenaries, at Dover; which encouraged him to emerge from his obscurity, and invest the castle of Rochester. This was a dreadful blow upon the barons, who had been lulled asleep by the King's retirement, and the contempt in which they held him. The castle, however, was bravely defended by a garrison of one hundred and forty knights, with their followers, under the command of William de Albemey. But at the end of two months, their provisions being exhausted, they were obliged to surrender at discretion, November 30th.¹⁸⁰

A.D. 1216.
 Operations
 of the war.

In the beginning of this year, King John's affairs were in a very flourishing situation. Having divided his forces, which were very numerous,

¹⁷⁸ M. Paris, p. 184.

¹⁸⁰ M. Paris, p. 187.

¹⁷⁹ Rymer Fœd. t. i. p. 204, 205, 208.

into two armies, he left one of them under the command of the Earl of Salisbury near London, and marched with the other into the north. The first of these armies greatly straitened the metropolis, and took several towns and castles in its neighbourhood; and the second struck such terror as it advanced northward, that the confederated barons of Yorkshire and Northumberland abandoned their country and fled into Scotland¹⁸¹.

John, as usual, made a cruel use of his superiority, desolating the open country with fire and sword, and burning all the towns that fell into his hands, particularly Morpeth, Alnwick, Berwick, Roxburgh, Dunbar, and Haddington, which were all reduced to ashes, in the month of January this year¹⁸². About the same time, the Pope's bull, excommunicating all the confederated barons by name, and laying their lands under an interdict, was published in all parts of England except London.¹⁸³

The barons being thus reduced to the very brink of ruin, and knowing too well the cruel unrelenting disposition of their Prince to think of making their submission, sent their general, Robert Fitz-Walter, and Saker Earl of Winton, to Philip King of France, to make an offer of the throne of England to Prince Louis, his eldest son. A dangerous step! to which nothing could have driven them but despair; which, a contem-

The barons offer the crown of England to Louis Prince of France.

¹⁸¹ Chron. Mailros, p. 190. M. Paris, p. 190.

¹⁸² Id. p. 191. Chron. Mailros, p. 190.

¹⁸³ M. Paris, p. 192.

A.D. 1216. porary historian tells us, was so great, that they cursed both the King and the Pope, in the bitterness of their souls¹⁸⁴. Their splendid offer was joyfully accepted by Philip and his son, who sent them an immediate reinforcement of seven thousand men, and prepared to bring them in person a more effectual relief.¹⁸⁵

Prince
Louis lands
with his
army, takes
Rochester,
and enters
London.

These preparations were carried on with so much vigour, that Prince Louis arrived with a fleet of six hundred ships, at the isle of Thanet, and landed his army at Sandwich, May 23d, without opposition¹⁸⁶. Having taken the castle of Rochester in his march, May 30th, he entered London, June 2d, in a kind of triumph, amidst the loudest acclamations of the citizens, the barons and their followers, who did homage to him as their sovereign, and received his promise, upon oath, that he would restore them to all their possessions, and protect them in all their privileges.¹⁸⁷

King John
in great
distress.

The state of things was now entirely changed, and King John, who a few months before was on the point of overwhelming all his enemies, was obliged to retire from place to place, being abandoned by several of his barons, and many of his mercenaries. The Pope was still his steady friend, and by the hands of Gualo, his legate in England, discharged all the artillery of the church against his adversaries. But these, being

¹⁸⁴ M. Paris, p. 193.

¹⁸⁶ M. Paris, p. 195.

¹⁸⁵ Radulf. Niger, p. 144.

¹⁸⁷ Id. *ibid.*

unsupported by a military force, did little execution. A.D. 1216.

After Prince Louis had received the homage of the Londoners and the barons of his party, he took the field, and in a few months reduced all the south of England to his obedience, except the castle of Dover. It was before this castle, which he invested July 22d, that the Prince met with an obstacle, that put a stop to the current of his prosperity. The brave Hubert de Burgh, at the head of one hundred and forty knights, besides a great number of gentlemen and common soldiers, defended it with so much skill and valour, that many of the besiegers were slain, and all their attacks repulsed, though they employed against it the most famous battering engine then in the world, called *Evil-neighbour*¹⁸⁸. This obstinate resistance so irritated Prince Louis, that he swore a solemn oath, That he would not raise the siege till he had taken the castle, and hanged all the garrison¹⁸⁹. An oath which he was never able to perform, and which probably lost him the crown of England.

Prince Louis besieges Dover castle in vain.

While Prince Louis was wasting his time and strength to no purpose before the castle of Dover, King John, having recruited his army, broke into the counties of Suffolk and Norfolk, and committed dreadful devastations on the estates of the revolted barons. Some of those barons also began to discover their error in inviting one

Operations of the war, and death of King John.

¹⁸⁸ M. Paris, p. 198.

¹⁸⁹ Id. *ibid*.

A.D. 1216. to be their protector, who might become their conqueror; and Louis had given such plain indications of his partiality to his own countrymen, and aversion to the English, that the Earl of Salisbury, William Marechal, Walter Beauchamp, and several others, abandoned his party. But King John did not live to enjoy this returning dawn of good fortune. For having marched from Lyne-Regis in Norfolk, over the sands into Lincolnshire, at an improper time, the rear of his army was overtaken by the flowing tide, and fell into certain quicksands in which he lost all his carriages, containing his regalia, money, provisions, and baggage of all kinds. This disaster, added to many other causes of chagrin, threw him into a fever, which increased so fast, that it was with great difficulty he reached Newark upon Trent; where he died, October 19th, in the forty-ninth year of his age, and the seventeenth of his reign. In his last moments he is said to have received letters from forty of the revolted barons, declaring their resolution to return to his obedience, which (though they came too late to afford him any comfort) produced a revolution favourable to his family, which will be related in the beginning of the fourth book of this work.¹⁹⁰

Character
of King
John.

The odious character that hath been given of King John by all our ancient historians, is but

¹⁹⁰ M. Paris, p. 198, 199. Chron. Trivetii, ann. 1216. Hen. Knyghton, col. 2425. Annal. Waverliën, p. 182.

too well supported by the particulars of his A.D. 1216.
history. From thence it appears,—that he was
an unnatural son, having conspired against a most
indulgent father;—an unkind brother, having
attempted the ruin of King Richard, who had
loaded him with favours;—a cruel uncle, having
murdered his nephew Prince Arthur, and kept
his niece the Princess Eleanora in perpetual im-
prisonment;—a jealous and unfaithful husband,
having repudiated one wife, and imprisoned
another, and violated his faith to both by innu-
merable adulteries. He discovered his contempt
of religion,—by his wanton violation of the most
solemn oaths,—his horrid habitual swearing,—
and his insipid sarcasms on sacred things. The
public character of this prince was, if possible,
more detestable than his private; and if he was
a bad man, he was a worse king; having suffered
himself to be stript of his foreign dominions
without a struggle, and subjected his kingdom to
the ignominious yoke of Rome. In his admini-
stration he paid no regard to justice, law, or
mercy; but acted the part of a lustful, rapaci-
ous, and bloody tyrant, sporting with the honours,
the fortunes, and lives of his unhappy subjects.
His tyranny was productive of many miseries,
to himself, his family, and his people; and yet,
such is the wisdom and goodness of Divine Pro-
vidence! it became the occasion of many bless-
ings to posterity. For his intolerable oppressions
drove his barons into the field, and procured
them the Great Charter, which perhaps they

A.D. 1216. would not have asked from a better, nor obtained from a braver prince.

His issue. King John, besides many natural children, left two legitimate sons, and three daughters; viz. Henry, born October 1st, A.D. 1207.; Richard, born January 6th, A.D. 1209.; Jane, married to Alexander King of Scotland; Eleanor, married first to the Earl of Pembroke, and afterwards to the famous Earl of Leicester; and Isabella, married to the Emperor Frederic II.

History of
Wales.

DAVID AP OWEN succeeded his father Owen Gwyneth in the government of North Wales, A.D. 1169., to the exclusion of Llewelyn, his eldest brother's son, and kept possession of it to A.D. 1194. He was then dispossessed by Prince Llewelyn; and being defeated in several attempts he made to recover what he had lost, he died, it is said, of a broken heart A.D. 1204. From that time Llewelyn defended his dominions with so much valour, and governed them with so much wisdom, to his death, A.D. 1240., that he was much honoured and loved by the Welsh, who gave him the pompous title of *The Great*¹⁹¹. To relate the almost innumerable quarrels of the Welsh among themselves, and with the English upon their borders, in this period, would take up much room, and could afford little instruction or entertainment. It is sufficient to say, that they were the same brave and warlike people

¹⁹¹ Powel's History of Wales, p. 227—299.

they

they had ever been; and as they were under the direction of many petty chieftains, and had a most invincible antipathy to their nearest neighbours, they were almost constantly engaged in war against one another, or against the English. A.D. 1126.

William the Lion, King of Scotland, reigned almost half a century, and was the contemporary of three kings of England. In the former part of his reign he was so unfortunate as to be taken prisoner (as hath been already related), and obliged to sacrifice the independency of his kingdom to recover the freedom of his person. History of Scotland in the reign of William the Lion. In the present period he was more prosperous. For Richard I., before his departure for the Holy Land, in order to gain the friendship of the King and people of Scotland, that they might not disturb the peace of his dominions in his absence, and in order to procure a sum of money, of which he stood in need, agreed to restore William and his kingdom to their former independency. This was accordingly done at Canterbury, 5th December, A. D. 1189., by a charter, in which he restores the castles of Berwick and Roxburgh, relinquishes all obligations that his father Henry had extorted from William in his captivity; releases the people of Scotland from the oaths of homage they had taken to Henry, and gives up all charters containing these obligations and oaths¹⁹². For this valuable charter William paid to Richard ten thousand

¹⁹² Rymer Fœdera, vol. 1. p. 64.

A.D. 1216. marks, equal in quantity of silver to about twenty thousand pounds of our money at present, and in efficacy to one hundred thousand pounds at least¹⁹³. This generous concession of Richard seems to have gained the hearts of the King and people of Scotland, who could not be prevailed upon to join with the King of France and Prince John in their schemes against that unfortunate prince in his distress, but, on the contrary, contributed a considerable sum of money towards his ransom¹⁹⁴. William visited Richard on his return to England after his captivity, assisted at his second coronation, obtained a charter, regulating the entertainment of the kings of Scotland in their journies to and from the court of England; but could not obtain the restitution of the northern counties.¹⁹⁵

The internal tranquillity of Scotland was disturbed in the years 1196. and 1197., by some insurrections in Caithness and Sutherland; but they were soon suppressed, and their authors punished¹⁹⁶. Several schemes had been proposed for settling the succession of the crown in case the King, who was now old, should happen to die without male issue; but Queen Ermangard was delivered of a son, who was named Alexander, A.D. 1198., which put an end to all these

¹⁹³ Benedict. Abbas, p. 576.

¹⁹⁴ Chron. de Mailros, ad ann. 1193.

¹⁹⁵ Hoveden. Annal. p. 420, &c. Rymer Fœdera, tom. 1. p. 87.

¹⁹⁶ Chron. Mailros, p. 180, 181.

schemes,

schemes, to the great joy both of the King and his subjects. ¹⁹⁷ A.D. 1216.

After the accession of King John to the crown of England, William did homage to him at Lincoln, 22d November, A.D. 1200., for his lands in England, with a saving of the rights of his crown ¹⁹⁵. He then demanded, as he had often done before, the restitution of the counties of Cumberland, Northumberland, and Westmorland; but, at John's earnest request, allowed him till Whitfunday after to give his answer to this demand; which he delayed still longer to give, on various pretences ¹⁹⁹. John's repeated delays to return a direct answer to the demand of the northern counties, and his erecting a castle opposite to Berwick, in which he was interrupted by William, increased the misunderstanding between the two monarchs, and threatened a war. To prevent this, John and William held a conference at Norham, A.D. 1204.; but separated without any positive agreement ²⁰⁰. When things had continued some years in this unsettled state, an open rupture took place, and both kings appeared at the head of their armies on the borders, A.D. 1209., seemingly resolved to determine all their disputes by the sword, which they had long laboured in vain to settle by negotiation. But a battle was prevented by the interposition of the nobles of both nations, the armies

¹⁹⁷ Chron. Mailros, p. 180, 181.

¹⁹⁸ R. Hoveden. ad ann. 1200. p. 461. col. 2.

¹⁹⁹ Id. *ibid*.

²⁰⁰ Fordun, l. 8. c. 66.

were

A.D. 1216. were disbanded, and a conference appointed to be held between the two kings at Newcastle. The King of Scotland being suddenly taken ill at the beginning of the conference, nothing was concluded but a short truce; at the expiration of which both kings collected their forces, and marched again to the borders²⁰¹. The nobles interposed a second time, and procured a meeting between their sovereigns at Norham; in which a treaty of peace was concluded on conditions that are not very well known, because the charter in which they were contained hath never been published, and is probably destroyed. All we know with certainty is, — that the King of Scotland bound himself to pay to John 15,000 marks in two years, by four equal payments, to gain his good will, and to fulfil the conventions contained in a charter confirmed by both kings; — that he gave hostages to secure the payment of that money; — and that he put his two daughters into the hands of the King of England²⁰². The only question is, What were the conditions contained in that charter, for which so great a sum of money was paid, and the princesses were delivered? An English parliament, about thirty years after this, declared, that the conditions were, — That the two princesses should be married to King John's two sons; and that the money, together with a renunciation of his claim to the northern counties, was given by William

²⁰¹ Fordun, l. 8. c. 69.

²⁰² Rymer Fœdera, t. 1. c. 155.

as their marriage-portion²⁰³. This is further confirmed by the claim to the northern counties being renewed by King Alexander, the son and successor of William, and the repayment of the 15,000 marks demanded, because the stipulations contained in that charter had not been performed²⁰⁴. William the Lion, after a lingering illness, died at Stirling, 6th December, A.D. 1214., in the seventy-second year of his age, and forty-ninth of his reign.²⁰⁵

Alexander II., the only legitimate son of William, succeeded his father in the throne of Scotland, and was crowned at Scone, 20th December, A.D. 1214., being then in the seventeenth year of his age²⁰⁶. This young prince espoused the cause of the English barons against King John, because these barons engaged to surrender to him the northern counties, which had long been the great object of the ambition of the Kings of Scotland. To fulfil his engagements with his allies, he raised an army, marched into Northumberland, and received the homage of the barons of that county, at Felton, 18th October, A.D. 1215.²⁰⁷ King John, being now at the head of a powerful army of mercenaries, directed his march northward, destroying the estates of the confederated barons of Yorkshire; who retired into Scotland, and did homage to Alexander at

A.D. 1216.

Alexander II.

²⁰³ Additamenta M. Parisiensis, p. 99. col. 1.²⁰⁴ Rymer Fœd. t. 1. p. 375. col. 1.²⁰⁵ Chron. Mailros, p. 186.²⁰⁷ Id. p. 189.²⁰⁶ Id. *ibid.*

A.D. 1216. the abbey of Melrofs, 15th January A.D. 1216. ²⁰⁸

But nothing could stop the progress of John and his mercenaries, who, in their march, burnt the towns of Morpeth, Alnwick, Wark, and Bokesborough, and having taken Berwick, perpetrated the most horrid cruelties on the inhabitants. Advancing into Scotland, they burnt the towns of Dunbar and Haddington, and in their return the abbey of Coldingham and the town of Berwick; John declaring, that he was determined to smoke the little Red Fox (so he called Alexander) out of his hole ²⁰⁹. King John being obliged to return into the south, to oppose an expected invasion from France, under Prince Louis, Alexander invaded Cumberland in the month of February; and some of the Scots in his army, by whom the historians of those times mean the people of the highlands, robbed the abbey of Holmcultram; but in their way home with their booty, about two thousand of them were drowned in the river Eden ²¹⁰. Alexander invaded Cumberland a second time, in the month of July, with all his army, except the Scots, i. e. the Highlanders, and, in August, he took the city, but not the castle of Carlisle ²¹¹. From thence he marched with his army quite through England, plundering the estates of those barons who adhered to John; and arriving at Dover, where Louis was besieging the castle, he did

²⁰⁸ Chron. Mailros, p. 190.

²⁰⁹ Id. ibid. M. Paris ad ann. 1215, 1216. p. 191.

²¹⁰ Chron. Mailros, p. 190.

²¹¹ Id. p. 191.

homage

homage to that prince for all his lands in Eng- A.D. 1216.
land, and particularly for the counties of Nor-
thumberland, Cumberland, and Westmorland,
which were granted to him by charter²¹². On
his return home he met with some obstruction in
passing the Trent, from the army of King John;
from which he was relieved by the death of that
prince at Newark, 19th October 1216.

²¹² Rymer Fœd. tom. 2. p. 217.

homage to that prince for all his lands in Eng. A.D. 1154.
land, and particularly for the counties of Nor-
thumberland, Cumberland, and Westmorland.
which were granted to him by charter. On
his return home he met with some obstruction in
passing the Trent from the army of King John;
from which he was relieved by the death of that

prince at Newark, 10th October 1216.

THE HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION OF THE CHURCH IN ENGLAND.

BOOK III.

CHAP. II.

HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION OF THE CHURCH IN ENGLAND.
FROM THE DEATH OF KING JOHN, A.D. 1216,
TO THE DEATH OF KING JOHN, A.D. 1216.

SECTION I.

HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION OF THE CHURCH IN ENGLAND.

THE religious opinions and practices of the
ancient Britons, in the full period of the
work, and state of the Anglo-Saxons in the
beginning of the second, were to be in many
it was thought proper to begin the history of the
light in each of these periods, with a descrip-
tion of its objects—its principles—its progress—its
successes—its triumphs and other circumstances.

THE
HISTORY
OF
GREAT BRITAIN.

BOOK III.

CHAP. II.

History of Religion in Great Britain, from the landing of William Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1066., to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.

SECTION I.

History of Religion, from A.D. 1066. to A.D. 1100.

THE religious opinions and practices of the ancient Britons, in the first period of this work, and those of the Anglo-Saxons in the beginning of the second, were so little known, that it was thought proper to begin the history of religion in each of these periods, with a delineation of—its objects—its principles—its rites—its ministers—its temples, and other circumstances¹.

Cent. XI.

All the people of Britain in this period were Christians.

¹ See b. 1. ch. 2. sect. 1. b. 2. ch. 2. sect. 1.

But

Cent. XI.

But as the Normans, English, and all the other nations of Britain, had embraced the Christian religion long before the beginning of this period, nothing of that kind is necessary in the present chapter; in which it will be sufficient to give a very brief detail of the most important ecclesiastical transactions, in the order of time in which they happened.

Anglo-Saxon prelates deprived, and Normans put in their fees.

Soon after William the Conqueror was seated in the throne of England, he seems to have formed the design of depriving the most eminent of the English clergy of their dignities in the church, in order to bestow them on his countrymen, or on others on whose attachment he could depend. To accomplish this design with the greater ease, he engaged the Pope to send legates into England, for regulating the affairs of that church, which he pretended were in great disorder². The papal legates, John and Peter, two cardinal priests, and Hermanfrede Bishop of Sion, held a great council of the English clergy, in the presence of the King, at Winchester, on the octaves of Easter, A.D. 1070.; in which Stigand Archbishop of Canterbury, Agilmare Bishop of Norwich, and several English abbots, were deposed, on various pretences³. In another council, convened at Windsor on Whitsunday that same year, Agilric Bishop of Chi-

² Lanfranci Opera, p. 7. Orderic. Vital. p. 5, 6.

³ Wilkins Concilia, t. I. p. 322. W. Malm. de Gestis Pontific. p. 117.

chester,

Cent. XI.

}

chester, and some more English abbots, were deposed: with which severities the Bishops of Lincoln and Durham were so much alarmed, that they left their sees, and retired into Scotland⁴. By these depositions and resignations, as well as by the death of several English prelates, many of the chief dignities of the church were now vacant, which were all filled with the King's foreign favourites and countrymen. Lanfranc, abbot of Caen, and Thomas, canon of Bayeux, were made Archbishops of Canterbury and York, while Walkelin, Walkeline, Herefact, Stigand, Peter, Hermand, and Remigius, all Normans, were placed in the sees of Winchester, Durham, Norwich, Chichester, Lichfield, Salisbury, and Lincoln.⁵

Dispute
about the
primacy.

These fortunate foreigners, exalted by the fall, and enriched by the spoils of the unhappy English, did not long continue in a state of harmony amongst themselves, but a most violent quarrel broke out between the two Archbishops about the primacy. When Thomas, elect of York, came to Canterbury to be consecrated, Lanfranc, on the day appointed for that ceremony, demanded of him an oath and written profession of canonical obedience to himself and successors, as primates of all England; which the other absolutely refusing, departed in great anger, without being consecrated. But Lanfranc, having con-

⁴ Simeon Dunelm. col. 202. Wilkin. Concil. t. 1. p. 323.

⁵ Inett's Church History, vol. 2. p. 14, 15.

Cent. XI. } vinced the King and his council of the justice of his claim, Thomas was commanded to return, and take the oath, and make a profession of obedience to Lanfranc, without mentioning his successors; and with this command he thought proper to comply.⁶

A.D. 1071.
That dispute determined in favour of Canterbury.

This year the two new Archbishops of England made a journey to Rome to receive their palls; and when they were there, Thomas complained to the Pope of the submission he had been constrained by royal authority to make at his consecration; affirming, that the sees of York and Canterbury were of equal dignity. On the other hand, Lanfranc produced various evidences of the superiority of his see. But the holy father, unwilling to offend either of the prelates, or disoblige the King of England, declined to judge in that matter, and declared, that it ought to be determined by an English synod⁷. Accordingly two great councils were held, one at Easter, and the other at Whitsuntide, A. D. 1072., in which this important question of the primacy was debated with great warmth, in the presence of the King, Queen, and all the court; and at length determined in favour of Canterbury, to the great mortification of the clerical pride of the one prelate, and exultation of the other.⁸

⁶ W. Malmf. p. 117.

⁷ Id. *ibid*.

⁸ W. Malmf. p. 117. Lanfranc. Opera, p. 300. Wilkin. Concil. i. p. 327.

After

After this dispute was determined, Lanfranc presided in several councils of the clergy of both provinces, in which many ecclesiastical canons were made, though few of them are entitled to the attention of posterity. By one of these councils very severe penances were prescribed to those who had killed or wounded any person in the battle of Hastings, commonly called *the great battle*, whether they had fought for or against the Duke of Normandy. The archers, who could not know how many men they had killed or wounded, were to do penance for three Lents. All these penances might be redeemed by money, or by building and endowing churches; to promote which was probably the intention of the council in these tyrannical impositions*. By the eighth canon of a council held at London, A.D. 1075., it is decreed, "That the bones of
 " dead animals shall not be hung up, to drive
 " away the pestilence from cattle; and that for-
 " cery, sooth-sayings, divinations, and such
 " works of the devil, shall not be practised."†
 The celibacy of the clergy had been enjoined by a thousand canons, but as yet without a full effect. So difficult is it for the laws of men to overcome the laws of nature! By one of the canons of an English council, held at Winchester, A.D. 1076., the secular clergy who had wives, are allowed to keep them; which is a sufficient

Cent. XI.

1075, &c.

Several
councils
held.

* Johnson's Ecclesiastical Canons, vol. 2. A.D. 1072.

† Id. ibid. A.D. 1076. Spelman's Concil. 1. 2. p. 7.

Cent. XI.

Extrava-
gant claims
of Pope
Gregory
VII. re-
jected.

proof that they formed a very powerful party : but those who had not wives, are forbidden to marry ; and bishops are prohibited for the future to ordain any man who had a wife.¹¹

Pope Alexander II. having died April 20th, A.D. 1073., he was immediately succeeded by the famous Hildebrand, Archdeacon of Rome, who assumed the name of Gregory VII., and became the most turbulent and aspiring pontiff that had ever filled St. Peter's chair. So boundless was the ambition of this haughty priest, that he claimed the supreme dominion of the whole world, and attempted to bring all emperors, kings, and princes, under subjection to his authority¹². In prosecution of those insolent pretensions, he dispatched his legate Hubert into England, to assert his title to that kingdom, and demand an oath of fealty from King William, together with the immediate payment of all the arrears of Peter-pence, which he affected to call a tribute. But William (though he had always professed great veneration for the bishops of Rome, by whom he had been countenanced in his attempt on England) rejected the demand of homage with becoming indignation, and only promised to send Peter-pence as a free gift, in imitation of his predecessors¹³. Still further to mortify the pride and resist the pretensions of the

¹¹ Spelman Concil. l. 2. p. 13.

¹² Du Pin. Eccles. Hist. cent. II, c. 5. p. 33., &c.

¹³ Epist. Wilhelm. Opera Lanfranc. p. 304.

Pope, he would not permit Lanfranc to leave the kingdom, though that pontiff had sent him several letters commanding him to come to Rome¹⁴. These affronts wrought up the rage of Gregory to so high a pitch, that in a letter to his legate, Hubert, A. D. 1078., he gave William the most opprobrious names, and threatened to make him feel the resentment of St. Peter¹⁵. But St. Peter was either not so vindictive as his successor Gregory, or King William was without the reach of his resentment.

A considerable change was introduced into the creed of the church of England, under the primacy, and chiefly by the means of Archbishop Lanfranc. The present doctrine of the church of Rome, concerning the corporal presence of Christ in the sacrament, called *transubstantiation*, was little known, and less regarded, in this island before the Norman conquest¹⁶. But Lanfranc was one of the most zealous champions for that doctrine of the age in which he flourished, and disputed, wrote, and preached in its defence, both before and after his elevation to the see of Canterbury¹⁷. This elevation, however, it is highly probable, gave additional weight to his arguments, and enabled him to make many profelytes.

Cent. XI.

Change in the creed of the church of England.

¹⁴ Greg. Epist. l. 9. Ep. 20. Concil. l. 10. col. 291.

¹⁵ Id. ibid.

¹⁶ See vol. 3. p. 286.

¹⁷ Du Pin Eccles. Hist. cent. 11. p. 3.

Cent. XI.

Changes in
the polity
of the
church of
England.

William the Conqueror exercised his supremacy over the church of England with a high hand, and made some important changes both in the state of its revenues and of its polity. Finding the English clergy and monasteries possessed of far too great a proportion of the riches of the kingdom, he stripped them of many of their estates by various means, and subjected those they still retained to military services and other feudal prestations¹⁸: a reasonable regulation, that those who enjoyed so large a share of the wealth, should contribute in the same proportion with others to the defence and support, of the state. So strict an eye did he keep over the clergy in the exercise of discipline, and government of the church, that he did not allow any of them — to go out of the kingdom without his leave, — to acknowledge any pope without his direction, — to publish any letters from Rome till he had seen and approved them, — to hold any councils, or to make any canons, without his consent, — or pronounce a sentence of excommunication on any of his nobles without his permission¹⁹. But the most considerable change that this prince made in the constitution of the church of England, was towards the conclusion of his reign, when he separated the ecclesiastical from the civil courts, which in the Anglo-Saxon

¹⁸ M. Paris, p. 4. *Historia Ingulphi*, p. 70, 71.

¹⁹ Eadmer. *Hist.* p. 6. *Seldeni Specilegium*, p. 164.

times had been united²⁰: a change that was attended with very important consequences both to church and state.

Cent. XI.

Lanfranc Archbishop of Canterbury died May 28th, A.D. 1089., having survived his royal friend and patron, William the Conqueror, about one year and eight months²¹. This prelate is celebrated by our ancient historians for his wisdom, learning, munificence, and other virtues. His charity in particular is said to have been so great, that he bestowed in that way no less than five hundred pounds a year²²; a prodigious sum in those times! equal in weight to one thousand five hundred pounds of our money, and in value to at least seven thousand five hundred pounds. This is a sufficient proof of the great revenues of the see of Canterbury in that period, as well as of the great generosity of this prelate.

1089.

Death and
character
of Arch-
bishop
Lanfranc.

After the death of Lanfranc, William Rufus, then King of England, was in no haste to give him a successor, but kept all the possessions of the archbishopric in his own hands, almost five years²³. In this interval the bishops and clergy tried various methods to prevail upon the King to appoint a primate, but in vain. At one time, when they presented a petition, that he would give them leave to send a form of prayer to be used in all the churches of England, — “ That

1093.

After a
long vacan-
cy Anselm
is made
Archbishop
of Canter-
bury.

²⁰ Seldeni Specilegium, p. 167.²¹ J. Brompt. col. 936.²² Gervas, Act. Pontific. col. 1655. W. Malmf. p. 118.²³ Eadmer, Hist. p. 14.

Cent. XI.

“ God would move the heart of the King to
 “ chuse an archbishop ;” he returned this care-
 less answer, — “ You may pray as you please ; I
 “ will do as I please ²⁴.” At length, however,
 being seized with a severe sickness, which
 threatened his life, he was prevailed upon to fill
 up the vacant sees of Lincoln and Canterbury,
 by nominating Robert Bloet, his chancellor, to
 the first, and Anselm, abbot of Beck in Nor-
 mandy (who was then at court), to the last.
 Anselm at first discovered great reluctance to
 accept of this high dignity, dreading the fierce
 rapacious temper of the King, to which he was
 no stranger. “ The plough (said he) of the
 “ church of England should be drawn by two
 “ oxen, of equal strength, the king and the
 “ archbishop of Canterbury ; but if you yoke
 “ me, who am a weak old sheep, with this king,
 “ who is a mad young bull, the plough will not
 “ go straight ²⁵.” But as men’s refusals of places
 of power and wealth are seldom very obstinate,
 those of Anselm were overcome at last, and he
 condescended to mount the archiepiscopal throne,
 December 4th, A.D. 1093., having done homage
 to the King for the temporalities, and received
 investiture by the pastoral staff and ring, Septem-
 ber 25th. ²⁶

1095.

Breach be-
tween the

Anselm’s apprehensions of having quarrels with
 the King were not ill founded ; but these quar-

²⁴ W. Malmf. p. 124. col. 1.²⁵ Id. ibid.²⁶ Id. p. 125. col. 1. Eadmer, p. 16, 17, 18.

rels were owing to his own obstinate and presumptuous bigotry. In a few weeks after his consecration, he waited on the King at Hastings; but paid his court so ill,—by declining to make him such a present as was expected,—by pressing him too earnestly to call a council of the clergy, and to fill up the vacant abbeys,—and by reproving him and his courtiers too freely for their long hair, their gaudy dress, and effeminate manners, that William could not refrain from expressing his dissatisfaction in very strong terms²⁷. At their next meeting, after the King's return from Normandy, A.D. 1094., the breach between them became still wider. The Christian world had long been divided between the two contending Popes, Urban and Clement; but the kingdom of England had not as yet acknowledged either the one or the other. Anselm had submitted to Urban before his promotion to the primacy, and now petitioned the King for leave to go to Rome and receive his pall from that pontiff. William was enraged beyond measure at this petition, which he declared was directly contrary to that obedience which the archbishop had sworn in his oath of fealty, as well as to the laws of England. At length, after much angry altercation, this dispute was referred to a great council of the nobility and prelates, which met at Rockingham, March 11th, A.D. 1095.²⁸

Cent. XI.
King and
the pri-
mate.

²⁷ Eadmer, p. 23, 24. Anglia Sacra, l. i. p. 164.

²⁸ Eadmer, p. 26.

Cent. XI. To this council, on the first day of their meeting, Anselm made a long harangue, in which, amongst other things, the good prelate told them, "That he would much rather have been burnt alive than have been made an archbishop;" and concluded with proposing this question as the subject of their deliberation, — "Whether his going to Rome to receive his pall from Pope Urban, was contrary to his oath of fealty, and the laws of England?" The council then adjourned, because it was Sunday; and having met again on Monday, after long deliberation, sent this answer to the Archbishop by the bishops, "that unless he yielded obedience to the King, and retracted his submission to Pope Urban, they would not acknowledge or obey him as their primate." On hearing this sentence, the Archbishop lifted up his eyes and hands to heaven, and with great solemnity appealed to St. Peter, whose vicar he declared he was determined to obey, rather than the King; and, upon the bishops declining to report his words, he went boldly into the council, and pronounced them before the King and his nobility. The debates were then renewed with greater warmth than ever, and lasted all day; but towards evening the former sentence was confirmed and intimated to the primate; who begged to be allowed till next morning to deliberate upon his answer. The King and council were now in hopes that the Archbishop would resign his see, which was what they most ardently desired,

as the only means of restoring the peace of the kingdom, which had been much disturbed by this dispute. But if Anselm had an aversion to accept of the archbishopric, he discovered a much greater aversion to resign it. For next morning he both adhered to his former answer, and declared his resolution never to resign his see. When things were brought to this extremity, some of the nobility, who respected the sacerdotal character, and dreaded that the passionate spirit of William would prompt him to some act of violence, proposed a truce till the octaves of Easter; which was accepted by both parties.²⁹

In this interval, William, despairing to overcome the obstinacy of the Archbishop by violence, had recourse to artifice, and privately sent two of his chaplains to Rome, to make an offer to Urban, to acknowledge him as Pope if he would consent to the deposition of Anselm, and send a pall to the King, to be bestowed on whom he pleased. Urban, transported with joy at the accession of so powerful a prince, and so great a kingdom to his party, promised every thing, and sent Walter, Bishop of Alba, his legate, into England with a pall. The legate passed through Canterbury, without seeing the Archbishop; and arriving at court, prevailed upon the King to issue a proclamation, commanding all his subjects to acknowledge Urban II. as lawful Pope.³⁰ But when the King, having performed all his

The King
deceived
by the
Pope.

²⁹ Eadmer, p. 31.

³⁰ W. Malm. de Gest. Pontific. p. 125.

promises,

Cent. XI.

promises, began to speak of proceeding to the deposition of the Archbishop, and demanded the pall; that he might give it to the prelate who should be chosen in his room, the legate changed his tone, and plainly declared that the Pope would not consent to the deposition of so great a saint, and so dutiful a son of the church of Rome; and that he had received orders to deliver the pall to Anselm; which he accordingly performed with great pomp in the cathedral of Canterbury³¹. It is easy to imagine how much a prince of William's haughty and passionate temper was enraged at this perfidious conduct of the court of Rome; but as he was engaged in an expedition into Normandy, he had not leisure to give vent to his resentment.

1097.

Anselm
leaves
England.

Soon after the King's return from Normandy, the quarrel between him and the Archbishop was revived, by that prelate's frequent and importunate applications for the royal permission to visit Rome, for the good of his soul, and the benefit of the church. At length the King (wearied out with these incessant solicitations, and having in vain tried every method to dissuade the primate from persisting in his design), at the meeting of the great council in October A.D. 1097., commanded him to leave the kingdom in eleven days, without carrying any of his effects with him; and declared, at the same time, that he

³¹ W. Malmf. de Gest. Pontific. p. 126. col. 1.

should

should never be permitted to return ³². Anselm Cent. XI. had no sooner extorted this passionate permission to depart the kingdom, than he hastened to Canterbury; where, having divested himself of his archiepiscopal robes, and assumed the garb of a pilgrim, he set out on his journey. After he had waited for a favourable wind about fifteen days at Dover, (where his baggage was strictly searched by the King's officers,) he sailed for Whitfande, and proceeded from thence to Lyons before he made any considerable stop ³³. Here he wrote a letter to the Pope, giving an account of his grievances in England, and of his departure from it, and desiring the assistance and direction of His Holiness; hinting, that since he had little prospect of doing any good in a country where justice and religion were so much despised by persons of all ranks, it would be right to allow him to resign his see ³⁴. The King of England had, in the mean time, seized all the estates and revenues of Canterbury into his own hands, and declared all the acts of Anselm to be null and void. ³⁵

As soon as the Archbishop received an answer to his letter, with an invitation from the Pope to come to Rome, he set forward on his journey, on the Tuesday before Palm-Sunday, A.D. 1098., attended only by two faithful friends, Baldwin his steward, and Eadmer the historian, his

1098.
Anselm's
reception
at Rome,
and his
transac-
tions there.

³² Eadmer, p. 37, 38, 39, 40. Diceto apud X Script. col. 495.

³³ Id. ibid.

³⁴ Id. p. 43.

³⁵ Id. p. 41.

secretary.

Cent.XI. secretary. They were obliged to travel in disguise, and under borrowed names, to avoid the ambuscades that were laid by Clement the antipope, and by several companies of banditti; who, having heard that the Archbishop of Canterbury was on his way to Rome with great treasures, were on the watch to intercept him³⁶. At length, after going through much fatigue, and no little danger, they arrived at Rome; and met with the kindest reception from the Pope, who lodged them in his own palace. Our monkish historians give the most pompous accounts of the extraordinary honours that were paid to Anselm by the Pope, the Duke of Apulia, the nobility, clergy, and people of Rome, on this occasion. His Holiness made a long speech to him before his whole court, in which he loaded him with praises, called him the Pope of another world, and commanded all the English who should come to Rome to kiss his toe³⁷. He further promised to support him with all his power in his disputes with the King of England; and wrote a letter to that prince, commanding him to restore all that he had taken from the Archbishop³⁸. Such was the high tone assumed by the popes of those times in their letters to the greatest kings. Anselm assisted at the council held by the Pope at Bari, in the third week after Easter,

³⁶ Eadmer, p. 44.

³⁷ J. Sarisburiens. Vita Anselmi, in Anglia Sacra, t. 2. p. 166.
W. Malmf. p. 127.

³⁸ Eadmer, p. 45.

and

and acquired great honour by a speech he made in it, against the heresy of the Greek church about the procession of the Holy Ghost. The holy father, in particular, (who had been much puzzled in the course of the debate,) was so much charmed with his speech, that at the conclusion of it he cried out, "Blessed be thy heart
 " and thy senses, O Anselm! blessed be thy
 " mouth, and the speeches of thy mouth³⁹."

The Archbishop was present in another papal council held at Rome towards the end of this year, in which it was declared, that the King of England deserved excommunication for his treatment of Anselm; but at the request of that prelate, the execution of that sentence was postponed⁴⁰. At this council the famous canon against lay-investitures was confirmed, denouncing excommunication against all lay-men who presumed to grant investitures of any ecclesiastical benefices, and against all clergymen who accepted of such investitures, or did homage to temporal princes⁴¹: a canon that Anselm remembered too well for his own peace, and for the peace of England. The reason assigned for this canon by the Pope, as related by one who was present in the council, and heard his speech, is horrid and impious in the highest degree. "It is execrable," said His Holiness, "to see those hands which create
 " God, the creator of all things (a power never

³⁹ Eadmer, p. 49.⁴⁰ Id. p. 50.⁴¹ Anglia Sacra, p. 167. Eadmer, p. 53.

" granted

Cent. XI.

“ granted to angels), and offer him in sacrifice
 “ to the Father for the redemption of the whole
 “ world, put between the hands of a prince,
 “ stained with blood, and polluted day and
 “ night with obscene contacts. To which all the
 “ fathers of the council cried, Amen! Amen!
 “ At these transactions (says Eadmerus) I was
 “ present, and all these things I saw and
 “ heard.” ⁴²

King's an-
 swer to a
 letter from
 the Pope.

The messenger who had been sent into Eng-
 land with a letter from the Pope to the King, in
 favour of Anselm, returned about the end of this
 year, with very unwelcome news. He told His
 Holiness that it was with much difficulty the
 King was persuaded to receive and read his letter;
 and that when he was informed that the bearer of
 it was a servant of Anselm, he swore by the image
 of Christ at Lucca (his usual oath), that if he
 did not leave England immediately, he would
 pull out his eyes; which made him retire, with-
 out waiting for an answer. Soon after, one
 William arrived, with the following short and
 peremptory answer to the Pope's letter: “ I am
 “ much surprised how it came into your head to
 “ intercede for the restoration of Anselm. Before
 “ he left my kingdom, I warned him that I
 “ would seize all the revenues of his see as soon
 “ as he departed. I have done what I threatened,
 “ and what I had a right to do; and you are in
 “ the wrong to blame me.” ⁴³ Anselm, on seeing

⁴² Eadmer, p. 53.

⁴³ Id. p. 51.

this

this laconic epistle, immediately despaired of his restoration during the reign of William, and retired to Lyons; where he lived in exile, till after the death of that prince, which happened August 2d, A. D. 1100.⁴⁴ Cent. XI.

THE ecclesiastical history of Scotland is very imperfect in this period. Malcolm Canmore, who was King of Scotland at the conquest, and for twenty-seven years after, was a great benefactor to the church. By the advice and at the instigation of his most excellent Queen, St. Margaret, he built the abbey-churches of Durham and Dunfermline, and erected the bishoprics of Murray and Caithness⁴⁵. Malcolm, it is also said, divided his dominions into six dioceses, and assigned one of these to each of his six bishops; which were those of St. Andrew's, Glasgow, Withorn, Murthlack, Murray, and Caithness⁴⁶. Our Scotch historians are probably mistaken when they affirm, that Turgot Prior of Durham was advanced to the see of St. Andrew's, in the reign of King Malcolm; and that he was even succeeded by Godericus before the end of that reign. For the testimony of Simeon of Durham, who was his countryman and his contemporary, is more worthy of credit, when he relates that Turgot was recommended to Alexander King of Scotland by Henry I. and elected

⁴⁴ Eadmer, p. 54.⁴⁵ Buchan. Hist. l. 7. p. 117.⁴⁶ Spottiswoode's Hist. p. 29.

Cent. XI.

Bishop of St. Andrew's in the eighth year of Ralph Bishop of Durham, viz. A.D. 1107.⁴⁷ It appears also from the testimony of an ancient English historian, that Feredoch was Bishop of St. Andrew's towards the end of King Malcolm's reign, and probably continued in that station to the reign of King Alexander⁴⁸. Though it is highly probable that several national councils were held in Scotland in this period, no vestiges of any of them are now remaining.

SECTION II.

History of Religion in Britain, from the accession of Henry I. A.D. 1100. to the accession of Henry II. A.D. 1154.

Cent. XII.

A.D. 1100.

Anselm recalled by Henry I.

HENRY I. the youngest son of William the Conqueror, having supplanted his elder brother Robert in the throne of England, laboured with great earnestness to gain the favour of all who could either support or disturb him in the possession of the prize he had obtained, and amongst others, of the Pope and court of Rome. With this view he immediately recalled the great favourite and champion of that court, Anselm Archbishop of Canterbury, from his exile; who

⁴⁷ Simeon Dunelm. apud X Script. col. 207. Anglia Sacra. l. i. p. 707.

⁴⁸ Th. Stubbs. apud X Script. col. 1709.

landed at Dover, September 23d, A. D. 1100.¹ Cent. XII.
A few days after, he was received at Salisbury by the King, with every possible mark of affection and respect; and that prince even condescended to make an apology to him for being crowned by another prelate before his arrival.²

But this cordiality between the King and the primate was not of long continuance. For as soon as Anselm was desired to do homage to the King for the temporalities of his see, he returned a flat refusal, and produced the canon of the late council of Rome in vindication of his conduct; declaring, that if the King insisted on his pretensions to the homage of the clergy, he could keep no communion with him, and would immediately leave the kingdom³. This threw Henry into great perplexity. On the one hand he was very unwilling to resign so bright a jewel of his crown, as the right of bestowing ecclesiastical benefices, and of receiving the homage of his prelates; and, on the other hand, he dreaded the departure of the primate, who would join the party of his brother Robert, now returned to Normandy, and preparing to assert his right to the throne of England. In this distress the King proposed, or rather begged, a truce, till both parties could send ambassadors to the Pope, to know his final determination; to which Anselm, at the earnest intreaty of the nobility, at last agreed.⁴

Breach between the King and Anselm.

¹ Eadmer, p. 56.² Id. *ibid.*³ Id. *ibid.*⁴ Id. *ibid.*

Cent. XII.

Anselm
performs
some im-
portant
services to
the King.

In the time of this truce, Anselm performed several important services for King Henry. He presided in a council of the English clergy, in which, after a very solemn investigation, it was declared, that the Princess Matilda (daughter of Malcolm Canmore King of Scotland), who had been educated in a nunnery, and had sometimes worn a veil, was at liberty to marry: and he soon after celebrated the King's marriage with that Princess, and placed the crown on her head⁵. When the kingdom was invaded by Robert Duke of Normandy, in July A.D. 1101., Anselm contributed more than any man, by his example, his exhortations, and his authority, to keep the nobility steady in their attachment to King Henry, and thereby preserved him upon the throne⁶. To engage the primate to perform these service, we are assured by Eadmerus, his friend and secretary, that the King solemnly promised to govern his kingdom by his advice, and submit in all things to the will of the Pope.⁷

1101.

Extra-
vagant letter
of the Pope
about in-
vestitures.

If the King made such promises in the time of danger, which is not improbable, he did not think fit to keep them when that danger was at an end. Soon after the pacification with his brother Robert, which secured him in the possession of the crown of England, his messengers arrived from Rome with letters from the Pope, in which his holiness asserted, in the strongest terms,

⁵ Eadmer, p. 57, 58.

⁶ See chap. I. p. 58.

⁷ Eadmer, p. 59. Anglia Sacra, t. 2. p. 172.

—That

— That the church, and all its revenues, belonged entirely to St. Peter, and his successors; and that emperors, kings, and princes, had no right to give the investiture of benefices to the clergy, or to demand homage from them. This he endeavoured to prove by several texts of scripture, most grossly misapplied, and by other arguments, which are either blasphemy or nonsense⁸. Amongst other things of the like kind, “ — How abominable is it (said he) for a son “ to beget his father, and a man to create his “ God? and are not priests your fathers and “ your Gods?”⁹ Cent. XII.

Henry seems rather to have been irritated than convinced by this curious piece of papal reasoning. For, the first time the primate appeared at court, he required him in a peremptory tone to do homage to him for the revenues of his see, and to consecrate certain bishops and abbots, according to ancient custom, or depart the kingdom; adding, — “ I will suffer no subject to live “ in my dominions who refuses to do me ho- “ mage¹⁰.” The Archbishop boldly answered, — “ I am prohibited, by the canons of the council “ of Rome, to do what you require. — I will not “ depart the kingdom, but stay in my province, “ and perform my duty; and let me see who “ dares to do me any injury:” and immediately left the court, and returned to Canterbury. Quarrel between the King and Anselm.

⁸ Eadmer, p. 60, 61.⁹ Id. p. 61.¹⁰ Id. *ibid*.¹¹ Id. p. 62. W. Malmf. p. 128.

Cent. XII.

Council
of Win-
chester.
Ambas-
sadors sent
to Rome.

Not long after, the King convened a great council at Winchester, to which he summoned the primate; who attended. In this council it was at length agreed to send ambassadors to Rome, to declare to the Pope, in the name of the King and nobility of England,—"That if he persisted to deny the King's right to investitures and homage, they would drive Anselm out of the kingdom, withdraw their subjection to the see of Rome, and withhold their usual payments¹²." Gerard Archbishop of York, Herbert Bishop of Norwich, and Robert Bishop of Chester, persons of eminent abilities as well as rank, were chosen ambassadors to carry this unwelcome message, and manage this difficult negotiation. Anselm, by permission, sent also two of his friends, Baldwin and Alexander, to take care of his concerns.¹³

1102.

Duplicity
of the Pope.
Other am-
bassadors
sent to
Rome.

When these ambassadors arrived at Rome, the holy father was thrown into no small perplexity. On the one hand, he was unwilling to provoke the King and people of England too far; and, on the other, he was still more unwilling to relinquish his own pretensions, or abandon so good a friend as Anselm. But he delivered himself from this difficulty by his cunning, at the expence of his veracity. To the King's ambassadors he made the most solemn promises in private, that he would wink at their master's giving investitures and receiving ho-

¹² Eadmer, p. 62.

¹³ Id. *ibid*.

mage;

mage; and that though he might threaten, he would never inflict any censures upon him on that account; but that he could not in prudence make such promises in public, or in writing, lest other princes should claim the same indulgence. To the primate's messengers he spoke a very different language; and gave them a letter to their master, exhorting him to adhere steadily to the canons against investiture and homage, and promising to support him with all his power. When the ambassadors of both parties returned to England, a great council was called at London, A.D. 1102., to receive their report. But how great was the surprise of the King and council, when the ambassadors gave contradictory reports? the three prelates affirming in the strongest terms, that the Pope had promised to dispense with the execution of the canons against lay-investitures and homage; and the two monks affirming the direct contrary, and producing his holiness's letters in confirmation of their testimony. This occasioned very violent debates, and involved the matter in much uncertainty; the King, the bishops, and nobility, giving most credit to the report of the prelates, and Anselm and his friends to that of his messengers; while both parties suspected the duplicity of the Pope.¹⁴ In the end, the primate proposed to send other ambassadors to Rome to discover the real sentiments of the Pope, and in the mean time pro-

¹⁴ Eadmer, p. 63—66.

Cent. XII.

misfed to keep communion with thofe prelates who had received investiture from the King by the pastoral staff and ring; and his propofal was accepted.¹⁵

Council at
Westmin-
fter.

While the controverfy about investitures was at a ftand, Anfelm, with the King's confent, held a great council of the clergy at Weftminfter; in which feveral abbots were depofed for fimony, and many canons were made. By one of thefe canons the married clergy were commanded to put away their wives; which was proceeding a ftap farther than Lanfranc had done. By another canon it is decreed, that the fons of priefts fhould not be heirs to their fathers' churches. By a third, marriage is prohibited to thofe who are within the feventh degree of kindred:—a vexatious law, that brought great power and wealth to the church, and great inconveniences on the ftate. The other canons of this council have nothing in them very remarkable, except the twenty-fixth, which forbids the worfhip of fountains; which feems to have been a reliet of Druidical fuperftition.¹⁶

1103.
Anfelm
goes to
Rome at
the King's
defire.

The King had an interview with the Arch-bifhop at Canterbury about Midlent, A. D. 1103., in which he laboured, both by threats and promifes, to bring him to do homage for the temporalities of his fee. But all in vain. That prelate replied, that his meffengers were now

¹⁵ Eadmer, p. 63—66.

¹⁶ Id. p. 68. Spelman Concil. t. 2. p. 23.

returned from Rome, and had brought letters from the Pope, which he had not yet opened, but declared that he was willing to be governed entirely by their contents. The King, knowing, or suspecting, what these were, answered in a violent passion,—“What have I to do with the Pope, or his letters? The prerogatives of my predecessors belong to me; and whoever attempts to deprive me of them, shall feel the weight of my indignation.” To which the primate calmly replied,—“I am determined to die, rather than violate the canons of the church without the commands of the Pope.” Henry, observing that the firmness of the Archbishop was not to be shaken by threatenings, changed his tone, and intreated that prelate to go to Rome, and endeavour to procure what others had not been able to obtain, “that I may be allowed to enjoy the prerogatives of my predecessors.” Anselm desired that this might be delayed till Easter, that the sentiments of the bishops and nobility might then be taken. Accordingly, when the great council met, as usual, at that festival, all the members joined with the King, and intreated the Archbishop to undertake that journey: to which he consented, and set out without delay, April 29th, A. D. 1103.¹⁹

When Anselm arrived at the abbey of Becc in Normandy, where he had formerly been abbot,

Cent. XII.

Contents of the Pope's letters to Anselm.

¹⁷ Eadmer, p. 70.¹⁸ Id. *ibid.*¹⁹ Id. *ibid.*

he

Cent. XII.

he opened the Pope's letters (which, for several prudential reasons, he had not done before), and found that they contained—the highest expressions of approbation of his own conduct,—the most solemn asseverations, that the report of the three English prelates who had lately been at Rome, was entirely false; for which he excommunicated them as impudent notorious liars. The Pope further declared in these letters, that he was fully determined to see the canons against lay-investitures strictly executed. “For if we
 “allow (says he) kings and emperors to give a
 “bishop the staff, the sign of his pastoral office,
 “and the ring, the sign of his faith, the church,
 “and even Christianity itself, will be imme-
 “diately destroyed.” Though, after reading these letters, Anselm could have no hopes of success in his embassy, which it is probable he did not desire, he set out from Becc, in August, and soon after arrived at Rome.

The King
sends an
agent to
Rome.

When the King desired Anselm to undertake this journey, he was far from expecting that he would be a zealous advocate in his cause; and therefore he did not depend upon him, but sent William Warelwast, an able, active, and faithful servant, to the court of Rome, well furnished with certain arguments, that were likely to be most convincing in that most corrupt and venal court. William travelled with so much expedition, that he reached the end of his journey

²⁰ Eadmer, p. 71.

some weeks before the Archbishop; and was so active and liberal, that he gained many friends; and began to entertain great hopes of success in his negotiation.

Cent. XII.

A few days after the arrival of Anselm, the Pope called a consistory to examine this cause; before which William Warelwaſt made a long harangue, in defence of the right of the King of England to grant investiture to the prelates of his kingdom, and to receive homage from them: nor did he neglect to put the assembly in mind of the great munificence of the kings of England to the church of Rome; and to insinuate that if a favourable sentence was not given in this cause, that munificence would be withdrawn. Anselm remained entirely silent. When the matter came to be debated, several members, who had been gained, spoke in favour of the King of England's claim, and represented the danger of provoking so great a prince. To enforce their arguments, Warelwaſt declared, "That he knew his master was resolved to lose his kingdom, rather than relinquish his right to grant investitures." This bold declaration had an ill effect, by rousing the pride and passion of the sovereign pontiff; who said,—"And I swear before God, that Pope Pascal will rather lose his life than suffer him to enjoy his pretended right." This positive declaration put an end to all debate; and a decree was pro-

Decree of the consistory of Rome against the King's right of granting investitures.

" Eadmer, p. 72, 73.

Cent. XI.

nounced against the King's right to grant investitures, and excommunicating all prelates who had received, or should receive them from his hand, until they made satisfaction, and were absolved by their primate²². Still further to please the Archbishop, the Pope granted him a bull, confirming the primacy of England to him and his successors in the see of Canterbury; and then dismissed him with every mark of affection and esteem.

Soothing
letter from
the Pope to
the King.

The King's agent remained at Rome a few days after the departure of Anselm, in hopes of gaining some advantage in his absence: but all he could obtain was a soothing letter from the Pope to Henry, in which he congratulated him on his successes in Normandy, and on the birth of his son; and assured him, that it was out of pure love to his person that he had taken the dangerous right of investitures from him, which would certainly have brought the vengeance of heaven upon his head. He further promised, that if he would be a very dutiful son of the church, and very kind and obedient to the Archbishop, he would grant him, and his glorious Queen, a full pardon of all their sins, and bestow many graces on the young Prince their son.²³

Anselm
remains
abroad.

With this curious letter Warelwaft left Rome, and visited the Archbishop of Canterbury at Lyons; to whom he intimated in the King's

²² Eadmer, p. 72, 73.

²³ Id. p. 74, 75.

name,

name,—“ That if he would behave to him as
 “ former archbishops of Canterbury had be- Cent. XII.
 “ haved to his predecessors, he might return to
 “ England.” In answer to this intimation,
 Anselm sent messengers of his own, with a very
 blunt letter to the King; in which he told him
 plainly, that he would not do homage to him as
 former archbishops had done to his predecessors;
 and that he would not keep communion with any
 of those prelates who had received the pastoral
 staff and ring from his hands; nor would he
 come into England on any other terms; protest-
 ing, that all the souls that should be lost by his
 absence, should be laid to the King’s charge²⁴.
 As soon as the King received this letter, he
 seized all the revenues of the see of Canterbury;
 and Anselm continued at Lyons a year and four
 months in a state of exile.

Though Anselm was very hospitably enter-
 tained at Lyons by Hugh Archbishop of that
 city, he neglected nothing that might contribute
 to his restoration to his own see, on his own
 terms. Having prevailed with the Pope to issue
 a sentence of excommunication against the Earl
 of Mellent, King Henry’s great favourite, and
 to promise to issue a like sentence against the
 King himself in a little time, he left Lyons in
 May A. D. 1105., and paid a visit to Adela
 Countess of Blois, the King’s sister, who was a
 princess of great piety, and one of his greatest

1105.
 Meeting
 between
 the King
 and An-
 selm.

²⁴ Eadmer, p. 76.

Cent. XII. admirers. In the course of their conversation, the Countess having asked him, what was his principal design in coming into those parts? he frankly told her, that it was to publish a sentence of excommunication (which he daily expected from Rome) against her brother the King of England. The devout Adela was so grieved at her brother's damnation (as Eadmer expresses it), that she never rested till she had negotiated a meeting between him and the primate, in order to an accommodation.²⁵

Ambassadors sent by both to Rome.

When all preliminaries were settled, the Countess conducted Anselm to the castle of L'Aigle in Normandy, and introduced him to the King, July 22d, A.D. 1105.; who received him with the strongest expressions of esteem and friendship. After a little conversation, Henry restored to the Archbishop the revenues of his see, and also gave him leave to return to England, on this single condition,—That he did not refuse to keep communion with those prelates who had received royal investitures. But with this condition Anselm declared he could not comply, until he had received directions from the Pope, to whom he was determined in all things to yield obedience. It was therefore agreed, that both the King and the primate should send ambassadors to Rome, to receive the directions of the sovereign pontiff, on all subjects in dispute between them; and that all things should remain quiet till these am-

²⁵ Eadmer, p. 79, 80.

bassadors

ambassadors returned²⁶. After this interview the Archbishop retired to the abbey of Becc, and Henry embarked for England.

Cent. XII.

The King having thus warded off the blow of excommunication, which he really dreaded, was in no haste in sending his ambassador to Rome; which greatly offended Anselm, and his friends in England. One of these wrote him a letter at this time, in which he acquainted him, that religion was quite ruined by his absence, that sodomy and wearing long hair (which that good man seems to have regarded as equal crimes) were become very common, and nobody had the courage to reprove them²⁷. At length, about Christmas A. D. 1105., the King sent over his former ambassador William Warelwast, now Bishop-elect of Exeter; who proceeded on his journey to Rome, in company with Baldwin de Torney, ambassador from the Archbishop. While these messengers were negotiating at the court of Rome, the English bishops, foreseeing the approaching return of their primate, thought fit to send him a letter of invitation, containing some expressions of submission and respect.²⁸

Invitation
of the Eng-
lish bishops
to Anselm.

The King's agent at Rome acted his part so well, that he succeeded better in his negotiation than could have been expected. For, on March 23d, A. D. 1106., he obtained letters from the Pope, directed to Anselm, permitting and requiring him to grant absolution to all the Eng-

1106.

Favourable
letter from
the Pope to
the King.

²⁶ Eadmer, p. 79, 80.

²⁷ Id. p. 81.

²⁸ Id. p. 84.

Cent. XII.

lish bishops and abbots who had received investiture from, and had done homage to, the King, on their making such satisfaction as William and Baldwin would tell him by word of mouth; and then either to consecrate them himself, or by commission. In future, he directed him not to refuse consecration to such bishops and abbots as had done homage to the King, provided they had not received investiture from him. He even commands him to receive into his communion those three prelates who had brought a false report from Rome, and to absolve the King, Queen, and nobility of England, from all their sins. And finally, he advises him to behave with great prudence, gentleness, and meekness to the King and the nobles in time to come²⁹. By what means these concessions were obtained we are not informed. The Pope seems to have been sensible that they were greater than Anselm expected; for which he made a kind of apology, by telling him, that in order to raise people from the ground, it was necessary to stoop a little.

Anselm
returns to
England.

King Henry was so heartily tired of his disputes with the Pope and the primate, that he accepted of this compromise with pleasure, and sent an invitation to Anselm to return to England. But when that prelate was preparing for his journey, he was seized with a lingering illness that detained him several months longer on the continent. At length, however, he arrived

²⁹ Eadmer, p. 87.

at Dover, in August A.D. 1106.; and was received with the highest testimonies of respect and joy by persons of all ranks.³⁰ Cent. XII.

The absence of the King, who was then in Normandy, completing the conquest of that country, prevented the full settlement of ecclesiastical affairs in that year; and, even after his return, it was put off from time to time, till August 1st, A.D. 1107.; when a great council of the bishops, abbots, and nobles, was held in the King's palace at London. In this council the right of the King and of other lay-patrons to give investitures, by the delivery of the pastoral staff and ring, was debated with great warmth for three days; many of the nobility pleading boldly in defence of their own rights, and of the rights of their sovereign. But, on the fourth day, the King put an end to this debate, by declaring, that he was determined to adhere to the late compromise, and to relinquish the ceremony of giving investiture, in order to secure the more important right of receiving the homage of the clergy; and a solemn act was made agreeable to this declaration, viz. "That for the future, none shall be invested by the king, or any lay-patron, in any bishopric or abbey, by delivering of a pastoral staff and ring; and none who is elected to any prelacy, shall be denied consecration on account of the homage that he does to the king."³¹ 1107.
Dispute about homage and investitures compromised.

³⁰ Eadmer, p. 89.

³¹ Spelman. Concil. t. 2. p. 27. Eadmer, p. 91.

Cent. XII.

Several
bishops
consecrated.

Immediately after the determination of this great controversy about investitures, Anselm consecrated no fewer than five bishops in one day (August 11th), with the assistance of seven of his suffragans³². About the same time he received a letter from Pope Pascal II. permitting him to dispense with that canon of the church, which prohibited the ordination or promotion of the sons of priests. "Because (says the Pope) the execution of it would be very inconvenient in England, where the best and greatest part of the clergy are of that kind³³." So long did the English ecclesiastics adhere to the laws of nature, in opposition to the barbarous policy of Rome.

See of Ely
erected.

In the end of this, or the beginning of the next year, a new bishopric was erected in the monastery of Ely, with the consent of the King, the Pope, the Primate, and all parties concerned; and Hervey, who had been expelled by the Welsh from the see of Bangor, was appointed the first bishop of that see.³⁴

1108.

Canons of
the council
of London
against
the marriages
of the clergy.

Anselm was a violent enemy to the marriage of the clergy, and it was by his influence that the severe canons had been made against it in the council of London, A.D. 1102. But these canons had been ill observed, or rather totally neglected, during the disputes about investitures, and the exile of the Archbishop; who procured

³² Eadmer, p. 92.³³ Id. p. 91.³⁴ Anglia Sacra, t. 1. p. 616.

another

another council to be held on that subject, at Cent. XII.
 London, in Whitsuntide A.D. 1108.³⁵ In }
 this council, in which the King and the nobility,
 as well as the prelates were present, no fewer
 than ten canons were made to enforce the celi-
 bacy and prevent the marriage of the clergy.
 By these canons, all priests, even those in the
 very lowest orders, are commanded—to put away
 their wives immediately, — not to suffer them to
 live on any lands belonging to the church, —
 never to see them or speak with them, except in
 cases of great necessity, and in the presence of
 two or three witnesses. — Those who put away
 their wives, were to abstain from saying mass for
 forty days, and to perform such penances as their
 bishops should prescribe; but those unhallowed
 wretches who refused to put away their wives,
 were instantly to be deposed and excommuni-
 cated, and all their goods, together with the
 persons and goods of their wives, as in the case
 of adulteresses, were to be forfeited to the bishop
 of the diocese³⁶. These canons afford a sufficient
 proof, that those ecclesiastical tyrants found it no
 easy task to dissolve the natural and virtuous
 affection that subsisted between the clergy of
 England and their wives in this period.

While the rulers of the church of England
 were laying these restraints on the most innocent
 passions of the inferior clergy, they set no bounds

Quarrel
 between
 Anselm
 and the
 elect of
 York.

³⁵ Eadmer, p. 94.

³⁶ Spelman Concil. t. 3. p. 29. Wilkin. Concil. t. 1. p. 388.

Cent. XII. to their own ambition, which produced amongst them many indecent quarrels. One of these quarrels happened A.D. 1108., between Anselm, and Thomas elect of York; who, observing the advanced age and increasing infirmities of the primate, delayed from time to time, under various pretences, to come to Canterbury to receive consecration; hoping, that after the death of Anselm, he might obtain it without making the humiliating profession of canonical obedience. But that prelate was too quick-sighted not to discover the secret intentions of the elect of York, and too tenacious of the prerogatives of his see, not to take the most vigorous measures to prevent their success. With this view he wrote to the Pope not to grant Thomas his pall, and to all the bishops of England, not to assist at his consecration, till he had made the usual professions of obedience; which he was at last, after a long and violent struggle, constrained to perform.³⁷

1109.
Death and
character
of Anselm.

Anselm, having languished for some months, died 20th April, in the seventy-sixth year of his age, and the sixteenth of his primacy. He was a man of piety and learning, according to the mode and measure of the age in which he flourished; but by promoting with zeal and obstinacy the ambitious views of the see of Rome, he involved himself, as well as his king and country, in many troubles, and set an example

³⁷ Eadmer, p. 97—104.

which

which was too well imitated by some of his successors.

Cent. XII.

Henry had suffered so much from the opposition of the late primate, that he was in no haste to give him a successor; but kept the see of Canterbury vacant no less than five years. At length, after a warm contest between the monks of the cathedral and the prelates of the province, Radulphus Bishop of Rochester was elected primate, 26th April, and enthroned 17th May, A.D. 1114.³⁸

1114.

Radulphus
made arch-
bishop.

As all this had been transacted without so much as consulting the Pope, the messengers sent to Rome by the Archbishop to solicit his pall, were very coldly received, and met with many difficulties; but being powerfully supported by Abbot Anselm, nephew of the late primate, and a great favourite of His Holiness, they at last succeeded; and that abbot was sent into England with the pall, and a long letter to the King and bishops. In this letter many texts of scripture are quoted to prove, that no business of any importance ought to be transacted in any nation of Europe without the knowledge and direction of the Pope; it also contains the strongest expressions of resentment against the King and prelates of England for their late neglect of the holy see, with threats of excommunication, if they did not behave in a more dutiful manner in time to come³⁹. Henry was much offended with the

Insolent
letter from
the Pope.

³⁸ Eadmer, p. 115.

³⁹ Id. *ibid*.

Cent. XII. insolent strain of this epistle; and sent William Bishop of Exeter to Rome, to expostulate with the Pope on that and some other subjects.

Henry nominates a bishop of St. David's in Wales.

The people of Wales were about this time so much humbled by the superior power of Henry, that the clergy of the church of St. David's applied to that prince to nominate a fit person to be bishop of that see; and he named Bernard, Chaplain to the Queen. That this was a novelty, appears from this circumstance, that a very violent dispute arose between the King and the Archbishop of Canterbury, about the place where the bishop-elect of St. David's sought to be consecrated, in which the policy of the prince at last yielded to the pertinacity of the prelate.⁴⁰

1116.

Dispute about the primacy revived.

The dispute about the obligation of the archbishops of York to make a profession of canonical obedience to the archbishops of Canterbury at their consecration, which had so often disturbed the peace of the church of England, was revived at this time by Thurstan, elect of York, who refused to make that profession. After this dispute had subsisted almost a year, it was brought before a great council at Salisbury, 18th March A.D. 1116.; and such was the pride and obstinacy of Thurstan, that when the King and council declared against him, he chose to relinquish his see rather than to submit⁴¹. It was not long, however, before he repented of this rash step; and, following the King into Normandy, earnestly

⁴⁰ Eadmer, p. 116.

⁴¹ Wilkin. Concilia, t. i. p. 393.

solicited to be restored to the dignity he had too hastily resigned. Meeting with little encouragement from the King, Thurstan had recourse to Rome; and, employing those modes of solicitation which he knew to be most successful, he at length obtained a bull from the Pope A.D. 1118. restoring him to his see; and declaring, that His Holiness would hear both parties in the dispute between Canterbury and York in his own presence, and determine it according to justice⁴². But this bull did not put an end to this controversy. For the primate still refused to consecrate the elect of York, without a profession of canonical obedience, which he obstinately refused to make.⁴³

On this, Thurstan petitioned the King for leave to go into France to visit the Pope, who had indicted a general council to meet at Rheims in October A.D. 1119. But Henry, suspecting his intention, obliged him to give a solemn promise on oath, that he would neither ask nor accept of consecration from the Pope; and, for the greater security, he also obtained a solemn promise from the Pope, that he would not grant consecration to Thurstan. But all these oaths and promises were most shamefully violated. For, as soon as the elect of York arrived at Rheims, he was consecrated by His Holiness in the cathedral church of that city. The King of England was so much provoked at this base

Prevarication of the Pope.

⁴² Eadmer, p. 121.

⁴³ W. Malmf. p. 157.

Cent. XII.

transaction, that he solemnly swore he would not suffer Thurstan to enter any of his dominions ⁴⁴. In an interview that he had with the Pope some time after, at Gisors, His Holiness importuned him to permit his friend Thurstan to return to his see, and offered to absolve him from his oath. The King, after reflecting a little on this proposal, answered, that he could not accept of his absolution, because such a trifling with oaths and promises would destroy all faith and confidence among mankind. ⁴⁵

1120.

The Pope
breaks his
promise.

At this interview the King obtained a promise from the Pope, that he would not send any legates into England or Normandy without his requisition; which was no better observed than other papal promises ⁴⁶. For Calixtus, who made this promise, having defeated his rival Michael Burdinus the antipope, and taken him prisoner, sent his legates, under the specious pretence of communicating this joyful news, into all the different nations of Europe, and amongst others into England, without the least regard to his late engagement. But King Henry was not so inattentive to that engagement: for though he received the legate with no little ceremony, and treated him with much respect, he told him plainly, that he could not acknowledge him as legate, nor suffer him to perform any one act in consequence of that commission. ⁴⁷

⁴⁴ Eadmer, p. 125. W. Malmf. p. 157.

⁴⁵ Eadmer, p. 126.

⁴⁶ Id. p. 125.

⁴⁷ Id. p. 137.

Radulphus, Archbishop of Canterbury, died ^{Cent. XII.} 20th October, A. D. 1122., in the ninth year of ^{1122.} his patriarchate. He is said by a contemporary ^{Death and} historian, who was well acquainted with him, to ^{character} have been a man of eminent piety and learning, ^{of Radul-} of a generous disposition and affable deportment, ^{phus.} but a little too much addicted to jocularities for the dignity of his station.⁴⁸

The death of the primate gave rise, as usual, ^{William} to a warm contest between the monks of Canter- ^{Corboyl} bury and the bishops of the province, about the ^{made arch-} choice of a successor; in which the bishops, ^{bishop.} being secretly favoured by the King, at length prevailed, and William Corboyl, Prior of Chiche, was elected at Gloucester on the feast of the Purification of the Virgin Mary, A. D. 1123.⁴⁹ Being consecrated at Canterbury by the bishops of London and Winchester, assisted by the other English prelates, on the 20th of February, he made a journey to Rome for his pall, which he obtained⁵⁰. In this journey he had also in view to obtain a decision in favour of his see, in the famous dispute with the Archbishop of York, which was still depending. But in this he did not succeed. For His Holiness was in no haste to determine a question which gave him so much authority over the church of England.⁵¹

One of the most specious and successful arts ^{1125.} employed by the court of Rome to subject the ^{A papal le-} ^{gate holds}

⁴⁸ W. Malmf. p. 132.⁴⁹ Anglia Sacra, t. I. p. 7.⁵⁰ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1662.⁵¹ Anglia Sacra, t. I. p. 71.

several

Cent. XII.

a council
at West-
minster.

several churches of Europe to her dominion, was that of sending legates into all countries, with commissions to hold national councils, in the name and by the authority of the Pope. Though every attempt to procure the admission of such papal legates into England had hitherto proved abortive, the policy of Rome was still upon the watch to seize the first favourable opportunity for renewing these attempts. Such an opportunity presented itself at this time, when the King of England was engaged in a dangerous war on the continent, and stood in need of the favour of the court of Rome; and it was not neglected. For Pope Honorius II. granted a commission, 13th April, to John de Crema, a cardinal priest, to be his legate in England and Scotland⁵². The legate, having waited on King Henry in Normandy, at length, and with much difficulty, obtained his permission to pass over into England; where he gratified his pride and avarice without much regard to decency. Amongst other things, he presided in a national council at Westminster, 9th September, A. D. 1126., in which both the archbishops, twenty bishops, forty abbots, and an innumerable multitude, both of the clergy and people, were present⁵³. In this council, which was the first in which a Roman legate had presided in England, no fewer than seventeen canons were made, or rather [promulgated, in the name and by the

⁵² Spelman, Concil. t. 2. p. 32, 33.

⁵³ Id. p. 33.

authority

authority of the Pope alone. In these canons there is little new or remarkable, except that the celibacy of the clergy is extended to those in the lowest orders; and they are forbidden to have any women in their houses, besides their sisters, aunts, or those of whom there could be no suspicion⁵⁴. At the conclusion of the council, the legate summoned both the archbishops to repair immediately to Rome, to plead the cause about the prerogatives of their respective sees, which was depending before the Pope. To such a height had the usurpations of Rome, and the insolence of the papal legates arrived at this time.

In the night after the conclusion of this council, an incident happened, which made a prodigious noise, and brought no little scandal on the Roman clergy. John de Crema, the Pope's legate, who had declaimed, with great warmth, in the council the day before, in honour of immaculate chastity, and inveighed with no less vehemence against the horrid impurity of the married clergy, was caught in bed with a harlot. The detection was so undeniable, and soon became so public, that the legate dared not to shew his face; but sneaked out of England with the greatest secrecy and precipitation⁵⁵. This incident gave much satisfaction to the married clergy (who had probably

⁵⁴ Spelman. Concil. t. 2. p. 34.

⁵⁵ Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 219. R. Hoveden, p. 274. J. Brompt. col. 1015. H. Knyghton, col. 2382. Chron. Hemingford, l. i. c. 48.

been

Cent. XII. been the detectors), and rendered the canon of the late council against them abortive and contemptible.

1127.
Transactions of the two archbishops at Rome, and a council at Westminster.

The two archbishops, in obedience to the citation of the legate, repaired to Rome, where Thurstan, being the greatest favourite, obtained a bull exempting him and his successors from all subjection to the see of Canterbury, and placing the two prelates of Canterbury and York on an exact footing of equality⁵⁶. This was not the only disaster that befell the Archbishop of Canterbury when he was at Rome. For he was by some means or other prevailed upon to degrade and enslave himself and his successors, by accepting a commission to be the Pope's legate in England; hoping perhaps by this commission to recover that authority over his rival Thurstan, that he had lost by the late bull. Proud of his chains, he convened a national synod immediately on his return, to meet at Westminster, 17th May, and presided in it as the Pope's legate. Thurstan, unwilling to give any marks of subjection to William even in this new character, did not attend this council; and his suffragan, the Bishop of Durham, also sent an excuse. The canons of this council seem to have been brought from Rome, as well as the authority by which they were promulgated. In them the marriage of the clergy is styled the plague of the church, and all dignitaries are commanded to exert their most

⁵⁶ Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 407.

zealous

zealous efforts to root it out. The wives of Cent. XII.
 priests and canons were not only to be separated
 from them, but to be banished out of the parish;
 and if they ever after conversed with their husbands,
 they were to be seized by the ministers of the church⁵⁷,
 and subjected to ecclesiastical discipline, or reduced to
 servitude, at the discretion of the bishop: and if any
 persons, great or small, attempted to deliver these
 unhappy victims out of the hands of the ministers of
 the church, they were to be excommunicated⁵⁸. These
 canons afford a sufficient proof of the power and tyranny
 of the court of Rome, from whence they came; and
 also of the great difficulty of establishing celibacy among
 the inferior clergy of the church of England; which was
 far from being accomplished by these canons.

For this reason the Archbishop of Canterbury
 convened another council, which met at London,
 on Monday, September 29th, A.D. 1129, and continued
 to sit till Friday, October 3d. The sole design of this
 council was, to contrive some more effectual means
 than had yet been used, to compel the inferior clergy
 to put away their wives. To accomplish this end, it
 was decreed, that all priests who were married should
 put away their wives on or before the feast of St.
 Andrew (November 30th) next; and that those

1129.

Council at
London.

⁵⁷ These ministers of the church were laymen, and a kind of ecclesiastical sheriffs, who executed the sentences of ecclesiastical courts, as the secular sheriffs executed those of the secular courts.

⁵⁸ Wilkin. Concil. t. 1. p. 410. Spelman. Concil. t. 2. p. 35, 36.

Cent. XII. who did not obey this decree, should be immediately turned out of their churches and houses, and declared incapable of ever holding any office or benefice in the church⁵⁹. To render this decree still more effectual, the council committed the execution of it to the King. But this turned out to be very ill policy, and disappointed the whole design. For the King, instead of compelling the clergy to put away their wives, thought it more for his advantage to impose a tax on those who chose to retain them; which, it is said, brought a great sum into the royal coffers.⁶⁰

1130.
Schism in
the papacy.
The see of
Carlisle
founded.

The legantine commission which had been so imprudently accepted by the Archbishop of Canterbury, expired with Pope Honorius II. who had granted it, February 14th, A.D. 1130. On the very day of his death, two popes were chosen, one of which assumed the name of *Innocent* II. and the other of *Anacletus*. This schism continued about nine years, but at length terminated in favour of Innocent, who had been acknowledged by the Emperor and the Kings of France and England⁶¹. Though the frequent schisms in the papacy in the middle ages were very fatal to the prosperity and pretensions of the church of Rome, they were very friendly to the rights of other churches. For while the rival popes were employed in cursing and destroying

⁵⁹ Wilkin. Concil. t. 1. p. 411.

⁶⁰ Hen. Hunt. l. 7. p. 220.

⁶¹ Du Pin. Eccles. Hist. cent. 12. c. 3.

one another, they had no leisure to disturb the peace or invade the rights of the rest of mankind. During this schism in particular, the church of England was governed by her own prelates, and enjoyed great tranquillity to the death of Henry I. December 1st, A.D. 1135. The most remarkable ecclesiastical transaction that happened in this period was the founding of the bishopric of Carlisle, A.D. 1132., of which Adelwald, the King's confessor, was the first bishop.⁶²

Cent. XII.

It was no small reproach to the Archbishop of Canterbury, and the other English prelates, that they so shamefully violated their most solemn oaths to support the succession of the Empress Maud, and so tamely submitted to the usurper Stephen⁶³. To this they were induced by the pompous promises made by Stephen to the church at his coronation, and soon after confirmed in a royal charter⁶⁴. For in those times the advancement of the good of the church, *i. e.* of its power and riches, was esteemed a sufficient excuse for the most immoral actions. Nor was Pope Innocent II. (the Pope acknowledged by England) more scrupulous on this occasion, than the English prelates. For he sent Stephen a bull, confirming his election to, or rather his usurpation of, the crown.⁶⁵

1136.

The clergy
submit to
King Stephen.

⁶² Godwin. de Præsul. Careolens.

⁶³ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 222. col. 1.

⁶⁴ W. Malmf. p. 102. col. 1:

⁶⁵ Id. *ibid.*

William

Cent. XII.

1137.

Death and
character
of Arch-
bishop
Corboyl.

William Corboyl, Archbishop of Canterbury, did not live to see many of the fatal effects of his imprudent compliance with the court of Rome in accepting the legantine commission, nor of the countenance he had given to the usurpation of King Stephen. For he died in the fifteenth year of his pontificate, December 19th, A.D. 1127.⁶⁶ He seems to have been a weak man, too easily prevailed upon to forget the dignity of his station and the obligation of his oaths. The archbishopric continued vacant two years and one month, contrary to the solemn promises that had been made by Stephen at his coronation, and in his charter. This prince, after the primate's death, was so mean and imprudent as to solicit the Pope to grant a legantine commission to his brother Henry Bishop of Winchester; which he obtained. But he was soon convinced that he had no reason to rejoice in this success.

1138.

The papal
legate
holds a
council at
Westmin-
ster.
Theobald
chosen
primate.

The schism in the papacy being healed by the death of Anacletus, and the resignation of Victor his successor, A. D. 1138., Innocent II. began to meddle more directly, and in a more magisterial manner, in the affairs of the church of England. For though he had granted the legantine commission to Henry Bishop of Winchester, the King's brother, he now suspended that commission, and sent a creature of his own, Albericus Bishop of Ostia, as his legate, into England.

⁶⁶ Anglia Sacra, t. i. p. 7.

This bold step was equally disagreeable to the King and his brother. But they had proceeded too far in their submissions to the see of Rome, to stop short; and therefore, after a little hesitation, Albericus was permitted to execute his commission⁶⁷. In consequence of this, he presided in a national synod, which he had summoned to meet, December 13th, A. D. 1138., at Westminster. In this synod sixteen canons were promulgated by the sole authority of the holy see, without so much as mentioning the consent of the council, though there were seventeen bishops, thirty abbots, and a great multitude of the inferior clergy present⁶⁸. At the conclusion of this council, the legate proceeded to a still more daring invasion of the rights of the crown and church of England, by taking the lead in the choice of an archbishop of Canterbury; and by his influence Theobald, Abbot of Becc in Normandy, was chosen on the Sunday before Christmas, and consecrated at Canterbury, by the legate, January 19th, A. D. 1139.⁶⁹ This was a cruel disappointment to the King's brother, Henry Bishop of Winchester, who had set his heart upon the primacy; and suspecting, not without reason, that the King had secretly contributed to his disappointment, he began to form schemes of revenge against his own brother, which he soon discovered.

Cent. XII.

⁶⁷ Chron. Gervas apud X Script. col. 1344.⁶⁸ Id. col. 1347, &c.⁶⁹ Id. ibid.

Cent. XII.

1139.
Quarrel
between
King Ste-
phen and
his brother
the Bishop
of Win-
chester.

Albericus the Pope's legate, with Theobald the new archbishop, departing for Rome about the end of January this year, the Bishop of Winchester resumed the exercise of his legantine commission, and governed the church of England with a high hand. This haughty, ambitious, and vindictive prelate, meditated revenge against all who had contributed to his missing the primacy, and particularly against the King, which he executed on the following occasion. An invasion of England by the Empress Maude, and her natural brother Robert Earl of Gloucester, being daily expected, Stephen thought it necessary to secure such of the nobility and clergy as he suspected of an intention to abandon him and join his rival. Roger Bishop of Salisbury had been justiciary and prime minister of Henry I. who had loaded him, and his two nephews, Alexander Bishop of Lincoln, and Nigellus Bishop of Ely, with riches and honours. These prelates had built several strong and magnificent castles, which excited the envy of the nobility as well as the jealousy of the King; who seized the persons of the Bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln, at Oxford, June 26th, and obliged them, with the Bishop of Ely, who was taken at the Devizes, to surrender all their castles. This transaction made a prodigious noise. The King's conduct was commended by some, and blamed by others; but by none so much as his own brother the Bishop of Winchester. That artful prelate thinking this a favourable opportunity

of displaying his own power, and zeal for the immunities of the church, as well as of gratifying his resentment, did not suffer it to escape. He repaired to court; commanded rather than petitioned the King to restore their castles to the three bishops; and meeting with a denial, as he expected, he called a national council to meet at Winchester, August 28th, and summoned the King to appear before it to answer for his conduct. This daring insult on the royal dignity would have been properly resented by Stephen at another time; but, in his present circumstances, he was obliged to temporise. He first sent certain earls to the council, to demand why he had been summoned; who received this haughty answer from the legate: "That as the King pretended to be a Christian, he ought not to be surprised that he was commanded by the ministers of Christ to give them satisfaction; especially as he was conscious of the horrid crime of imprisoning bishops, and stripping them of their possessions; a crime which had never been heard of before in any Christian age⁷⁰." The legate added, That if the King was not a fool, he would come immediately, and submit to the judgment of the clergy, to whom he owed his crown. Though Stephen was greatly irritated at the report of his commissioners, he suppressed his resentment, and

⁷⁰ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 103.

Cent. XII. sent them back to the council, with Alberic de Vere, the most eloquent pleader of that age, to defend his cause; which was agitated three days successively, with incredible warmth on both sides; and the council broke up at last in confusion, without having come to any decision.⁷¹

1141.
Disputes
about the
election of
an Arch-
bishop of
York.

The civil war between King Stephen and the Empress Maude broke out immediately after the conclusion of the above council; and during its continuance there were but few ecclesiastical transactions of importance. Thurstan Archbishop of York having died, February 5th, A. D. 1141, the canons of that cathedral proceeded immediately to the choice of a successor, without so much as consulting either of the two rivals who were then contending for the crown of England. But these canons were unhappily divided in their sentiments on this occasion; and while one part of them declared for William, treasurer of the church of York, and nephew to King Stephen, being the son of his sister Emma, the other made choice of Henry Murdak, Abbot of Fountains, in Yorkshire. This dispute, instead of being carried to the court of England, was immediately carried to the court of Rome, where it continued depending no less than five years, at an immense expence and trouble; and was at last determined in favour of the Abbot, by the influence of his friend St. Bernard⁷². So much

⁷¹ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 103.

⁷² H. Stubs apud X Script. col. 1721.

had the influence of the crown lost, and that of Cent. XII.
 the papacy gained, by the civil wars, which then
 raged with uncommon fury.

An event which happened in these wars, on The clergy
in the
council of
Winches-
ter declare
for the
Empress.
 February 2d, A. D. 1141., gave the legate,
 Henry Bishop of Winchester, an opportunity of
 gratifying his resentment against his brother King
 Stephen, in its utmost extent. That prince
 having then been taken prisoner at the battle of
 Lincoln, the legate openly joined the party of
 his rival, and by his legantine authority sum-
 moned a council to meet at Winchester the week
 after Easter, in order to bring over all the rest of
 the clergy to embrace the same party. The le-
 gate spent the first day of the council in private
 consultations with the several different orders of
 the clergy separately, in order to discover their
 inclinations. On the second day he made a long
 harangue to the council, in which he loaded his
 unhappy brother with reproaches, and greatly
 magnified all the misfortunes and errors of his
 government. After which he concluded in this
 manner: “ That the kingdom might not be
 “ ruined for want of a head, I, by virtue of my
 “ legantine authority, have summoned you all
 “ to this council. Yesterday this great question,
 “ Which of the two claimants hath the best right
 “ to the crown? was canvassed privately by the
 “ clergy of England, to whom it chiefly belongs
 “ to elect and ordain kings. And now, having
 “ invoked the divine direction, we elect and
 “ chuse

Cent. XII. “ chuse the daughter of the late pacific, glorious,
 “ rich, good, and incomparable King Henry,
 “ to be the mistress of England and Normandy,
 “ and we promise her our obedience and
 “ fealty⁷³.” All who were present gave their
 assent to this, either by gentle acclamations or
 by silence. On the third day the deputies of the
 city of London were introduced to the council,
 and petitioned the legate, the Archbishop, and
 all the clergy, to procure the liberty of their
 King. To convince them that this could not be
 granted, the legate repeated the oration he had
 made the day before; and then added, “ That
 “ it very ill became the citizens of London, who
 “ were regarded as a kind of nobles in England,
 “ to favour that party of the nobility, who had
 “ abandoned their prince in battle, who had
 “ persuaded him to dishonour holy church, and
 “ who seemed to court the Londoners with no
 “ other view than to squeeze money from
 “ them⁷⁴.” The council broke up on the
 fourth day, after excommunicating some of the
 most active barons of the King’s party.

1142.

In the
 council of
 Westmin-
 ster they
 declare for
 King Ste-
 phen.

The war between the parties of the Empress
 and King Stephen having taken a different turn
 in the course of this year, and that prince having
 obtained his liberty, in exchange for the Earl of
 Gloucester, the legate changed his party once
 more, and openly declared for the King and

⁷³ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. t. 2. p. 100.

⁷⁴ Id. *ibid*.

against

against the Empress. In consequence of this Cent. XII.
 change he called a national council, which met
 at Westminster in the beginning of December.
 The King being introduced into the council,
 made bitter complaints of the rebellion of his
 subjects, and of the injuries that he and his
 friends had sustained. The legate exerted all
 his eloquence to excuse his former conduct, de-
 claring, that every thing he had done in favour
 of the Countess of Anjou (the name he now
 gave the Empress) had been the effect of con-
 straint and force. Though few believed him,
 none ventured to contradict him but one layman,
 who stood up, and boldly affirmed, that the Em-
 press had come into England in consequence of
 his frequent and earnest solicitations, and had
 done nothing but by his direction and advice.
 The legate, without losing his temper, or making
 any answer, proceeded, with a grave face, to ex-
 communicate all the disturbers of the public
 peace, and favourers of the Countess of Anjou.⁷⁵

The legate held a council at London about the 1143.
 middle of Lent this year, in order to provide Council at
 some security to the persons and possessions of London.
 the clergy, from that violence to which they
 were exposed in the civil wars. With this view
 the following canon was made: "That none
 " who violated a church or church-yard, or laid
 " violent hands on a clerk, should be absolved
 " from excommunication by any but the Pope."

⁷⁵ W. Malmf. Hist. Novel. l. 2. p. 108, 109.

Cent. XII. By this canon (says a contemporary historian) the rapacity of the kites was a little restrained.⁷⁶

1145. The legate, elated by his legantine authority, Scheme for making Winchester an archbishopric. and his great interest at the court of Rome, is said to have formed a scheme of getting Winchester erected into an archbishopric by the Pope. This scheme, if we may believe an ancient historian, was carried so far, that Pope Lucius sent the legate a pall, and intended to have assigned him seven bishops for his suffragans⁷⁷. However this may be, this design was disappointed either by the death of the Pope, the confusions of the times, or some other cause.

1148. Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury had been Council of Rheims. greatly mortified by that superiority of rank and power which his suffragan the Bishop of Winchester possessed, by his legantine commission, and his near relation to the King. Many disputes arose between these two prelates, which were carried to the court of Rome, and prosecuted with great eagerness⁷⁸. Pope Eugenius III. proposed to hold a council at Rheims in Lent, A.D. 1148., to which he summoned the Archbishop of Canterbury and several English bishops. The legate persuaded his brother King Stephen to prohibit the primate from attending that council; hoping, that if the archbishop slighted that prohibition, he would offend the

⁷⁶ R. Hoveden. Annal. p.280. col.1.

⁷⁷ Anglia Sacra, t.1 p.300. Diceto apud X Script. col.508.

⁷⁸ Gervas apud X Script. col.1665.

King;

King; and if he obeyed it, he would incur the displeasure of the Pope. In this dilemma, Theobald, chusing rather to disobey his secular than his spiritual sovereign, made his escape out of England, and was honourably received by the Pope at Rheims. If ever Theobald received a commission, as some authors affirm, of being *legatus natus*, as it was called, it was probably at this time⁷⁹. On his return to England, he was so ill received by Stephen, that he thought proper to retire again to France, till a kind of reconciliation was patched up, that was never cordial on either side.⁸⁰

Cent. XII.

Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury being now restored to his see, and also invested with the legantine authority, held a general council of the English clergy, at London, about the middle of Lent, A. D. 1151. We hear of no canons that were made in this council; and though King Stephen, his eldest son Prince Eustace, and the chief nobility of England, were present, its peace was much disturbed, and its authority diminished, by appeals to Rome from its decrees, of which no fewer than three were taken⁸¹. This practice of appealing to Rome from an English council, had only been introduced a few years before, by the late legate, Henry Bishop of Winchester; and so great progress had it already made, that

1151.
Appeals to
Rome.

⁷⁹ Antiquit. Britan. p. 127.

⁸⁰ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1666. ⁸¹ Hen. Hunt. l. 8. p. 227.

all

Cent. XII. all ecclesiastical causes of importance were finally determined in the court of Rome.

1154.
Death of
King Ste-
phen.

England, in the three last years of King Stephen's reign, was a scene of so great confusion, that no ecclesiastical councils were held; and the disputes which then began to arise between several rich abbeys, and the bishops of those dioceses in which they lay, about their exemption from episcopal jurisdiction, will fall more properly to be related in the next section. Death put an end to the unfortunate life and unhappy reign of this prince, October 25, A. D. 1154.

Encroach-
ments of
the papacy
on the
crown and
church.

In the period we have been now delineating, the papacy made great encroachments, both on the prerogatives of the crown and the privileges of the church of England. On the prerogatives of the crown, by depriving the King of the right of granting investiture to his prelates, and diminishing his influence in their election; on the privileges of the church and clergy, by establishing the legantine authority,—by enforcing celibacy on the inferior clergy,—and by drawing all ecclesiastical causes of importance to Rome, by appeals.

Ecclesiastical history
of Scotland.

AUTHENTIC materials for a church-history of Scotland are still very scanty in this period, and are chiefly to be found in the English historians.

Turgot Bi-
shop of St.
Andrews.

After the see of St. Andrew's had continued a considerable time vacant, Turgot Prior of Durham was recommended to Alexander I. King of Scotland

Scotland by Henry I. and elected to supply that vacancy, A. D. 1107. But a dispute having arisen between King Alexander and Thurstan Archbishop of York, about the independency of the church of Scotland, the consecration of Turgot did not immediately take place. When this dispute had subsisted above a year, Henry I. interposed, and prevailed upon Thurstan to consecrate the elect of St. Andrew's, without exacting a profession of canonical obedience, leaving the rights of all parties entire, to be determined on some future occasion⁸². Turgot was accordingly consecrated at York, August 1st, A. D. 1109.; from whence he went into Scotland, and governed that church for some years with prudence, and in peace⁸³. At length, some difference breaking out between the King and him, he obtained leave to pay a visit to his friends in England; where he died, at Durham, March 30th, A. D. 1115.⁸⁴

One William, a monk of St. Edmundsbury, seems to have succeeded Turgot in the see of St. Andrew's; but he either resigned or was deprived before his consecration: after which there was a vacancy of considerable duration⁸⁵. At length King Alexander sent a letter to Ralph Archbishop of Canterbury, A. D. 1120., desiring him to send Eadmerus, one of the monks of his

Cent. XII.

A. D. 1120.
Disputes
between
the King
of Scotland
and Ead-
merus Bi-
shop of St.
Andrew's.

⁸² Sim. Dunelm. apud X Script. col. 207.

⁸³ Chron. Melros. ad ann. 1109.

⁸⁵ Eadmer, p. 132.

⁸⁴ Sim. Dunelm. col. 208.

cathedral,

Cent. XII. cathedral, of whom he had heard a high character, into Scotland, to be raised to the primacy of his kingdom. With this desire the Archbishop, having also obtained the consent of King Henry, joyfully complied; and Eadmerus was dispatched with a very strong letter of recommendation. He was kindly received by the King; and, on the third day after his arrival, he was elected Bishop of St. Andrew's, with much unanimity. But on the very day after his election, an unhappy dispute arose between the King and him, in a private conference about his consecration. Eadmerus having been a constant companion of the late and of the present Archbishops of Canterbury, was a violent stickler for the prerogatives of that see. He therefore told the King, that he was determined to be consecrated by none but the Archbishop of Canterbury, who he believed to be the primate of all Britain. Alexander, who was a fierce prince, and supported the independency of his crown and kingdom with great spirit, was so much offended that he broke off the conference in a violent passion, declaring that the see of Canterbury had no pre-eminency over that of St. Andrew's⁸⁶. This breach between the King and the bishop-elect became daily wider, till at length Eadmerus, despairing of recovering the royal favour, sent his pastoral ring to the King, and laid his pastoral staff on the high altar, from

⁸⁶ Eadmer, p. 132.

whence

whence he had taken it, and, abandoning his bishopric, returned to England. He was kindly received by the Archbishop and clergy of Canterbury, though they disapproved of his stiffness, and thought him too hasty in forsaking the honourable station to which he had been called. Nor was it long before Eadmerus became sensible of his error, and desirous of correcting it. With this view he wrote a long submissive letter to the King of Scotland, intreating his leave to return to his bishopric, promising compliance with his royal pleasure in every thing respecting his consecration, which was accompanied by an epistle to the same purpose from the Archbishop⁸⁷. But these letters, which were written A.D. 1122., did not produce the desired effect.

King Alexander I. had succeeded so ill in his applications to England, that he determined to raise one of his own subjects to the primacy of his kingdom; and Robert, Prior of Scone, was elected Bishop of St. Andrew's in January, A. D. 1124.⁸⁸ But the same difficulties occurring about his consecration, it did not take place till long after the death of King Alexander, which happened April 26th this year. This prince was a considerable benefactor to the church, founded the abbey of Scone and St. Columbe, was at much expence in collecting relics and clerical ornaments; and though naturally haughty in his

A.D. 1124.
Robert Bishop of St. Andrew's.

⁸⁷ Eadmer, p. 139, 140.

⁸⁸ Sim. Dunelm. apud X Script. col. 251.

deport-

Cent. XII. deportment, behaved with much condescension to the clergy.⁸⁹

A.D. 1126. The reign of St. David, who succeeded his brother Alexander, was the golden age of the church and churchmen in Scotland. The famous John de Crema arrived in Scotland, A. D. 1126., as legate from the Pope, and held a council at Rokesborough, in which the King was present. But the decrees of this, as well as of many other Scotch councils, are lost, though it is probable they were much the same with those of the council which was celebrated soon after at London, and chiefly intended to enforce the celibacy of the clergy.⁹⁰ In the course of his reign, King David erected the four bishoprics of Ross, Brechin, Dunkeld, and Dunblane; founded and endowed the abbeys of Jedburgh, Kelso, Melrose, Newbottle, Holyroodhouse, Kinloss, Cambuskenneth, Dundrennan, and Holmcuttram in Cumberland; besides several religious houses in Newcastle, Carlisle, Berwick, and other places.⁹¹ The performance of all this in twenty-nine years, by the sovereign of so small a state as Scotland, was certainly too great an exertion, and must have greatly diminished the lands and revenues of the crown. This pious prince died at Carlisle, May 25th, A. D. 1154.,

⁸⁹ Ethelred, apud X Script. col. 368.

⁹⁰ Simeon Dunelm. col. 252, 253.

⁹¹ Chron. de Mailros, p. 165, 166, 167. Simeon Dunelm. col. 281. Ailred apud X Script. col. 348.

exactly

exactly five months before the death of King Stephen.⁹² Cent. XII.

SECTION III.

*The ecclesiastical history of Great Britain, from
A. D. 1154. to A. D. 1189.*

THOUGH the court of Rome had made great encroachments both on the independency of the church, and the prerogatives of the crown of England, in the preceding period, that court was far from being satisfied with its acquisitions, but continued to prosecute its ambitious schemes with unwearied ardour and consummate policy. This occasioned such violent collisions between the crown and mitre, in the reign of Henry II. as very much disturbed the government, and even shook the throne, of that great prince.

One of the first ecclesiastical affairs that gave Henry II. any trouble, was the claim which some of the richest abbeys began about this time to advance, to an exemption from the jurisdiction of their bishops. A dispute on this subject between Walter Abbot of Battle abbey, and his diocesan Hilary Bishop of Chichester, was agitated in several councils in this and the two succeeding years; and at length was deter-

1154.

Violent
contest be-
tween the
crown and
the church.

1155.

Abbeys
exempted
from epif-
copal ju-
risdiction.

⁹² Simeon Dunelm; col. 281.

mined

Cent. XII. mined in favour of the Abbot, who pleaded a charter of exemption granted to his abbey by its founder William the Conqueror¹. The success of this abbot encouraged the hopes and enflamed the ambition of his brethren, some of whom did not scruple to forge charters of exemption. But these forgeries were so ill executed, that they were generally detected². This engaged others to apply to Rome for bulls, subjecting themselves immediately to the Pope, and exempting them from the jurisdiction of their ordinaries. Robert, Abbot of St. Albans, was the first who obtained such a bull from Pope Adrian IV. an Englishman, who had spent some years of his youth in the abbey of St. Albans³. Abbot Robert did not owe his success entirely to this circumstance: for his historian acquaints us, that he presented his holiness with three mitres and a pair of sandals of exquisite workmanship, and divided two hundred marks among the blood-suckers of the court. This abbot soon after obtained, by the same means, two other bulls; the one granting him and his successors permission to wear the episcopal ornaments, and the other appointing the parochial processions and offerings of Hertfordshire, at Whitsuntide, to be made to the church of St. Albans, and not to the cathedral of Lincoln⁴. These bulls, which di-

¹ Spelman Concil. t. 2. p. 53—58.

² Petr. Blesens. Epist. 68. p. 102.

³ M. Paris, Vit. Abbat. p. 46. ⁴ Id. p. 47.

minished both the power and revenues of the Bishop of Lincoln, gave rise to violent disputes with that prelate, which by the mere force of bribery, terminated in favour of the abbey^s. Many other abbots, in different parts of England, made similar applications to the court of Rome; and by employing the same means, obtained the same exemptions, and became mitred abbots. This innovation very much disturbed the ancient order of church-government, by diminishing the episcopal, and increasing the papal power. But none felt the fatal effects of these exemptions so sensibly as those who had obtained them. For the exempted abbots were so much harassed by expensive journies to Rome, and by the various exactions of that insatiable court, that they had great reason to lament the success of their ambition.

Henry II., in the second year of his reign, inadvertently contributed to exalt the power and pretensions of the Pope (under which he and his successors so severely smarted), by accepting a grant of the kingdom of Ireland from Adrian IV. For the soliciting or even accepting of this grant, was a plain acknowledgment, that the Pope had a right to deprive the Irish princes of their dominions and to bestow them upon another: and in the body of the grant, His Holiness takes care to mention this acknowledgment. “For it is undeniable (says he), and Your Majesty ac-

1156.
Henry II.
obtains a
grant of
Ireland
from the
Pope.

^s M. Paris, Vit. Abbat. p. 48—53.

Cent. XII. “knowledges it, that all islands on which Christ,
 “the sun of righteousness, hath shined, and
 “which have received the Christian faith, be-
 “long of right to St. Peter, and the most holy
 “Roman church.” A dangerous proposition,
 to which a king of England ought never to have
 given any countenance. But the wisest princes
 are sometimes so blinded by their ambition, as
 not to see the most obvious consequences of their
 conduct.

1159. Some persons con-
 demned
 and pu-
 nished for
 heresy.

A company of about thirty men and women,
 who spoke the German language, appeared in
 England at this time, and soon attracted the at-
 tention of government by the singularity of their
 religious practices and opinions. It is indeed
 very difficult to discover with certainty what their
 opinions were, because they are recorded only
 by our monkish historians, who speak of them
 with much asperity. They were apprehended,
 and brought before a council of the clergy at
 Oxford. Being interrogated about their reli-
 gion, their teacher, named *Gerard*, a man of
 learning, answered, in their name, that they
 were Christians, and believed the doctrines of
 the apostles. Upon a more particular enquiry
 it was found, that they denied several of the re-
 ceived doctrines of the church, as purgatory,
 prayers for the dead, and the invocation of
 saints; and, refusing to abandon those damnable
 heresies, as they were called, they were con-

‘ M. Paris, Hist. p. 67.

demned

demned as incorrigible heretics, and delivered to the secular arm to be punished. The King, at the instigation of the clergy, commanded them to be branded with a red-hot iron on the forehead, to be whipt through the streets of Oxford, and having their clothes cut short by their girdles, to be turned out into the open fields, all persons being forbidden to afford them any shelter or relief under the severest penalties. This cruel sentence was executed in its utmost rigour; and it being the depth of winter, all these unhappy persons perished with cold and hunger⁷. These seem to have been the first who suffered death in Britain for the vague and variable crime of heresy; and it would have been much to the honour of our country if they had been the last.

On the death of Adrian IV., September 1st, A. D. 1159., there happened another schism in the papacy; Octavian, who assumed the name of *Victor* III., being chosen by one part of the cardinals; and Roland, who took the name of *Alexander* III., by another. The first of these was received as pope by the Emperor Frederic; while the kings of France and England, after some deliberation, acknowledged the latter⁸. This schism continued about fifteen years, and was the occasion of much confusion in the church.

Cent. XII.

1160.

Schism in
the papacy.

⁷ W. Neubrig: l. 2. c. 13. Item, p. 631. J. Brompt. col. 1050.

⁸ Du Pin, cent. 12. p. 116.

Cent. XII.

1161.

Archbishop
Theobald
dies, and is
succeeded
by Thomas
Becket.

Theobald Archbishop of Canterbury died, April 18th, A. D. 1161., in the twenty-second year of his pontificate; and, after a vacancy of more than a year, was succeeded by one who makes a most conspicuous figure in the ecclesiastical annals of England. This was the famous Thomas Becket, who was the occasion of much political contention during his life, and the object of much superstitious veneration after his death. He was born in London, A. D. 1119.; and studied in the universities of Oxford, Paris, and Bononia, the most celebrated seats of learning in those times⁹. Having got into the family and favour of Archbishop Theobald, he was made archdeacon of Canterbury and provost of Beverly; and, by the earnest recommendation of that prelate to Henry II., he was appointed chancellor of England, A. D. 1158.¹⁰ In this station he paid his court so successfully to his royal master, not only by his dexterity in business, but also by his splendid manner of living, and agreeable conversation, that he became his greatest favourite, and his chief companion in his amusements. The King was in Normandy when he heard of Theobald's death, and immediately resolved to raise his chancellor to the primacy, in hopes of governing the church of England by his means in perfect tranquillity.

⁹ J. Brompt. apud X Script. col. 1052. Gervas, ibid. col. 1668.

¹⁰ J. Brompt. col. 1057, 1058.

The Empress Maude, the King's mother, endeavoured to dissuade her son from this design, and the clergy and bishops of England opposed the promotion of Becket, which retarded it above a year¹¹. But such was Henry's fondness for his favourite, that he was deaf to all advice, and overcame all opposition, and the Chancellor was elected archbishop at Westminster, June 3d, and was consecrated at Canterbury, June 6th, A.D. 1162.¹²

As soon as Becket found himself firmly seated in the archiepiscopal chair of Canterbury, he suddenly changed his whole deportment and manner of life, and from the gayest and most luxurious courtier, became the most austere and solemn monk¹³. One of his first actions after his promotion, equally irritated and surprised the King. This was his resignation of the chancellor's office, without having consulted the inclination of his beneficent master, by whom he had been loaded with wealth and honours¹⁴. Before Henry returned to England, in January A.D. 1163., he had received so many complaints of the severities of the new primate, that he became sensible, when it was too late, that he had made a wrong choice. When Becket therefore waited upon him at Southampton, it was observed by the whole court, that though he was treated with respect, he was not received with the

1162.
Becket
disobliges
the King,

¹¹ Epist. Divi. Thomæ, l. i. Epist. 126. p. 190.

¹² Gervas, col. 1669.

¹³ Id. ibid

¹⁴ Quadrilog. l. i. c. 22.

Cent. XII. same marks of friendship as on former occasions¹⁵. The King at the same time gave a still plainer proof of his dissatisfaction with the primate, by obliging him to resign the archdeaconry of Canterbury, which he did with great reluctance.¹⁶

1163. Breach between the King and Becket. Alexander III., the pope acknowledged by the kings of France and England, held a general council of the prelates of his party at Tours, in April A.D. 1163.¹⁷ The Archbishop of Canterbury was present at this council; and was treated with every possible mark of respect and honour by the Pope and cardinals, who were not ignorant that vanity and the love of admiration were his predominant passions¹⁸. It is highly probable, that at this interview Becket was animated by the Pope in his design of becoming the champion for the liberties of the church and the immunities of the clergy. This much at least is certain, that, soon after his return, he began to prosecute this design with less reserve than formerly, which produced an open breach between him and his sovereign.¹⁹

Opposite views of the King and Becket. Nothing could be more opposite than the sentiments and views of the King and primate, concerning the immunities and independency which began to be claimed by the clergy about this time. The former was determined to be the

¹⁵ Diceto apud X Script. col. 534.

¹⁶ Id. ibid.

¹⁷ Du Pin, cent. 12. p. 213.

¹⁸ Vita S. T. Becket, c. 14. p. 28.

¹⁹ Inett's Church Hist. b. 2. c. 12. p. 238.

sovereign

sovereign of all his subjects, clergy as well as laity; to oblige them to obey his laws, or to answer for their disobedience in his courts of justice: the latter maintained that the clergy were subject only to the laws of the church, were to be judged only in spiritual courts, and to be punished only by ecclesiastical censures.²⁰ Cent. XII.

The dissolute lives of the clergy at this time, and the atrocious crimes committed by some of them, made it necessary to bring this question to a speedy issue²¹. In order to this, the King called a council of the clergy and nobility at Westminster; which he opened with an excellent speech, in which he complained of the mischiefs occasioned by the thefts, robberies, and murders, committed by the clergy with impunity; and concluded with requiring, that the Archbishop and the other bishops would consent, that when a clerk was degraded for any crime, he should be immediately delivered to the King's officers, that he might be punished for the same crime, according to the laws of the land²². The primate, dreading the compliance of the other bishops with so reasonable a demand, earnestly intreated that they might be allowed to hold a private conference amongst themselves before they returned an answer; which was granted. In this conference, the other bishops acknow-

Council of
Westmin-
ster.

²⁰ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1670. Vita S. Thomæ, p. 33.
R. Hoveden, pars posterior, p. 282. col. 2.

²¹ W. Neubrigenf. l. 2. c. 16. p. 158.

²² Stephanides, Vita S. Thomæ, p. 29.

Cent. XII.

ledged, that the King's demand appeared to them to be agreeable to reason, law, and Scripture. But the primate insisted with so much warmth and obstinacy on the immunities granted to the clergy by the canons of the church, that he silenced all his brethren, and persuaded them to return this answer to the King,—That they could not comply with his demand. On this the council broke up in confusion.²³

1164.

Becket
promises to
obey the
constitu-
tions of
Clarendon.

Though Henry had not been successful in his first attempt to persuade the clergy to relinquish the pernicious immunities to which they laid claim, he determined to carry his point, if possible, and had frequent conferences with the primate and other prelates, in which he employed every art to prevail upon them to comply with his desire. At length, by the earnest intreaties of his friends, Becket began to yield a little; and waiting upon the King at Oxford, he consented to promise obedience to the laws of the land, without annexing to this promise, as he had always done before, a saving of the privileges of his order²⁴. The King, highly pleased with this success, and resolving to have this consent of the prelates, to obey the laws of the land without reserve, ratified in the most solemn manner, called a parliament or great council of the clergy and barons to meet at Clarendon, on the festival of St. Hilary, A.D. 1164.²⁵ But

²³ Stephanides, *Vita S. Thomæ*, p. 31.

²⁴ *Vita S. Thomæ*, c. 20. p. 37.

²⁵ *Gervas apud X Script.* col. 1385.

before

before the meeting of this assembly, Becket had again changed his mind, and when he appeared before the council, he obstinately refused to promise obedience to the laws in the terms to which he had agreed at Oxford. At this the King was equally disappointed and enraged, the most violent debates between the bishops and the barons ensued, which continued three days, in which time every possible mean was used to overcome the obstinacy of the primate, and even threats of immediate violence were not spared. At last, by the tears and intreaties of two knights-templars, Richard of Hastings and Hosteus of Bolonia, for whom he had a great esteem, he was again softened, and appearing before the council, he, with all the other bishops, solemnly promised and swore, in the words of truth, and without any reserve, to obey all the royal laws and customs which had been established in England in the reign of His Majesty's grandfather Henry I.²⁶ These laws and customs, commonly called *the Constitutions of Clarendon*, were put in writing, read in the council, and one copy of them delivered to the primate, another to the Archbishop of York, and a third deposited among the records of the kingdom²⁷. These famous constitutions, which were sixteen in number, reduced ecclesiastics of all denominations to a due subjection to the laws of their

²⁶ Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 21. p. 39.

²⁷ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1386. 1388.

country,

Cent. XII. country, limited the jurisdiction of spiritual courts, guarded against appeals to Rome, and the pronouncing of interdicts and excommunications, without the consent of the King or his justiciary²⁸. In a word, they were in all respects wise and just; but at the same time so evidently calculated to put a stop to the encroachments of the court of Rome, and to set bounds to the extravagant immunities of the clergy, that they were equally odious to both; who never speak of them but in the harshest terms²⁹. Henry made some attempts to prevail upon the Pope, who was under great obligations to him, to give his sanction to the constitutions of Clarendon; but in vain.³⁰

Becket attempts to leave England, but is put back.

As it was with visible reluctance that Becket had sworn to obey those hated constitutions; so he soon began to give indications of his repentance, by extraordinary acts of mortification, and by refraining from performing the sacred offices of his function³¹. He also dispatched a special messenger, with an account of what had happened, to the Pope; who sent him a bull, releasing him from the obligation of his oath, and enjoining him to resume the duties of his sacred office³². But though this bull reconciled his conscience to the violation of his oath, it did

²⁸ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1386. 1388. M. Paris, p. 71. Spelman. Con. t. 2. p. 63, 64.

²⁹ M. Paris, p. 71.

³⁰ Epistolæ Tho. Cantuar. l. 1. Ep. 4. p. 12.

³¹ Vita S. Thomæ, c. 22. p. 40.

³² M. Paris, p. 71, 72.

not dispel his fears of the royal indignation; to avoid which he determined to retire privately out of the kingdom. With this intention he went to the port of Romney, accompanied only by two faithful friends, and there embarked for France; but being twice put back by contrary winds, he landed, and returned to Canterbury. About the same time the King's officers came to that city, with orders to seize his goods and revenues; but, on his appearing, they desisted from executing these orders³³. Conscious that he had transgressed those laws which he had sworn to observe, by attempting to leave the kingdom without permission, he waited upon the King at Woodstock; who received him without any other expression of displeasure, than asking him, if he had left England because he thought it too little to contain them both?³⁴

Soon after this interview, fresh misunderstandings arose between the King and the primate, who publicly protected the clergy from those punishments which their crimes deserved, and flatly refused to obey a summons to attend the King's court. Henry was so much enraged at those daring insults on the laws and the royal authority, that he determined to call him to an account for them before his peers, in a parliament which he summoned to meet at Northampton, October

Transac-
tions of
the par-
liament at
North-
ampton.

³³ M. Paris, p. 71, 72. Vita S. Thomæ, c. 21. p. 22. Diceto apud X Script. col. 537.

³⁴ Vita S. Thomæ, p. 43.

Cent. XII. 17th, A. D. 1164.³⁵ This parliament was uncommonly full, as the whole nation was deeply interested in the issue of this contest between the crown and the mitre³⁶. On the first day, the King in person accused the Archbishop of contumacy, in refusing to attend his court when he was summoned: against which accusation having made only a very weak defence, he was un-animously found guilty, by the bishops, as well as by the temporal barons, and all his goods and chattels were declared to be forfeited³⁷. To this sentence Becket, with much reluctance, submitted; and the King agreeing to accept of five hundred pounds for the forfeiture, the bishops became sureties for their primate. On the second day of the parliament, the King made a demand of five hundred pounds which he had lent to Becket when he was chancellor; who alleged, in his own defence, that this sum had been given to him, and not lent. But not being able to produce any evidence of this grant, he was adjudged to repay the money. To this sentence he also submitted; and prevailed upon five of his vassals to become his sureties, the bishops declining to be any further bound³⁸. But, on the third day, being Saturday, a much heavier demand was made on the Archbishop by the King,

³⁵ M. Paris, p. 72.

³⁶ See Appendix to Lord Lyttleton's History of Henry II. vol. 4. octavo, p. 428.

³⁷ Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 25. p. 47. ³⁸ Id. ibid. c. 26. p. 48.

who gave in a charge of no less a sum than two Cent. XII.
hundred and fifty thousand marks, which he
affirmed that prelate had received from vacant
benefices while he was chancellor, and required
the parliament to oblige him to account for that
sum. Becket, astonished at this demand, begged
leave to consult with his brethren the bishops
apart, before he returned an answer; which was
granted. When these prelates had retired into a
separate room, and their primate had demanded
their advice, they differed very widely in their
opinions; some (who were in the interest of the
court) advising him to resign his see, as the only
means of appeasing the King's wrath and pre-
serving himself from ruin; while others opposed
this as a dangerous precedent, and too great an
act of submission to the civil power. When they
could not come to any unanimous resolution,
Becket sent messengers to the King and barons,
to crave a short delay; which was granted till
Monday³⁹. The proceedings of this day struck
terror into so many of Becket's retainers, that
when he returned to his lodgings, he was attended
by very few. On Monday he was seized with a
violent colic, which put it out of his power to
appear in parliament; but he sent a solemn
promise that he would appear on the next day,
though he should be carried in his bed. Early
on Tuesday morning many of the bishops waited
upon him in his chamber, and earnestly intreated

³⁹ Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 27. p. 48, 49, 50.

Cent. XII. him to resign his office; assuring him, that if he did not, he would be tried for perjury and high treason. But he reproached them bitterly for deserting him in this contest; charged them not to presume to sit in judgment upon their primate; and assured them, that though he should be burnt alive, he would not abandon his station, nor forsake his flock. Having celebrated mass, he set out from his house, dressed in his pontifical robes, with a consecrated host in one hand; and when he approached the hall where the King and parliament sat, he took the cross from the bearer, and carried it in the other hand⁴⁰. When the King was informed of the posture in which the primate was advancing, he retired hastily into an inner room, commanding all the bishops and barons to follow him. Here he complained in very severe terms of the intolerable audacity of Becket; and was answered by the barons, “That he had always been a vain and obstinate man, and ought never to have been raised to so high a station: that he had been guilty of high treason, both against the King and kingdom; and they demanded that he should be immediately punished as a traitor⁴¹.” The clamours of the barons against Becket became so loud and vehement, that Roger Archbishop of York, apprehending that they would proceed to acts of violence, retired hastily, that he might not be a witness of the bloody scene. The

⁴⁰ Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 30.⁴¹ Id. ibid. c. 31.

Bishop of Exeter went into the great hall, where the primate sat almost alone, and, falling at his feet, conjured him to take pity on himself and on his brethren, and preserve them all from destruction, by complying with the King's will. But, with a stern countenance, he commanded him to be gone. The bishops, apprehensive of incurring the indignation of the Pope, if they proceeded to sit in judgment on their primate, and of the King and barons if they refused, begged that they might be allowed to hold a private consultation; which was granted. After deliberating some time, they agreed to renounce all subjection to Becket as their primate; to prosecute him for perjury before the Pope; and, if possible, to procure his deposition. This resolution they reported to the King and barons; who, not knowing that Becket had already obtained a bull from the Pope, absolving him from his oath, too rashly gave their consent; and the bishops went into the hall in a body, and intimated their resolution to the Archbishop; who not deigning to give them any answer, except "I hear," a profound silence ensued⁴². In the mean time, the King and barons came to a resolution, that if the Archbishop did not immediately give in his accounts, they would declare him guilty of perjury and treason; and sent out certain barons to communicate this resolution. Robert Earl of Leicester, who was at the head of

Cent. XII.

⁴² Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 32. p. 55, 56.

Cent. XII. these barons, addressing himself to Becket, said, “The King commands you to come immediately, and give in your accounts; or else hear your sentence.” “My sentence!” cried he, starting to his feet, “No! my son, hear me first. I was given to the church free, and discharged from all claims, when I was elected Archbishop of Canterbury, and therefore I never will give any account. Besides, my son, neither law nor reason permits sons to judge their father. I decline the jurisdiction of the King and barons, and appeal to God, and my lord the Pope, by whom alone I am to be judged. For you, my brethren and fellow-bishops, I summon you to appear before the Pope, to be judged by him for having obeyed men rather than God. I put myself, the church of Canterbury, and all that belongs to it, under the protection of God, and the Pope, under whose protection I depart hence.” On this he walked out of the hall in great state, leaving the whole assembly so much disconcerted by his boldness, that none had the courage to stop him⁴³. Some indeed pursued him with opprobrious language, which he returned. When he reached the street, he was received by a prodigious mob, who conducted him to his lodgings with loud acclamations. A circumstance which flattered his vanity, and increased his obstinacy.

⁴³ Vita S. Thomæ; l. i. c. 33. p. 57.

In the evening, Becket, in order to conceal his intention of making his escape, sent three bishops to the King, to ask his permission to retire out of the kingdom; about which Henry said he would deliberate with his council next day. The primate, who never intended to wait the result of this deliberation, arose about midnight, and passing through a postern gate, left Northampton with only two monks in his company. After lurking in different places, and travelling only by night, he arrived at Sandwich, where he embarked on board a fisher-boat before dawn, on Tuesday, November 10th (exactly two weeks after he left Northampton), and towards evening landed at Boulogne.⁴⁴

Cent. XII.

Becket makes his escape out of England.

The flight of the Archbishop occasioned no small bustle as soon as it was known. His friends either concealed themselves or fled. The King convened the bishops and barons, to consider what was proper to be done on that event, which seems to have been unexpected. After spending some time in consultation, it was agreed to send a splendid embassy, consisting of five bishops, and several noblemen of the first rank to the Pope, to prosecute the Archbishop, and, if possible, to procure his deposition. These ambassadors were furnished with a large sum of money (which was well known to be the most prevailing advocate in the papal court), and with letters to the Earl of Flanders and the

Parliament agree to send a splendid embassy to the Pope, to procure Becket's deposition.

⁴⁴ Vita S. Thomæ, l. i. c. 35. l. 2. c. 2.

Cent. XII. King of France, intreating those princes not to afford the fugitive prelate an asylum in their dominions. It was also agreed to protect the friends and property of the primate from all violence, till the issue of this embassy should be known; and a proclamation was issued for that purpose⁴⁵. The King's ambassadors sailed from Dover about the same time that Becket sailed from Sandwich, and they both arrived at St. Omer's on the same day, November 11th⁴⁶. Here the latter lay concealed in a hermitage belonging to the abbey of St. Bertin, till the departure of the former; when he threw off his disguise, resumed his own name (which he had exchanged for that of *Brother Christian*), and was treated with the greatest respect and kindness by the clergy and people of those parts.⁴⁷

Ill success
of the Eng-
lish am-
bassadors at
the court of
France.

When the English ambassadors arrived in the French court, which was then at Compeigne, they met with a very cold reception. Louis, who was a superstitious bigot, and a great admirer of Becket, with whom he held a private correspondence, was much shocked at the following expression in the King of England's letter:—"Thomas, late Archbishop of Canterbury." "Late archbishop!" exclaimed he:—"Who hath deposed him? I am a king as well as your master, and yet I have no power to depose the meanest clerk in my dominions."

⁴⁵ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 1. p. 63. Stephanidis Vita Thomæ Cant. p. 48.

⁴⁶ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 5. p. 68.

⁴⁷ Id. ibid. c. 5, 6.

He

He rejected all the requisitions of the ambassadors; and plainly intimated, that he would protect the persecuted prelate with all his power⁴⁸. The two monks who had accompanied Becket in his flight, followed the English ambassadors from St. Omer's to the court of France; where they were received in the kindest manner by the King, who promised their master his friendship and protection; adding, "That it had always been the glory of the kings of France, to protect the persecuted of all nations, especially the clergy."⁴⁹

From Compeigne the ambassadors proceeded to Sens, where the Pope then resided; being followed in this journey also by the above two monks; who were first admitted to an audience of His Holiness. Herbert, one of those monks, began his harangue in this canting strain: "Holy father, your son Joseph no longer reigns in Egypt, but the Egyptians have almost killed him, and forced him to flee." When he described the persecutions which his master had endured in England, and the toils and dangers of his escape, the father of fathers (as he tells us) burst into tears, and said, "And doth your master still live? He may claim the glory of a martyr, though he is in the flesh."⁵⁰

The English ambassadors were admitted to an audience of the Pope and cardinals the day after.

Becket's agents admitted to an audience of the Pope.
Speeches of the English

⁴⁸ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 7.

⁴⁹ Id. ibid.

⁵⁰ Id. ibid. c. 8. p. 72.

Cent. XII. **Robert Foliot Bishop of London**, who spoke first, using some severe expressions concerning the Archbishop, was interrupted by the Pope; which disconcerted him so much that he could not proceed. Hilary Bishop of Chichester, who was very vain of his eloquence, had no better fortune; for happening to pronounce a Latin word wrong (*oportuebat* for *oportebat*), so loud a laugh was raised, that he was quite confounded and put to silence. The other three bishops observing the ill success of their brethren, said but little. The Earl of Arundel, having apologized for his ignorance of the Latin language, made a speech in English; in which he artfully extolled the authority of the Pope, before which, he said, all the world bowed; he magnified the veneration of his sovereign for the person and character of His Holiness, of which, he observed, the present embassy, consisting of the most honourable persons in his kingdom, was a proof; he even spoke in very respectful terms of the Archbishop, and said, that England might have been perfectly happy under a good prince and an excellent pastor, if an unfortunate difference had not broken out between them; and concluded, with intreating the Pope to restore peace between these two personages, by commanding the Archbishop to return to England, and by sending a legate thither to terminate all their disputes.⁵¹

⁵¹ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 9. p. 74, 75.

This soothing speech was very favourably heard; and the Pope, having consulted with the cardinals, told the ambassadors, that no answer could be given to their petition till the Archbishop had been heard. But the ambassadors insisting on an immediate answer, because their master had commanded them to stay only three days, His Holiness was thrown into great perplexity. Some of the cardinals, who had been secretly gained by the ambassadors, pleaded earnestly for granting their petition; and, as the schism still subsisted, the Pope was apprehensive, that if he gave a flat denial, the King of England might abandon his party, and embrace that of his opponent. On the other hand, it was thought equally imprudent and dishonourable, to abandon the Archbishop, who had suffered so much for the immunities of the clergy. The Pope, therefore, after some deliberation, adhered to his former answer: on which the ambassadors left his court, and hastened back to England, where they arrived about Christmas A.D. 1164.⁵²

As soon as Becket was assured of the favour and protection of the King of France, he collected his scattered followers, and set out from St. Omer's. When he arrived at Soissons, where the French court then resided, the King paid him the first visit, embraced him in the most affectionate manner, and obliged him to accept of an order on the royal treasury for every thing

Cent. XII.
The Pope's
answer.
The am-
bassadors
return to
England.

Reception
of Becket
by the
King of
France
and the
Pope.
The con-
stitutions
of Claren-
don con-
demned.

⁵² Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 9. p. 75, 76.

Cent. XII.

he needed while he remained in France. Having spent three days at Soissons, he departed with a numerous retinue for Sens, which he entered in a kind of triumph, and was received with the greatest respect and kindness by the Pope. Next day a solemn council of all the cardinals and prelates was held, in which he was seated on the Pope's right hand, and desired to explain his cause without rising from his seat. He made a very artful speech; in which he magnified the high favour in which he had long stood with the King of England, which he said he could recover when he pleased, if he would abandon the cause of the church, and submit to the constitutions of Clarendon. He then produced a copy of these constitutions, which he desired might be read. Nothing could be better contrived than this to secure the favour of the Pope and cardinals, as several of these constitutions were directly calculated to abridge their power and abolish their usurpations. Accordingly, they were no sooner read, than the whole assembly broke out into the strongest expressions of their abhorrence of them, and into the highest encomiums on the Archbishop, declaring, that his cause was the cause of God and the church, and that he ought to be supported⁵³. On the day after, in a private consistory, Becket, still further to ingratiate himself, resigned his see into the hands of the Pope, pretending, that his conscience was much disquieted

⁵³ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. p. 77, 78.

Cent. XII.

for his having been advanced to that dignity by the influence of the King. Some of the cardinals, who were secretly in the interest of the court of England, and by the historians of those times are called the pharisees, proposed to accept of this resignation, as the best way of terminating this dispute; but the majority rejected this proposal with disdain, declaring, that if Becket was abandoned, no bishop would dare to resist his prince, and the church would be ruined. By their advice, the Pope restored the archbishopric to Becket, with high encomiums on his piety and fortitude, at the same time appointing him to take up his residence in the abbey of Pontigni in Burgundy.⁵⁴

When Henry received the report of his ambassadors on their return from Sens, he was highly offended both with the Pope and the Archbishop, and resolved to make them feel the weight of his resentment. In order to this, he prohibited the payment of Peter-pence, and commanded all clerks who presumed to appeal to the Pope, to be imprisoned⁵⁵. He also commanded all the goods and revenues of the Archbishop, and of all the clergy who adhered to him, to be seized. He did not even stop here, but confiscated the estates, and banished the persons, of all the primate's friends, retainers, and rela-

A.D. 1165.

Severe
measures
against
Becket
and his
friends.

⁵⁴ Vita S. Thomæ, c. 12. p. 79, 80.

⁵⁵ Epistolæ Divi Thomæ, l. 1. ep. 13, 14, 15. Hoveden Annal. p. 285. col. 1.

Cent. XII.

tions, to the number of about four hundred, obliging them to take an oath to present themselves before Becket, in hopes that the sight of so many persons involved in ruin on his account, would shake his resolution, and induce him to submit. But this step was as imprudent as it was unjust. For it made the King appear in the light of a cruel tyrant, and excited universal compassion towards the Archbishop and his exiled friends, who were so hospitably entertained by the King of France, and his nobility and clergy, that they lived more happily than in their own country.⁵⁶

Interview
between
Henry and
the King
of France.

The kings of France and England had an interview at Gizors, in Easter week, A.D. 1165., in which the affair of Becket was the chief subject of their negotiations. But as Henry insisted on the submission of the Archbishop to the constitutions of Clarendon, and Louis refused to withdraw his protection from him, nothing was concluded⁵⁷. An interview was proposed about the same time between King Henry and the Pope; which did not take place; because the King proposed that the Archbishop should not be present; to which His Holiness returned this haughty answer: “ That no man had a right to exclude
“ any person from the presence of the sovereign
“ pontiff, whose prerogative it had always been,
“ to protect oppressed exiles from the violence

⁵⁶ Stephanid. in Vita S. Thomæ, p. 52. Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 14. p. 82.

⁵⁷ J. Sarisbur. Epist. 31.

“ of

“ of the wicked, and even from the rage of
 “ princes.”⁵⁸ Cent. XII.

Henry was so much engaged for the greatest part of this year, after his return from the continent, in his wars against the princes of Wales, that he had no leisure to attend to the affairs of the church, or of the exiled Archbishop, who continued to reside in the abbey of Pontigni. In this retreat, his historians tell us, he spent his time in reading the scriptures, and in devout exercises, and sometimes amused himself, by assisting the monks in their rural labours⁵⁹. But there is sufficient evidence, that he was far from being unmindful of his secular interests. For in this interval he wrote many letters to different persons in England, in which he praises some for their adherence to, and reproaches others for their apostasy from, the cause of God; with which honourable appellation he dignified his own side of the question in his dispute with the King⁶⁰. He also engaged the Pope to write letters to several persons in England, exhorting and commanding them to espouse his cause⁶¹. He had also agents in the courts of Rome and France, as well as in England, who laboured to increase the number of his friends, and to raise up enemies to his soveriegn⁶². At his instigation the Pope published a bull, annulling the sentence

Conduct
of the
Pope and
Becket,
offensive
to Henry.

⁵⁸ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 16. p. 84.

⁵⁹ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1400.

⁶⁰ Vide Epistolas Thomæ Cantuarien. Epist. 34. 40. 52. &c. &c.

⁶¹ Id. ibid.

⁶² Baron. Anaal. ann. 1168.

Cent. XII. pronounced in the first session of the parliament of Northampton against Becket for contumacy, on this insolent pretence, that it did not become inferiors to judge their superior⁶³. In the same strain Becket wrote several letters to Henry, in which he plainly tells him, — That kings received all their power from the church; but priests received their power from Christ, and were the undoubted fathers and masters of kings and princes⁶⁴. On these and other accounts, Henry was so much offended, both with the Archbishop and the Pope, that he began to entertain thoughts of abandoning the party of Alexander, and of embracing that of his rival Paschal; which he intimated in a letter to the Archbishop of Cologne.⁶⁵

A.D. 1166.

Becket excommunicates many persons, and threatens to excommunicate the King.

Henry having returned to the continent in the spring of this year, his dispute with Becket became more violent. For that furious prelate, finding that his monitory and threatening letters had produced no effect, became impatient to strike the last decisive blow, by pronouncing the sentence of excommunication against his King and benefactor; a sentence which, in those times, made the greatest princes tremble on their thrones. But from this he was restrained, for some time, by the greater timidity or greater policy of the Pope, who advised him to exercise a little longer forbearance with the Prince, per-

⁶³ Epistol. S. Thomæ, Ep. 49.

⁶⁴ Id. Ep. 64, 65, 66.

⁶⁵ Id. Ep. 69.

mitting

mitting him to do as he pleased with others⁶⁶. In consequence of this permission he excommunicated John of Oxford, who had been much employed by the King, and suspended the Bishop of Salisbury, for admitting John into the deanry of that church. He also excommunicated Richard de Lucy, chief justiciary, and Joceline de Baliol, because they had been the chief promoters of the constitutions of Clarendon; with Ralph de Broc, Hugh de St. Clare, and Thomas Fitz-Bernard, because they had seized the possessions of the church of Canterbury. All these censures he notified in a letter directed to all the bishops of the province of Canterbury; acquainting them at the same time, that he had delayed a little the excommunication of the King, in hopes of his repentance; but that if he did not repent very soon, he would delay no longer.⁶⁷

Not only the Bishop of Salisbury, but all the other bishops and clergy, were alarmed at these violent proceedings, and more violent threatenings; and wrote a letter in the name of all the clergy of his province to their primate; in which they represented, with great freedom,—his ingratitude to his gracious sovereign, who had raised him from a low condition to the highest honours;—the uncanonical means by which he had obtained his see;—the informality and severity of his censures already pronounced;—the injustice and danger of those which he meditated

Cent. XII.

Letter of the English bishops to Becket.

⁶⁶ Epistol. S. Thomæ, Ep. 54.⁶⁷ Id. Ep. 96. 100.

against

Cent. XII. against the King;—and concluded with an appeal to the Pope against all his proceedings⁶⁸. But Becket was so far from being restrained by this letter, to which he wrote a very long and spirited answer, that he prepared in earnest to execute his threats. With this resolution he acquainted the Pope, by a letter, in which he painted the King of England in the most odious colours, as a cruel, impious, unrelenting persecutor, who had tried and condemned Christ, at Northampton, in his person.⁶⁹

Henry's precautions against the effects of his threatened excommunication.

When Henry heard of Becket's design, he was much alarmed; and called a council of his barons and prelates at Chinon in Touraine, to consider what was to be done to prevent his excommunication, or to guard against its consequences. At the opening of this council, the King is said to have been much agitated, to have even shed tears, and to have spoken with much bitterness against Becket, who, he said, seemed to be determined to ruin both his soul and body. After long deliberation, the council could think of no better expedient than an appeal to the Pope; and two bishops were sent to Pontigni to notify that appeal. When these prelates reached the place of his retreat, they were told, that the Archbishop had gone a few days before to Soissons, to perform his devotions at the shrine of St. Dranius, the patron of combatants, to implore his protection in that dangerous conflict in

⁶⁸ Epistol. S. Thomæ, p. 126.

⁶⁹ Id. Ep. 129.

which

which he was engaged against the King of England. This prevented their giving him a regular notification of the appeal⁷⁰. Henry, still apprehensive that nothing would stop the furious zeal of Becket, sent orders into England, to guard the sea-coasts with the greatest care, to search all who came from the continent, and if letters of excommunication or interdict were found upon any person, to punish him, if he was a clergyman, by castration; if he was a layman, by death⁷¹. So terrible to the greatest princes were the thunders of the church in those days of darkness and superstition!

Becket, in his return from the shrine of St. Dransius, full of confidence in the protection of that courageous saint, halted at Vizelay, where he designed to pronounce the dreaded anathema against his sovereign, on Whitsunday A. D. 1166.; but was prevented by a message from his great friend the King of France, who acquainted him, that Henry had fallen into a dangerous sickness, and advised him to delay the final sentence against him for some time. Not daring to disregard this advice, and yet determined to do something decisive, he mounted the rostrum on Whitsunday, and, before a crowded audience, published sentences of excommunication against all the King of England's ministers and chief confidants, by name; declaring, that he would

Cent. XII.

Becket, prevented by the King of France from excommunicating Henry, excommunicates his ministers.

⁷⁰ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 140.

⁷¹ See Lord Lyttleton's Hist. Henry II. octavo, vol. 4. p. 478.

Cent. XII. in a short time pronounce a similar sentence against the King himself if he did not speedily repent, and repair the injuries he had done to the church. At the same time, he declared the impious constitutions of Clarendon null and void, absolved all the bishops of England from the unlawful oath they had taken to obey them, and excommunicated all persons who paid them any regard⁷². Henry was so much offended at these presumptuous proceedings, that he threatened the monks of the Cistercian order, that he would expel them out of all his dominions, if they entertained his enemy the Archbishop of Canterbury any longer at Pontigni; which obliged him to remove to Sens about Martinmas A. D. 1166., where an honourable asylum was provided for him by the King of France.⁷³

Change in
the politics
of the
court of
Rome.

In the mean time the agents of both parties were negotiating with great eagerness at the court of Rome; and those of the Archbishop, October 22d, A. D. 1166., obtained for their master a legantine commission over the province of Canterbury⁷⁴. This was not only a mark of the Pope's favour, but a great addition of power to the Archbishop, which he was preparing to use with vigour, when the balance suddenly turned against him at the court of Rome. This change in the papal politics was owing to several circumstances which are but

⁷² Epist. S. Thomæ, l. i. Ep. 140. ⁷³ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2.

⁷⁴ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. i. Ep. 118.

imper-

imperfectly known. The Emperor had gained some advantages in Italy, which made His Holiness set a greater value on the favour of the King of England: and the Marquis of Montferrat, who was one of the Pope's most powerful allies, had asked one of Henry's daughters in marriage for his son, and warmly seconded the solicitations of the royal agents; who were also better provided with money than those of the Archbishop⁷⁵. These agents obtained a very soothing letter from the Pope to their master the King of England, dated December 20th, A. D. 1166.; in which he acquaints him, that he had given a commission to two cardinals to determine all controversies between him and the Archbishop of Canterbury, and between that prelate and the bishops of England; and that these legates would set out on their journey in January;—that he had given his legates authority to absolve all the King's servants and subjects who had been excommunicated;—and that he had inhibited the Archbishop from issuing any censures against him, or any of his subjects, while this cause was depending.⁷⁶

Nothing could exceed the consternation of Becket when he heard of this bull, especially as he was informed at the same time, that the King's agents, John of Oxford, John Cumin, and Ralph Tamiwurde, had obtained copies of all the letters

1167.

Consternation of
Becket.

⁷⁵ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 130.

⁷⁶ See Lord Lyttleton's Hist. Henry II. vol. 4. octavo, p. 478, 479.

that

Cent. XII.

that he and his friends had written to the Pope against the King⁷⁷. Unwilling to believe so much ill news, he wrote to John of Poitou, his agent at the court of Rome, earnestly intreating him to discover the truth, and acquaint him with it; adding, “ If these things which are reported be true, my lord the Pope hath suffocated and strangled not only me, but also himself and all the clergy.” He tells him further, that since these reports arose, the English bishops and clergy paid no regard to his commands, looking on his deposition as unavoidable; and that the French nobility and prelates, who had hitherto entertained his exiled friends, now began to discard them.⁷⁸

He is supported by the King of France.

The truth is, the affairs of Becket were in a very bad condition at this time; and it is highly probable that Henry would have obtained a complete victory in this famous contest, if the King of France had not interposed. But that prince, whose reigning passions were bigotry in religion, and enmity to the King of England, was more displeased, if possible, than Becket himself, with the Pope; declaring, that he would not suffer the legates to enter his dominions; and that he was as much offended with them as if they had come to pull the crown off his own head⁷⁹. The strong remonstrances of Louis, the loud complaints and importunities of Becket, together

⁷⁷ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. i. Ep. 164.

⁷⁸ Id. ibid. Ep. 165.

⁷⁹ Id. ibid. Ep. 166.

with

with some changes in the political state of Europe, gave a new turn to this affair less favourable to Henry.⁸⁰ Cent. XII.

Though the legates (who were William of Pavia, a cardinal priest, and a declared friend of the King of England, and Otto, a cardinal deacon, who was suspected to be of a venal disposition,) set out from Rome in January, they met with so many interruptions in their journey, from the wars in Italy and other causes, that they did not reach Montpellier till the end of October A.D. 1167.⁸¹ On their arrival in France, a correspondence commenced between them and Becket on the subject of their commission; in which the latter discovers the most intolerable arrogance and inflexible obstinacy, denying that they had any authority to act as judges, but only as mediators between him and the King⁸². This misunderstanding about the nature of their commission, was owing to the artful dissingenuous conduct of the Pope, who, in order to please both parties, had represented it, in his letters to the King, as a commission to judge and determine, but in his letters to the Archbishop as a commission to negotiate a reconciliation⁸³. The truth seems to have been, that the Pope had given the legates a commission to act as judges, but had given them also secret instructions to act only as mediators.⁸⁴

⁸⁰ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 24.⁸¹ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 2. Ep. 4.⁸² Id. l. 2. Ep. 9, 10, 11, 12, 13.⁸³ Id. l. 2. Ep. 1, 2.⁸⁴ Id. l. 2. c. 22.

Cent. XII.

Conde-
scension of
the King.

When the legates had an interview with the King of England in the city of Maine, soon after their arrival in France, and communicated their instructions to that prince, he expressed great displeasure that these instructions were different from what the Pope had given him reason to expect. He complained also, that the Archbishop had stirred up both the King of France and the Earl of Flanders to make war upon him. He affirmed likewise, that the account which had been given to the Pope by the Archbishop of the constitutions of Clarendon, was false; which the English bishops then present also attested. He added further, that if any laws had been made in his own time inconsistent with the laws of the church, he was willing that they should be abolished; and at the request of the English bishops he consented that the legates should act either as judges or mediators between him and the Archbishop.⁸⁵

Inflexibi-
lity of
Becket.

After these concessions, which seemed to lay a foundation for an agreement, the legates, with some difficulty, procured an interview with Becket, November 17th, A.D. 1167.; at which he behaved with great haughtiness and inflexibility, refusing to submit to them as judges, and declining to give them any ground to proceed upon as mediators with the least hopes of success. For to all his seeming concessions he constantly added, — a saving of the honour of God,

⁸⁵ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 2. Ep. 28.

— of the apostolic see, — and of his own person, Cent. XII.
 — of all the liberties and of all the possessions of
 the church, which they knew the King would
 not admit, as it would be a source of endless
 disputes.⁸⁶

When the legates reported what had passed at this interview to the King and the English bishops, who were with him in Normandy, that prince and these prelates protested, that they had performed their part, in offering to submit to them either as judges or mediators, and that the Archbishop had not performed his part, as he had not made a similar submission; and further, in order to screen themselves from the severe censures which they dreaded from that enraged prelate, they appealed to the Pope, and put themselves and the kingdom of England under the immediate protection of the holy see, until the feast of St. Martin, in the year following. The King and bishops also requested the legates to notify their appeal to the Archbishop, and to inhibit him from issuing any censures against them in the interval. With this request the legates complied, and prohibited the Archbishop, in their own, and in the Pope's name, from inflicting any censures on the King or kingdom of England during the time of the appeal⁸⁷. No hungry lion was ever more enraged at having his prey torn from him when he was ready to devour it, than Becket was at this prohibition.

The King
appeals to
Rome.

⁸⁶ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 2. Ep. 28. 30.

⁸⁷ Id. l. 2. Ep. 29.

Cent. XII. He complained of it to the Pope and cardinals in the bitterest terms, painting the King of England in the blackest colours, and accusing the legates of having been bribed by that prince.⁸⁸

1168. **Attempt to reconcile the King and Becket mis-carries.** The prohibition of the Pope's legates produced a suspension of hostilities for some time between the King and Becket, who was restrained, much against his will, from launching the thunders of the church against his sovereign. The Earl of Flanders made an attempt to put an end to this long and violent dispute, and in order to this, he brought Becket with him, about Midsummer A. D. 1168., to the place appointed for a conference between the kings of France and England. But Henry, secured from the censures of the church by the prohibition of the legates, and still farther by a bull he had about that time received from the Pope, suspending the Archbishop's spiritual authority over him and his subjects till he had recovered his favour, would make no advances towards a reconciliation, nor so much as admit Becket into his presence. That prelate was therefore obliged to return to the place of his retirement, tormented with mortified pride and impotent resentment.⁸⁹

1169. **Another attempt towards a reconciliation unsuccessful.** The kings of France and England had another interview, January 6th, A. D. 1169., at which a treaty of peace was concluded. Two abbots, with Bernard de Corillo, a monk, who had acted as a kind of mediators between the two

⁸⁸ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 2. Ep. 46, 47.

⁸⁹ Id. l. 2. c. 32. 58.

monarchs, brought Becket with them to the place of this interview, in hopes of bringing about a reconciliation between him and his sovereign. To accomplish this, they were at great pains to persuade that haughty prelate to behave in the most humble and respectful manner to his much-offended prince, in order to appease his anger, and facilitate an accommodation; in which, being seconded by the King of France, and all the princes and prelates who were present, they at length prevailed. Accordingly, when he was introduced to Henry, he fell upon his knees, and said, "I submit myself to the mercy of God and the King, to the honour of God and the King;" a form of words that were very artfully contrived, and full of ambiguity. This did not escape the penetration of Henry, who expressed his dissatisfaction with this form of submission, and insisted that the Archbishop should promise, in plain words, "That he would obey those laws and customs which the holy archbishops of Canterbury had obeyed in the times of former kings, and which he had solemnly sworn to obey." This Becket refused to do; alleging that his predecessors had not been pressed to make such a promise. But the King insisting upon it, and many of the nobles and bishops vehemently urging him to comply, he at last consented to make the promise required, with a saving of the honour of God and of the rights of his order^o. The

Cent. XII.

^o Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 4. Ep. 8.

Cent. XII.

King, well knowing what was intended by these savings, rejected this offer; and, addressing himself to the King of France, said, with an affecting air and tone of voice, “ My liege lord, “ I earnestly entreat your attention. I know “ that whatever happens to displease him, he “ will say is contrary to the honour of God, and “ the rights of his order. But that it may appear to all the world that I do not oppose the “ honour of God, or the real rights of his order, “ I here make this offer:— There have been “ many kings of England before me, some “ weaker and others greater than I am; there “ have been also many great and holy men, “ archbishops of Canterbury before him; let “ him behave towards me as the greatest and “ most holy of his predecessors behaved towards “ the weakest of mine, and I am satisfied⁹¹.”

This speech had no little influence on the audience, who cried out, that the King’s concessions were sufficient; and the Archbishop remaining silent, the King of France added, “ My “ Lord Archbishop, why do you hesitate? Peace “ is now in your offer.” But Becket, with an invincible firmness, that could not be shaken, either by the threats of his enemies, nor the most earnest intreaties of his friends, adhered to his former savings; and the conference broke off without effect⁹². This gave many of the French nobility unfavourable impressions of him as a

⁹¹ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 2. c. 25.⁹² Id. *ibid*.

person of intolerable pride and obstinacy ; and even his great friend and patron Louis was for a little time disgusted. Cent. XII.

At a second interview between the two kings, in the beginning of this year, another attempt was made to bring about a reconciliation between Henry and Becket; and in order to render the former more tractable, a bull was delivered to him, in which the Pope declared, that if he was not reconciled to the Archbishop before the beginning of next Lent, he would restore that prelate to the full exercise of his spiritual authority over him and his kingdom. Henry, well knowing what use would be made of that authority if it was restored, proposed to the two priors, who were appointed by the Pope to be mediators in this negotiation, that he would permit the Archbishop to return into England, and enjoy all the emoluments of his see, if he would only promise to behave towards him as former archbishops had behaved towards former kings. When that was reported to Becket, he consented to make that promise with a saving of the rights of his order ; and as the King obstinately persisted in rejecting this saving, and the prelate as obstinately persisted in adhering to it, all the efforts of the mediators to bring about a reconciliation were in vain.⁹³

After this negotiation had terminated without effect, both parties became more exasperated

A third attempt to reconcile the King and Becket fails.
Becket excommunicates seve-

⁹³ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 4. Ep. 1. 8, 9, 10.

Cent. XII.

ral persons
of high
rank.

than ever, and all hopes of a reconciliation seemed to be at an end. Becket, in his letters to the Pope, at this time, speaks of Henry in the bitterest terms, as a more cruel tyrant and persecutor than Herod⁹⁴. As soon as Lent commenced, he resumed the exercise of his spiritual authority; and, without consulting the Pope, thundered out sentences of excommunication against many of the greatest men, both among the clergy and laity, particularly against the Bishops of London and Salisbury, the Archdeacon of Canterbury, and his vicar, Hugh Earl of Chester, Richard de Lucy, chief justiciary, Negil de Sackville, Thomas Fitzbernard, William Giffard, &c. &c.⁹⁵

Two nuncios from the Pope endeavour to make peace, but in vain.

While Becket was thus employed in launching the thunders of the church, Henry was not idle. He gave orders to his ambassadors at Beneventum, where the Pope then resided, to labour with the greatest earnestness to persuade His Holiness to translate Becket from Canterbury to some other see. As this seemed to be the only expedient for terminating this fatal dispute, and the King's heart was greatly set upon it, he gave them authority to offer the Pope a present of ten thousand marks,—to procure him peace with the Emperor and Roman nobility,—and to allow him to fill the see of Canterbury, and all the other sees that were then vacant in England⁹⁶. But

⁹⁴ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 79. l. 3.

⁹⁵ Id. l. 3. Ep. 58. Wilkin. Concilia, t. i. p. 455, 456.

⁹⁶ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 79, 80. l. 3.

these

these tempting offers were rejected, the Pope Cent. XII. suspecting that they were too great to be faithfully performed; and all that the ambassadors could obtain was a promise, that His Holiness would send two nuncios into Normandy, to negotiate a peace between the King and the Archbishop. Accordingly Vivian Archdeacon of Rome, and Gratian subdeacon, were nominated; and having received their commission and instructions, they set out for Normandy, and were received with great respect by the King, at Damfront, August 23d, A. D. 1169.⁹⁷ These nuncios had several long conferences with Henry, at different places, in the months of August and September; but though they seemed to be sometimes on the very point of making peace, new difficulties still arose, and all their labours proved finally unsuccessful: on which they left Normandy soon after Michaelmas.⁹⁸

After the departure of the nuncios, Henry's apprehensions of an excommunication and interdict increased so much, that he sent a messenger after Vivian, with a letter, earnestly intreating him to return, and resume his negotiations, giving him stronger assurances that they would be crowned with success. With this request Vivian complied, to the great dissatisfaction of Becket, who was impatient to proceed to extremities.⁹⁹

Terms of reconciliation proposed by Becket are rejected by Henry, and those proposed by Henry rejected by Becket.

⁹⁷ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 6. l. 3.

⁹⁸ Gervas, apud X Script. col. 1407.

⁹⁹ Epist. S. Thomæ, Ep. 9, 10. l. 3.

But

Cent. XII. But he did not venture to disobey a letter sent him by the nuncio, requiring him to attend an interview of the kings of France and England, which was to be at St. Denys, November 15th, A.D. 1169. Having come to Paris, he sent a petition to the King, containing the conditions on which he was willing to be reconciled to his sovereign, which amounted to a full restoration of himself, and of all who had followed his fortunes, to all the rights and possessions which they had enjoyed before they left England. He also claimed all the churches and prebends belonging to the church of Canterbury that had become vacant since his retreat, that he might dispose of them as he pleased ¹⁰⁰. This last article was very disagreeable to Henry, as it would have produced the expulsion of his own friends from many valuable livings, to make way for those of the Archbishop; and the whole petition was couched in such ambiguous terms, that he declined to grant it; but proposed the following plain and short terms, to which he was willing to give his consent: "That the Archbishop should have his church, and all the possessions of it that had been held by his predecessors, and as they had been held by them ¹⁰¹." This form, for very obvious reasons, was rejected by the Archbishop; especially as the King had declared his resolution not to give him the kiss of peace, which in those times was esteemed an essential ceremony in all

¹⁰⁰ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 3. Ep. 62.

¹⁰¹ Id. ibid.
recon-

reconciliations¹⁰². Vivian having thus failed in his second attempt to bring about a peace between those two jealous and inflamed opponents, returned to Italy in great discontent.

As Henry now dreaded that a sentence of excommunication would be immediately pronounced against himself, and an interdict laid on his kingdom, by the Archbishop, he made haste to take the most effectual measures to prevent these sentences from being executed, or even published in England. With this view he sent over his royal injunctions, forbidding all intercourse between his subjects and the Pope or Archbishop; declaring it high treason to bring any interdict from either of them into England, or to pay any obedience to such interdict; confiscating all the possessions of all who should in any way favour the Pope and Archbishop, together with the possessions of all their relations; and finally commanded Peter-pence to be paid into the royal treasury, and not to the Pope¹⁰³. To render these injunctions more effectual, an oath was required from all persons, that they would observe them; which was cheerfully given by the laity of all ranks, but generally refused by the clergy.¹⁰⁴

This was not the only means employed by Henry to prevent or guard against the censures of his adversary. He sent directions to his agents

Cent. XII.

Precautions to prevent the sentence of excommunication being published in England.

1170.

Terms of reconciliation settled in the court of Rome.

¹⁰² Du Cange, Gloss. voc. Osculum Pacis.

¹⁰³ Gervas Chron. apud X Script. col. 1409.

¹⁰⁴ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 3. Ep. 65.

Cent. .XII at the papal court, to settle the terms of an accommodation between him and Becket, with the Pope in person, which they at length accomplished; and the following form of pacification proposed by them was approved of by His Holiness: "That for the love of God, of the Pope, " and of the church of Rome, the King would " permit the Archbishop to return to his church " in safety, and to have and hold it in peace, " together with all the possessions he had before " he left England. The same to all who were " in exile on his account¹⁰⁵." To bring about an accommodation on this plan, the Pope gave a commission to the Archbishop of Rouen and the Bishop of Nevers; and as he apprehended some difficulty would occur about the kiss of peace, which the King had sworn in his anger he would never give to Becket, he absolved him from his oath, and instructed these commissioners to press him as much as possible to give it; but if they could not prevail, they were then to persuade the Archbishop to accept of it from Prince Henry. These prelates were also authorised to absolve all those whom Becket had excommunicated.¹⁰⁵

Commis-
sion of the
Pope to
crown
Prince
Henry.

The King of England's agents were at this time so successful in their negotiations at the court of Rome, that they obtained another favour for him from His Holiness. This was a bull empowering Roger, Archbishop of York, to crown

¹⁰⁵ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 1.

¹⁰⁶ Id. ibid. Ep. 2, 3, 4.

Prince

Prince Henry; a project which his too indulgent father had very much at heart, but had been prevented from executing by his quarrel with Becket, who claimed an exclusive right to perform that office¹⁰⁷. Richard Barre brought this bull, with the commission to the Archbishop of Rouen and the Bishops of Nevers, into Normandy, in February A.D. 1170. ; and in the beginning of March, Henry sailed into England to carry his favourite design of crowning his son into execution. These successes of the royal agents put Becket into a rage, that seems to have approached to madness. In his letters to the Pope and cardinals, he tells them in the plainest terms,—that they had been bribed,—that they had absolved the devil and crucified Christ,—and that he would make no more applications to the court of Rome, where none but wicked men prevailed.¹⁰⁸

Cent. XII.

The departure of Henry from the continent, prevented the papal nuncios from commencing their negotiations for a peace between him and Becket so soon as they intended. This served still further to inflame the fury of that prelate, to which he gave vent, by writing threatening letters to the bishops of England to deter them from crowning the young King, and by laying an interdict upon the kingdom; but the ports were so carefully guarded, and the danger of

Reconciliation
between
Henry and
Becket.

¹⁰⁷ See Appendix, No. 16. to Lord Lyttleton's Hist. Hen. II. vol. 4. octavo, p. 498.

¹⁰⁸ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 20, 21.

bringing

Cent. XII. bringing over these letters was so great, that none of them were made public, or produced any effect ¹⁰⁹. The King having accomplished the coronation of his son, and settled his other affairs in England, returned to the continent, and held several conferences with the nuncios, in which all the articles of reconciliation between him and Becket were agreed upon, except that of the kiss of peace. This Henry struggled earnestly to avoid promising, but was at length obliged to yield to the invincible pertinacity of the prelate; and thought himself very happy, that by the most earnest intreaties he obtained a delay of that ceremony at their first interview, because it was to be in the territories of France ¹¹⁰. All preliminaries being thus adjusted, the Archbishop was conducted in great state to an audience of his sovereign, July 22d, A.D. 1170., in a meadow near Fretville (in which the kings of France and England had held conferences the two preceding days), where the French and English courts, with a prodigious multitude of people of all ranks, were assembled. As soon as the King saw the Archbishop approaching, he put spurs to his horse, and advanced to meet him, with his head uncovered. The prelate intended to have spoken first, but the King prevented him, by a most gracious address; and taking him by the hand, led him aside, and entered into a familiar conver-

¹⁰⁹ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 4. Ep. 44, 45, 46. l. 5. Ep. 30, 35, 36, &c.

¹¹⁰ Id. l. 5. Ep. 12. Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 68.

fation with him. But all this condescension of his sovereign seems to have made little or no impression on the heart of Becket. For, according to his own account of this transaction, he made a long discourse, enumerating all the injuries the King had done to the church; dwelling long on that greatest injury of permitting his son to be crowned by the Archbishop of York; and insisting, that he should make ample reparation for all these injuries, and permit those who had been concerned in them to be duly censured; to which the King assented. On which the Archbishop dismounted, in order to throw himself at his feet: but in this also he was prevented by Henry, who stooped so low as to hold his stirrup, and assist him in remounting. After this the terms of the peace and reconciliation, as they had been settled, were publicly read by the Archbishop of Sens, and ratified by the King; on which the other exiles, who had followed the fortunes of Becket, were introduced, and graciously received. Henry then desired the Archbishop to declare his forgiveness of all those who had incurred his displeasure in the late dispute, as he had now forgiven all who had incurred his resentment. But to this most reasonable proposal, the artful prelate, who meditated revenge against all his adversaries, returned an evasive answer; pretending that some of these persons were more, and some of them less criminal; some of them were excommunicated by the Pope, and some of them by other prelates; and

Cent. XII. and therefore he could only promise in general, that if any of them failed of obtaining forgiveness in the end, it would be his own fault.¹¹¹

Becket's
agents ill
received in
England.

After this long-expected peace was thus concluded, the Archbishop dispatched his agents into England, who carried with them letters from Henry to the young King, acquainting him with the conclusion of the peace, and commanding, that all their estates and possessions should be restored to the Archbishop and the other exiles¹¹². When these agents had been some time in England, they wrote to Becket, that they had met with a very cold reception;—that every body shunned their company, and disbelieved their report of the peace;—that when they presented the royal mandate to the young King on the Monday after Michaelmas, he appointed them to return ten days after to receive an answer;—and concluded with advising him not to return to England until he had really regained the favour of the King¹¹³. The truth is, that Henry's reconciliation to Becket was far from being cordial, and therefore he was not very pressing for the immediate execution of the conditions of it; and few imagined it would be of long continuance. That prelate, however, made bitter complaints to the King of this delay of restoring the possessions of his see, and transmitted the letters

¹¹¹ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. p. 46, 47.

¹¹² Gervas apud X Script. col. 1413.

¹¹³ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 53.

of his agents to the Pope, with whom he stood in the very highest degree of favour, and from whom he obtained authority to inflict the highest censures on his adversaries, particularly on the Archbishop of York for crowning the young King, and on the bishops of London, Salisbury, Rochester, &c. for assisting at that solemnity¹¹⁴. This last favour was very agreeable to his vindictive temper, and he resolved to use it in the most effectual manner; and he even solicited a power of inflicting the same censures on the King¹¹⁵. But it does not appear that this was granted.

Becket had two conferences with the King after the conclusion of the peace; but as they were spent in mutual complaints, they contributed nothing to the restoration of real friendship¹¹⁶. At length having taken leave of his steady friend and patron the King of France, and of the prelates and nobles who had generously supported him and his friends in their exile, he set out from Sens about the middle of November, under the conduct of John of Oxford, one of his greatest enemies, who was appointed by Henry to attend him into England, and arrived at Whitsand, a sea-port in Flanders, towards the end of that month¹¹⁷. While he waited there for a fair wind, he found means to send over three

Cent. XII.

Becket, having sent before him sentences of excommunication and suspension against several bishops, lands in England.

¹¹⁴ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 52. 54. 66, 67.

¹¹⁵ Id. ibid. Ep. 52.

¹¹⁶ Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 70.

¹¹⁷ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 3. c. 3. p. 110.

Cent. XII.

bulls, one for suspending the Archbishop of York, and the other two for excommunicating the bishops of London and Salisbury, which were actually conveyed to these prelates. Nothing could be more inexcusable than this conduct, as it was declaring war at the very moment he pretended to return in peace. Accordingly this action excited universal indignation against him, and proved the cause of his ruin. On the evening of the last day of November he sailed from Whitsand, and landed next day at Sandwich, from which port he had departed six years and three weeks before; all which time he had spent in exile¹¹⁸. John of Oxford, though no real friend, protected him from the insults of some armed men at his landing, who commanded him in a threatening tone to absolve the excommunicated bishops.¹¹⁹

Troubles
about the
excommu-
nicated
bishops.

The day after, he entered Canterbury in a kind of triumph, attended by a great crowd of the clergy and common people; and next morning he was waited upon by the agents of the bishops who had been excommunicated, demanding their absolution, which he refused¹²⁰. On the return of their agents to Dover with this answer, these prelates determined to go over into Normandy, to implore the protection of their sovereign against the violence of their primate. The young King was no less incensed against

¹¹⁸ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 3. c. 4. Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 72.

¹¹⁹ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 73.

¹²⁰ Id. ibid.

Becket,

Becket, as the severe censures which he had inflicted on those prelates for assisting at his coronation seemed to call in question its validity. He sent some of the officers of his court to Canterbury to demand the absolution of the bishops; but in vain.¹²¹ Cent. XII.

When Becket had rested about eight days at Canterbury, where he had been visited by very few persons of rank, he set out with a design to wait upon the young King at Woodstock, in order to appease his anger, and regain his favour, by valuable presents, and other means. As he approached London, of which he was a native, prodigious crowds of men, women, and children, came out to meet him, and conducted him through the city to his lodgings in Southwark with loud acclamations; in return for which he scattered amongst them both money and episcopal benedictions. But his vanity was soon after mortified by a message from the young King, forbidding him to proceed any further, or to enter any royal town or castle; and commanding him to return immediately to Canterbury, and confine himself within the precincts of his church¹²². After hesitating some time, he resolved to comply with this message; and returned to Canterbury, escorted by a company of armed men, to protect him from any sudden assault. Here he resided about a week in great solitude, receiving

¹²¹ Epiſt. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 73.

¹²² Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 75.

Cent. XII. daily accounts of fresh insults offered to his friends, and depredations committed on his estates; which made him say to one of his greatest confidants, That he was now convinced this quarrel would not end without blood; but that he was determined to die for the liberties of the church¹²³. On Christmas day he preached in the cathedral; and at the end of his sermon pronounced a sentence of excommunication against Ranulph de Broc (his great enemy), Robert de Broc, and almost all the King's most familiar servants, with visible marks of the most violent anger in his voice and countenance.¹²⁴

Passionate
expression
of the
King.

When the Archbishop of York, with the bishops of London and Salisbury, arrived in Normandy, they threw themselves at the King's feet, and implored his protection from that disgrace and ruin with which they were threatened by the primate, painting the violence of his proceedings against themselves, and others, in such strong colours, that Henry fell into one of those violent fits of passion to which he was liable. In the height of his fury he cried out.—“ Shall
“ this fellow, who came to court on a lame
“ horse, with all his estate in a wallet behind
“ him, trample upon his King, the royal family,
“ and the whole kingdom? Will none of all
“ those lazy cowardly knights whom I maintain, deliver me from this turbulent priest?”¹²⁵

¹²³ Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 78.

¹²⁴ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 3. c. 10. p. 118.

¹²⁵ Id. ibid. p. 119.

This

This passionate exclamation made too deep an impression on some of those who heard it, particularly on the four following barons, Reginald Fitz-Urse, William de Tracy, Hugh de Morville, and Richard Breto, who formed a resolution, either to terrify the Archbishop into submission, or to put him to death. Having laid their plan, they left the court at different times, and took different routes, to prevent suspicion; but being conducted by the devil, as some monkish historians tell us, they all arrived at the castle of Ranulph de Broc, about six miles from Canterbury on the same day, December 28th, and almost at the same hour¹²⁶. Here they settled the whole scheme of their proceedings, and next morning early set out for Canterbury, accompanied by a body of resolute men, with arms concealed under their clothes. These men they placed in different parts of the city to prevent any interruption from the citizens. The four barons above named then went unarmed with twelve of their company, to the archiepiscopal palace, about eleven o'clock forenoon, and were admitted into the apartment where the Archbishop sat conversing with some of his clergy. After their admission a long silence ensued, which was at length broken by Reginald Fitz-Urse, who told the Archbishop, that they were sent by the King to command him to absolve the prelates, and others, whom he had

Cent. XII.

Becket
killed.¹²⁶ Stephanides Vita. S. Thomæ, p. 78, 79.

Cent. XII.

excommunicated ; and then to go to Winchester, and make satisfaction to the young King, whom he had endeavoured to dethrone¹²⁷. On this a very long and violent altercation followed, in the course of which they gave several hints, that his life was in danger if he did not comply. But he remained undaunted in his refusal. At their departure they charged his servants not to allow him to flee ; on which he cried out with great vehemence,—“ Flee ! I will never flee from any man living. I am not come to flee, but to defy the rage of impious assassins¹²⁸.” When they were gone, his friends blamed him for the roughness of his answers, which had inflamed the fury of his enemies, and earnestly pressed him to make his escape ; but he only answered,—“ I have no need of your advice.—I know what I ought to do.” The barons with their accomplices, finding their threats were ineffectual, put on their coats of mail ; and taking each a sword in his right hand, and an ax in his left, returned to the palace ; but found the gate shut. When they were preparing to break it open, Robert de Broc conducted them up a back stair, and let them in at a window. A cry then arose, “ they are armed ! they are armed !” on which the clergy hurried the Archbishop almost by force into the church, hoping that the sacredness of the place would protect him from violence.

¹²⁷ Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ, p. 81.¹²⁸ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 3. c. 14.

They

They would also have shut the door, but he cried out,—“ Begone, ye cowards! I charge you
 “ on your obedience, do not shut the door.
 “ What! will you make a castle of a church?”
 The conspirators having searched the palace, came to the church, and one of them crying,—
 “ Where is that traitor? where is the Arch-
 “ bishop?” Becket advanced boldly and said,
 “ Here I am, an archbishop, but no traitor!”
 “ Flee,” cried the conspirator, “ or you are a
 “ dead man.” “ I will never flee,” replied
 Becket. William de Tracy then took hold of
 his robe, and said, “ You are my prisoner; come
 “ along with me.” But Becket seizing him by
 the collar, shook him with so much force, that he
 almost threw him down. De Tracy enraged at
 this resistance, aimed a blow with his sword,
 which almost cut off the arm of one Edward
 Grim, a priest, and slightly wounded the Arch-
 bishop on the head. By three other blows given
 by the other three conspirators, his skull was
 cloven almost in two, and his brains scattered
 about the pavement of the church.¹²⁹

Thus fell Thomas Becket, December 29th, ^{Becket's character.}
 A.D. 1170., in the fifty-third year of his age,
 and ninth of his pontificate. He was evidently
 a man of very great abilities, particularly of con-
 summate cunning, undaunted courage, and invin-
 cible constancy in the prosecution of his designs.

¹²⁹ Vita S. Thomæ, l. 3. c. 14—18. Stephanides Vita S. Thomæ,
 p. 81—87.

Cent. XII. But his schemes were of a most pernicious tendency, to emancipate the ministers of religion from the restraints of law, and to subject his king and country to a foreign power. He was vain, obstinate, and implacable; as little affected by the intreaties of his friends as by the threats of his enemies. His ingratitude to his royal benefactor admits of no excuse, and hath fixed an indelible stain upon his character. Though his murderers were highly criminal, his death was very seasonable, and probably prevented much mischief and confusion.

1171.
Immediate
effects of
Becket's
death.

Few events in history have made a greater noise than the murder of Archbishop Becket. It was generally imputed to the commands of the King of England, and represented as the most execrable deed that ever had been perpetrated. The King of France, the Earl of Blois, the Archbishop of Sens, and several other prelates, wrote accounts of it to the Pope, in the most tragical strains, calling upon him to draw the sword of St. Peter, and inflict some exquisite punishment on "that horrible persecutor of God, who exceeded Nero in cruelty, Julian in perfidy, and Judas in treachery¹³⁰." But none expressed greater grief and horror at this deed than Henry himself, who broke out into the loudest lamentations, refused to see any company, to take any food, or admit of any consolation for three days; of which he took care to have a pathetic narrative

¹³⁰ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 78. 80, 81.

trans-

transmitted to the Pope by the Bishop of Lizieux, Cent. XII. declaring his innocence in the strongest terms, and entreating His Holiness to suspend all censures till he had examined into the truth.¹³¹

Not long after he sent a numerous and splendid embassy to the papal court, to endeavour to prevent the dreaded sentences of an interdict and excommunication. When the English ambassadors arrived at Frescati, where the Pope then resided, they met with nothing but frowns and threats. His Holiness refused to permit them to kiss his feet, and few of the cardinals would admit them to an audience. They were also informed, that the Pope designed to denounce the sentence of excommunication against the King, and of an interdict against his dominions, on Maunday Thursday, which was then approaching. To avert this terrible blow, they exerted themselves with so much vigour, and in particular laid out a very great sum of money with so much judgment, that they gained many friends, and even obtained several audiences of the Pope, in which they pleaded their prince's cause so well, that the intended sentences were not pronounced¹³². Before they obtained this very essential favour, four of the ambassadors took a solemn oath, that the King would submit to the pleasure of His Holiness; and the Pope engaged to send two legates into Normandy, to settle the terms of his reconciliation to the church. In a

Negotiations of Henry's ambassadors at Rome successful.

¹³¹ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 79.

¹³² Id. ibid. Ep. 83, 84.

Cent. XII. word, the dispositions of the papal court were so entirely changed, that the Pope was prevailed upon to write a letter to Henry, in very friendly terms, and to absolve the English bishops whom Becket had excommunicated.¹³³

1172.
Accommodation
between
Henry and
the court
of Rome.

Henry being thus relieved from his apprehensions of the thunders of the church, which in those days of darkness and superstition made the greatest monarchs tremble, left Normandy, and arrived in England (August 7th), where he found every thing in profound tranquillity¹³⁴. His expedition into Ireland, in which he immediately engaged, engrossed all his thoughts, and suspended his negotiations with the papal court for almost a whole year. In the mean time His Holiness nominated the two cardinals, Albert and Theodwin, to be his legates, for terminating this long and violent contest with the King of England. Though Henry had made great progress in the conquest of Ireland, and earnestly desired to stay some months longer in that island, in order to finish that important business; yet he no sooner heard of the arrival of these legates in his continental dominions, than he hastened through England into Normandy, where he landed in the beginning of September. In the first conferences the terms proposed by the two cardinals appeared so hard, that Henry threatened to break off the treaty, and return to Ireland.

¹³³ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 84.

¹³⁴ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1419.

But

But at length, all the conditions were amicably settled at Avranches, September 18th, A. D. 1172., when the King, in the presence of the legates, and of a great assembly of princes, prelates, nobles, and others, swore on the gospels, and the relics of the saints, in the church of St. Andrew, "that he had neither commanded nor desired the death of the Archbishop of Canterbury, and that when he heard it he was very much grieved." But as he was afraid that his passionate expressions had excited the murderers of the Archbishop to perpetrate that horrid deed, he consented to the following conditions to atone for his offence, and to procure a full reconciliation with the church: 1. To give to the knights templars as much money as would pay two hundred knights for one year to serve in the Holy Land; and, at next Christmas, to take the cross, and go in person into the Holy Land the following summer, unless he obtained a dispensation from the Pope. 2. To permit appeals to be made to the Pope, in good faith, and without fraud; but if he suspected any of the appellants of ill intentions, he might oblige them to give security that they would attempt nothing to the detriment of him or his kingdom. 3. To abolish such evil customs against the church as had been introduced in his own time. 4. To restore all the possessions of the church of Canterbury, and of all the clergy and laity of both sexes who had been deprived of their estates on account of the late Archbishop. Both the King and his son at the

Cent. XII. the same time swore, that they would adhere to Pope Alexander as long as he treated them as Christian and Catholic kings¹³⁵. Thus terminated this memorable struggle between the crown and mitre, less to the disadvantage of the former than could have been expected.

Disputes
about the
election of
an arch-
bishop.

The next ecclesiastical affair that engaged the attention of the King and kingdom, was the choice of an archbishop of Canterbury, and primate of England, towards which some steps were taken immediately after the young King's return from Normandy. Odo Prior of Canterbury was called to court to consult about this matter; but he pretended, that the monks of that cathedral had the sole right of electing an archbishop, to the exclusion both of the King and the bishops of the province. On this he was sent home to deliberate more maturely on this matter, with the monks of his convent, and to report the result of their deliberations. At his return to court, about three weeks after, he reported that the monks would not relinquish their claim. He was then commanded to wait upon the old King in Normandy; with which he complied. On his arrival there, Henry, dreading, that if the choice of an archbishop was left to the monks, who were professed admirers of Becket, it would fall upon some person of the

¹³⁵ Epist. S. Thomæ, l. 5. Ep. 88., 89. Vita S. Thomæ, p. 147, 148. Hoveden. Annal. fol. 303, 304. Gervas apud X Script. col. 1421, 1422.

same

same principles, exerted every art in his power to prevail upon Odo to consent to the election of the Bishop of Baieux, who was a man of a gentle and flexible disposition. He even descended to the most humble and earnest intreaties, that he would take pity upon him, and not drive him to commit some greater crime than he had yet committed. But all his intreaties were in vain; the hard-hearted monk remained inflexible, and returned to England. About the end of this year an assembly was held at London for the election of an archbishop; but the monks still insisting on their exclusive right to elect, it broke up without effect. ¹³⁶

Cent. XII.

When the monks returned to Canterbury, beginning to fear that if they continued to adhere strictly to their claim, some violent measures would be adopted, they held a chapter, in which it was agreed to propose three persons to the King, of which he might chuse one to be the archbishop. This proposal was accordingly made to Richard de Lucy, high justiciary and regent of the kingdom; who embraced it with joy, and called an assembly of the bishops and monks at London in February; in which Roger Abbot of Bec was unanimously elected. But this election, after it had been confirmed by the King, was defeated by the obstinate refusal of the Abbot to accept of the dignity to which he

1173.

Several vacant fees filled, and Richard Prior of Dover elected archbishop.

¹³⁶ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1422, 1423.

had

Cent. XII. had been chosen¹³⁷. On this another assembly of the bishops and monks met at London, about the end of April, in which the six sees of Winchester, Ely, Hereford, Bath, Chichester, and Lincoln, were filled up by the following persons, Richard de Ivicestre Archdeacon of Poitiers, Geoffrey Redel Archdeacon (commonly called by Becket, archdevil) of Canterbury, Robert Foliot, Reginald, son of Joceline Bishop of Salisbury, John of Greenford, and Geoffrey, the King's natural son by the fair Rosamond. These persons were all very agreeable to the King, and some of them had been the most active enemies of the late primate. But when the assembly proceeded to elect an archbishop, the dispute between the monks and bishops revived, and though various expedients were proposed, it could not be compromised. The chief justiciary, having taken some private measures to make the choice of the monks to fall upon a person who he knew would not be disagreeable to the King, ventured to call a third assembly to meet at London in the beginning of June. After several sessions, and very warm debates, the monks, June 8th, proposed Richard Prior of Dover to be their archbishop; who being approved of by the bishops, and by the chief justiciary, in the King's name, was declared duly elected. The Archbishop-elect made his public entry into Canterbury, on Sa-

¹³⁷ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1423, 1424.

turday, June 14th; and was to have been consecrated the day after; which was prevented by a very unexpected obstacle. The bishops who attended to assist at the consecration, received a letter from the young King, who was then in open rebellion against his father, protesting against the late election, and acquainting them that he had appealed against it to the Pope. After some debate, it was agreed to delay the consecration, and that the Archbishop-elect should go to Rome to prosecute his own cause, and the cause of the other bishops lately elected, against whom the young King had also protested and appealed.¹³⁸

Cent. XII.

When the elect of Canterbury arrived at Rome, he found the papal court very much divided between the parties of Henry and his rebellious sons. After he had waited long, and spent much money, his election was confirmed; and he was consecrated on the Sunday after Easter A.D. 1174., by the Pope, who also appointed him his legate in England¹³⁹. On his return from Rome, he had an interview (which seems to have been accidental) with the King, in the month of August, at a public house near Caen in Normandy, where they dined together, and then separated. The Archbishop made his public entry into Canterbury in a kind of triumph, October 10th, and the next day

1174.

Richard,
being con-
secrated at
Rome, re-
turns to
England.

¹³⁸ Gervas apud X Script. col. 1424, 1425, 1426. Hoveden. Annal. fol. 307.

¹³⁹ Id. ibid. p. 308. col. 1.

Cent. XII. consecrated the bishops who had been lately elected.¹⁴⁰

1275.
Transactions of a
council at
Westminster.

The civil wars being now happily terminated by a pacification between Henry and his sons, the Archbishop held a council of the English clergy at Westminster, May 28th, in which eighteen canons were promulgated, and confirmed by the authority of both kings and of the barons of the kingdom, who were present in the council. There was little new or very remarkable in these canons. By the first, the celibacy of all the clergy above the rank of subdeacons was commanded, and the succession of sons to their fathers in the same churches forbidden: a sufficient proof that all the severe canons that had been made against the marriages of the clergy had hitherto been ineffectual. By the fourth, archdeacons were authorized to crop such of the clergy as wore long hair. By the other canons, churchmen were forbidden — to frequent public houses, — to bear civil offices, — to take farms, — to carry arms, &c. &c.¹⁴¹ The Archbishop of York was not present at this council; but sent some of his clergy to claim a right to carry his cross erect within the province of Canterbury, and to demand the subjection of the bishops of Hereford, Lincoln, Worcester, and Chester, to him as their metropolitan; and upon these claims being rejected, they, in his

¹⁴⁰ Gervas, col. 1427, 1428.

¹⁴¹ Id. col. 1430, &c.

name,

name, appealed to the Pope¹⁴². The clergy of the diocese of St. Asaph complained to the council against Godfrey, their bishop, for non-residence, and he was obliged to resign his bishopric¹⁴³. After the council was dissolved, the two kings accompanied the Archbishop to Canterbury, to return their united thanks for the late pacification to St. Thomas Becket, who had been canonized about two years before, and now eclipsed all the saints in heaven, by the fame of his miracles and the reputation of his power¹⁴⁴. The sincerity of Henry's devotion towards this new saint, who had long been his most dangerous and detested enemy, may be justly doubted.

About the end of October A. D. 1175., Cardinal Hugo, who had been appointed by the Pope his legate *a latere*, landed in England; and, with the King's permission, made a progress into many parts of the kingdom, visiting the richer churches and abbeys. "As his business" (says a contemporary historian) "was, to root out and to plant, he performed it very diligently by rooting out money from the purses of others, and planting it in his own coffers¹⁴⁵." The King had solicited this legation from the Pope, in order, as it was given out, to terminate the disputes between the archbishops of Canterbury and York; but, in rea-

Cent. XII.

1176.

Legate sent
into Eng-
land.¹⁴² Hoveden. Annal. p. 311.¹⁴⁴ Gervas. col. 1432.¹⁴³ Id. ibid.¹⁴⁵ Id. col. 1433.

Cent. XII. lity (as it was surmised), to procure a divorce from his queen, who had instigated her sons to their late rebellion. Towards this however he took no public step¹⁴⁶. The controversies of the two prelates were referred to the Archbishop of Rouen, and some foreign bishops, and they were enjoined to suspend all disputes on these subjects for five years.¹⁴⁷

Quarrel
between
the arch-
bishops of
York and
Canter-
bury.

But notwithstanding this injunction, their animosity broke out with the most indecent violence, at a council summoned to meet at Westminster in the middle of Lent, A. D. 1176. For when the legate had taken his seat, a struggle ensued between the two archbishops, about the seat next to him on the right hand, in which the followers of the Archbishop of Canterbury interposed, threw down his antagonist of York, and trampled upon him with their feet. This occasioned so great a tumult, that the legate retired in a fright, and the council broke up in confusion. Both prelates appealed to the Pope, and complained to the King, who at first was much incensed at the Archbishop of Canterbury; but upon better information and cooler thought, he laboured to reconcile the two enraged prelates; in which he at last succeeded, both of them withdrawing their appeals, and promising to live in peace. The legate was so much disgusted, that he hastened out of England.¹⁴⁸

¹⁴⁶ Gervas, col. 143.

¹⁴⁷ Hoveden, Annal. p. 313.

¹⁴⁸ Hoveden, Annal. p. 315. col. 1. Gervas, col. 1433, 1434.

A schism which had subsisted in the church of Rome almost eighteen years, was terminated in the course of this year by the degradation of Calixtus the antipope, and the submission of Frederic Emperor of Germany to Pope Alexander. At an interview between the Emperor and the Pope, in the city of Venice, July 24th, A. D. 1177., this important transaction was concluded; and the former paid certain honours to the latter (such as giving him the right hand in all processions, and holding his stirrup when he mounted); with which he was highly pleased, and of which he wrote a pompous account to the two English archbishops¹⁴⁹. The ecclesiastical events which happened in England in this and the succeeding year, were neither singular nor important.

Cent. XII.

1177.

Schism in the papacy terminated.

The extinction of the late schism which had so long subsisted in the church, added not a little to the power and wealth, as well as to the satisfaction of the victorious pontiff, who determined to make the best use of this favourable event. With this view he sent his legates into all the countries in communion with the church of Rome, and particularly into Normandy, England, Scotland, and Ireland, to summon the archbishops, bishops, and abbots, to attend a general council at Rome in the time of Lent this year¹⁵⁰. From several Scotch and Irish

1179.

General council at Rome.

¹⁴⁹ Gervas, col. 1439. Hoveden, p. 325. col. 1.¹⁵⁰ Chron. J. Brompt. inter X Script. col. 1138.

Cent. XII.

bishops who passed through England in their way to this council, Henry exacted an oath, that they would attempt nothing against him, or his kingdom, and that they would return the same way¹⁵¹. So attentive were princes in those times to all the motions of the clergy. Only four English bishops, those of Durham, Oxford, Hereford, and Bath, repaired to this council, as the English prelates claimed a privilege of being represented by four of their number in all general councils. But this claim was not sustained, and the absent prelates were obliged to pay considerable sums of money to prevent their being censured; to obtain which money, is said by contemporary writers, to have been one great object of calling this council¹⁵². Pope Alexander opened the council in the church of St. John de Lateran, March 5th, A. D. 1179., with great pomp, attended by the whole college of cardinals, by the magistrates and nobles of Rome, by the ambassadors of the Emperor, and of all the kings and princes of the Western church, by three hundred and ten bishops, besides a prodigious number of abbots and inferior clergy. In the third session, which was held March 21st, thirty-three canons were published, and received the sanction of the council¹⁵³. These canons are too long to be here inserted, and have no

¹⁵¹ Chron. J. Brompt. inter X Script. col. 1138.

¹⁵² Hoveden, p. 332. col. 2. G. Neubrigenf. l. 3. c. 2.

¹⁵³ Id. l. 3. c. 3. Diceto, col. 63. J. Brompt. col. 113.

particular reference to the church of England. Cent. XII.
 Some of them contain very wise and just regulations; while others carry the usurpations of the papacy over the prerogatives of princes and the rights of conscience, to the most impious and daring height.

The fame of St. Thomas Becket for working miracles, increased with so much rapidity, that by this time he was more celebrated on that account than any other saint. This brought prodigious numbers of persons of all ranks, and from different countries, to Canterbury, to perform their devotions, and obtain cures for themselves or friends. The King of France, his old friend and patron, being in great anxiety about the life of his only son Philip, who had fallen into a dangerous sickness, resolved to apply to him for help, and came into England, attended by the Earl of Flanders, and many other nobles. He was received with great respect by Henry on his landing at Dover, August 22d, A.D. 1179., and conducted to the tomb of Becket, where he performed his devotions, and presented a chalice of gold, with a grant of one hundred casks of wine annually to the monks of the cathedral¹⁵⁴. At his return to the continent, he received the agreeable news of his son's recovery, which was universally ascribed to the prayers and merits of St. Thomas, and greatly increased his fame. The church-history of England in the three next

King of
France
pays his
devotions
at the
shrine of
Becket.

¹⁵⁴ Hoveden, Annal. p. 338. J. Brompt. col. 1140.

Cent. XII. years, contains nothing but the successions of prelates, and matters of little moment.

A.D. 1183.

Clergy endeavour to reconcile Henry and his sons.

An unnatural war having this year broken out between Henry and his sons, Richard Archbishop of Canterbury, with Waleran Bishop of Rochester, and several Norman bishops and abbots, held a council at Caen in Normandy, by a mandate from the Pope; in which, on Ascension-day, they denounced a sentence of excommunication against all who disturbed the peace of the elder Henry, except the young king¹⁵⁵. About the same time the Archbishop wrote a letter to that prince, expostulating with him on the folly and iniquity of his conduct, earnestly entreating him to return to his duty, and concluding with an assurance, that if he did not do this in fifteen days, he, as well as his followers, would be excommunicated.¹⁵⁶

1184.

Archbishop Richard's death and character. Succeeded by Baldwin Bishop of Worcester.

These were some of the last transactions in which Richard Archbishop of Canterbury was engaged. For he died, after a short illness, February 16. A.D. 1184., in the eleventh year of his pontificate¹⁵⁷. He appears to have been a prelate of a mild temper, innocent life, and moderate principles, condemning the unreasonable immunities of the clergy, for which his predecessor had contended with so much violence, as equally pernicious to church and state¹⁵⁸.

¹⁵⁵ Hoveden, p. 354. col. 1.

¹⁵⁶ Epistol. P. Blesens. Ep. 47. p. 69.

¹⁵⁸ Epistol. P. Blesens. Ep. 73. p. 109.

¹⁵⁷ Hoveden, p. 355.

This

This made him no great favourite of the monks, Cent. XII.
 who represent him as too indolent, timid, and complying. Henry had been so much assisted by the late primate, that he was impatient to see his place supplied by a person of similar principles; and having fixed on Baldwin Bishop of Worcester, he earnestly laboured to bring about his election. In this he met with great opposition from the monks of Canterbury; but at length, after several meetings, this opposition was overcome, and Baldwin was elected.¹⁵⁹

About the beginning of this year, Heraclius, patriarch of Jerusalem, with the grand-master of the knights-hospitalers, arrived in England; and being introduced to Henry at Reading, and falling at his feet, most earnestly entreated him to come to the protection of the Holy Land, which was in danger of being lost; presenting him at the same time with the keys of Jerusalem and of the holy sepulchre; together with a most pathetic letter from the Pope, exhorting him to undertake that expedition. Henry raised them from the ground, with many expressions of kindness and sympathy, promising to give them an answer when he had consulted his great council, which was to meet on the first Sunday of Lent, at London¹⁶⁰. By this assembly, which was very full, the King was advised not to engage in an expedition into the Holy Land, till he had consulted with the King of France; which

1185.

Henry declines to comply with the intreaties of the patriarch of Jerusalem.

¹⁵⁹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 356.¹⁶⁰ Id. p. 359.

Cent. XII. was given as an answer to the two ambassadors¹⁶¹. But that they might not have reason to complain that their application had been altogether unsuccessful, Henry promised them an aid of fifty thousand marks; and gave a permission to such of his subjects as pleased to take the cross.¹⁶²

1186.
Dispute
between
the pri-
mate and
the monks
of Canter-
bury.

About this time a quarrel began between Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury, and the monks of his cathedral, which made a mighty noise, and continued several years. The Archbishop, offended perhaps at the keen opposition that had been made by the monks to his election, early discovered a disposition to diminish their wealth and abridge their power. With this view he resolved to erect a magnificent church and convent at Hackington, without the walls of Canterbury, to dedicate it to St. Thomas Becket, and to fill it with secular canons. For this purpose, he not only obtained the King's consent, but he also procured a bull from the Pope, Urban III., authorising his intended erection, and granting him a fourth of all the oblations at the tomb of St. Thomas Becket to assist him in building the church¹⁶³. On this the work was immediately begun, and carried on with great rapidity; at which the monks of Canterbury were very much alarmed. For they not only grudged that share of the oblations granted by the Pope, but began

¹⁶¹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 359. Diceto, col. 626.

¹⁶² Hoveden, p. 359.

¹⁶³ Diceto, col. 631.

to suspect that the Archbishop intended to remove the seat of his see, and perhaps the precious remains of their favourite saint, to his new church and convent. Excited by these suspicions, they filled the whole kingdom with their clamours, as if the church, and even the Christian religion, had been in danger. They complained to the King; but met with no redress. They then appealed to the Pope, and notified their appeal to the Archbishop, December 20th, A.D. 1186., in hopes that he would have desisted from his works. But he was so far from doing this, that he suspended the prior and monks, who had notified the appeal. The King made several attempts to persuade the monks to refer their disputes with the primate to him, or to the bishops of the province. But all these attempts were fruitless, and they prosecuted their appeal with so much vigour, that they obtained a bull from the same Pope Urban, commanding the Archbishop to restore the prior and monks, and to stop his works, which was intimated to him, March 25th, A.D. 1187. This bull was disregarded by Baldwin, who proceeded with greater haste than ever to finish his buildings, having sent Peter of Blois, and some other learned men, to Rome to vindicate his conduct. As a perfect concord at this time subsisted between the King and the Archbishop, the latter was supported in this contest by all the power of the crown; and Ralph de Glanville, chief justiciary, issued two writs, one commanding the prior and monks to desist

Cent. XII. desist from prosecuting their appeal to the Pope, and the other citing them to appear before himself at London. Encouraged by this powerful patronage, the primate seized all the possessions of the prior and monks; who sent a deputation of their number to complain to the King, in Normandy, of this violence; and also made another application to the Pope. Urban, greatly enraged at the contempt with which his former mandate had been treated, sent a thundering bull to Baldwin (dated October 12th, A.D. 1187.), commanding him to demolish all his buildings at Hackington, to defecrate the ground on which they had been erected, and restore all their possessions to the monks. He sent at the same time a most insolent epistle to the King, commanding him to oblige the Archbishop to submit to the above bull. When these letters were delivered to the King and primate, their countenances fell (says the monkish historian), and they began to speak to the monks in a kind and soothing strain. But this dejection was not of long continuance. For in a few days the news arrived, that Urban was dead, and that Cardinal Albert, a particular friend of the Archbishop, was chosen pope, and had assumed the name of Gregory III. On this the primate resumed courage; and resolving to bring the refractory monks to submission, he shut them up prisoners in their convent, and excommunicated the sub-prior, and some others. When they were in this confinement, the King and the primate sent several agents to prevail upon

upon them, both by threats and promises, to withdraw their appeals, and give their consent to the new erection at Hackington. But they remained undaunted in their opposition, and suspended all divine service in the cathedral, being encouraged by the citizens of Canterbury, who supplied them plentifully with necessaries, and even delicacies. When things had continued in this state about two months, the news arrived of another change at the court of Rome, by the death of Gregory, and the election of Clement III., who was as great a friend to the monks as the former had been to the primate. The scene was now entirely changed. Clement issued a bull, dated February 26th, A.D. 1188., commanding Baldwin to demolish all his works at Hackington, and to repair all the damages he had done to the monks at Canterbury. When this bull was disregarded, another was issued, dated March 16th, commanding the Abbot of Feversham to excommunicate all persons who had any of the goods or estates of the convent in their possession; which that abbot performed. But the excommunicated were so powerfully supported by the King and Primate, that they treated that highest censure with contempt. Honorius, the prior of Canterbury, who had long resided at the papal court to prosecute his appeals, prevailed upon Pope Clement to appoint the Bishop of Ostia his legate *a latere*, and send him into England to see his bulls executed in their full extent. But when the legate and prior were
pre-

Cent. XII. preparing for their journey, they were both seized with, and died of the plague, which then raged with great violence at Rome. A second legate was appointed, who died on his journey at Pavia, in December A.D. 1188. The partisans of the Archbishop were much elated by these events, giving out, that heaven had espoused his cause, and that he had wrought several miracles. But the irresistible power of the Pope at length prevailed, and the Archbishop, after a brave struggle of more than three years, was obliged to demolish all the buildings he had erected at Hackington; and the pertinacious monks, fighting under the papal banner, obtained a complete victory over their sovereign and their primate.¹⁶⁴

Ecclesiastical
history of
Scotland.

THE history of the church of Scotland in the reigns of Malcolm the Maiden, and William the Lion, who were contemporaries with Henry II., is so imperfectly preserved, that it doth not merit very much attention. Robert Bishop of St. Andrew's died A.D. 1159., and was succeeded by Arnold Abbot of Kelso; who survived only one year and ten months. Richard, one of the King's chaplains, was chosen to succeed him. But Roger, Archbishop of York, claiming a right to perform the ceremony of his consecration, he was not consecrated till about two years after, by the bishops of Scotland¹⁶⁵. The Archbishop complained of this to the court of Rome,

¹⁶⁴ Gervas, col. 1488—1550.

¹⁶⁵ Spottiswoode, p. 36.

and

and was appointed the Pope's legate in Scotland; against which the Scotch clergy made very strong remonstrances, and at length obtained a bull from Alexander III., A.D. 1165., divesting the primate of York of his legantine authority.¹⁶⁶ Cent. XII.

The independency of the church of Scotland, as well as of the kingdom, was endangered by the unfortunate captivity of William the Lion. In the treaty of peace, indeed, A. D. 1174., on which that prince obtained his liberty, it was only stipulated, "That the church of Scotland should yield that subjection to the church of England that it had been accustomed to yield in the reigns of former kings"¹⁶⁷. But though by this article of the treaty, the controversy between the churches of England and Scotland seemed to be left upon its former footing; yet King William was prevailed upon, by means now unknown, to write a letter to the Pope, A. D. 1175., acknowledging, that the church of Scotland had in former times been subject to the archbishops of York, and that the church of York had been deprived of the exercise of its authority by force; and praying His Holiness to restore that church to the possession of its rights. In consequence of this letter the Pope issued a bull, subjecting the church of Scotland to the primacy of the archbishops of York.¹⁶⁸ Archbishop of York declared primate of Scotland.

¹⁶⁶ Spottiswoode, p. 36. Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 461.

¹⁶⁷ Diceto, col. 584. Brompt. col. 1104.

¹⁶⁸ Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 481, 482.

Cent. XII.

The clergy
of Scotland
refuse to
acknow-
lege the
primacy of
York.

The clergy of Scotland did not tamely acquiesce in this decision. For at a great council held at Northampton, A.D. 1176., by Cardinal Huguzon, the Pope's legate, where the kings of England and Scotland, and the chief nobility and clergy of both kingdoms, were present; when the Scotch prelates were required to make their submission to the Archbishop of York as their primate, agreeable to the article of the late treaty, to which they had sworn, they denied that the clergy of Scotland had ever been accustomed to pay such submission to that see; and affirmed, that they were not obliged to pay it¹⁶⁹. One Gilbert, a young canon of Glasgow, is said to have gained great honour on this occasion, by his bold and eloquent defence of the immunities of the church of Scotland; for which he was soon after made bishop of Caithness and chancellor of the kingdom¹⁷⁰. Roger Archbishop of York supported his pretensions with much spirit, and no small evidence; but by the influence of his great adversary Richard Archbishop of Canterbury, the Scotch prelates were allowed to depart without making any submission¹⁷¹.

Council of
Edin-
burgh.

The clergy of Scotland, in order to guard against the encroachments of their neighbour of York, solicited the Pope to send a legate into their country to determine this controversy. In compliance with this application, His Holiness

¹⁶⁹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 315.

¹⁷⁰ Fordun, p. 714. Boeth. l. 12. p. 272. Lestæus, l. 6.

¹⁷¹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 315.

dispatched Cardinal Vivian, with a legantine commission over Scotland, Ireland, and Norway¹⁷². When the legate arrived in Scotland, he held a council of the prelates and clergy of that kingdom in the castle of Edinburgh, then called the *Castle of Maidens*, August 1st, 1177. The canons of this council are not preserved, though we are told in general, that it revived some old and made some new constitutions¹⁷³. Christian Bishop of Withorn was suspended from the exercise of the episcopal office by this council, for refusing to come to it, and pretending that he was a suffragan of the Archbishop of York¹⁷⁴. Immediately after the dismissal of the council of Edinburgh, Vivian was recalled by the Pope, on many complaints of his avarice and extortions from the clergy, in the several countries of his legation.¹⁷⁵

Richard Bishop of St. Andrew's having died A.D. 1178., a violent dispute arose about the choice of his successor, which continued several years. The monks made a hasty election, and chose John Scot, an Englishman, their archdeacon, to be their bishop. The King (William the Lion), much offended at their presumption, swore by the arm of St. James, that Scot should never enjoy that bishopric, and commanded them to proceed to a new election, recommending Hugo, one of his chaplains, and

Disputes
about the
election of
a bishop of
St. An-
drew's.

¹⁷² Brompt. col. 1110.

¹⁷³ Concil. Wilkin, t. 1. p. 486.

¹⁷⁴ Brompton, col. 1111.

¹⁷⁵ Id. ibid. Chron. de Mailros, p. 173.

sending

Cent. XII. sending Joceline Bishop of Glasgow to superintend their conduct. In obedience to the royal mandate, a second election was made, in presence of Bishop Joceline, and Hugo was chosen. John Scot, not willing to relinquish his right, appealed to the Pope; who confirmed his election, and sent Alexius, subdeacon of Rome, as his legate into Scotland, A.D. 1180., to see him consecrated. Alexius met with much opposition in the execution of his commission; for which he excommunicated some clergymen of the royal party, and laid the whole bishopric of St. Andrew's under an interdict. This legate held a council of the bishops, abbots, and clergy of Scotland, 18th June A.D. 1180., in the church of the Holy Cross, near the castle of Maidens, or Edinburgh, at which John Scot was consecrated Bishop of St. Andrew's, by Matthew Bishop of Aberdeen, his uncle, with great pomp, and Hugo his competitor was deposed¹⁷⁶. But it was not in the power of the papal legate to give the revenues of the see of St. Andrew's to the new bishop; who, finding himself with only the name, without the power or possessions of a bishop, and exposed to the indignation of the King and his courtiers, left the country, and returned to Rome to renew his complaints; which were favourably heard¹⁷⁷. For Alexander III., irritated at the opposition that had been given to his legate, excommunicated Hugo for

¹⁷⁶ Hoveden, Annal. p. 341.

¹⁷⁷ Chron. Mailros, p. 174, 175.

refusing

refusing to resign his pretensions, and to surrender the pastoral staff and ring¹⁷⁸. The Pope also appointed Roger Archbishop of York and Hugo Bishop of Durham his legates in Scotland, with authority to excommunicate the King of Scotland, and to lay his whole kingdom under an interdict, if he refused to admit John Scot to the peaceable enjoyment of his bishopric. He also wrote to the King, acquainting him with the authority he had given to his legates, and threatening to confirm their sentences of excommunication and interdict, if he did not receive Bishop Scot into his favour, within twenty days after he received that letter. William was so far from complying with these papal dictates, that he banished Bishop Scot, Matthew Bishop of Aberdeen, who had consecrated him, and all the clergy who acknowledged him for their bishop, together with all their friends and relations: on which the legates pronounced the dreaded sentences of excommunication and interdict¹⁷⁹. When William King of Scotland was in Normandy, A. D. 1181., he sent ambassadors to Rome with the following proposals for an accommodation,—That the Bishop of Aberdeen should be restored to all his possessions; and that Bishop Scot should be allowed to return to Scotland, to enjoy the preferments he had before his election, with a pension of forty marks a-year, and should have the first bishopric that became

¹⁷⁸ Hoveden. Annal. p. 342.¹⁷⁹ Id. ibid.

Cent. XII. vacant. But these propofals were rejected by the Pope¹⁸⁰. However, Alexander III., the great friend and patron of Bishop Scot, having died September 20th, A.D. 1181., and Roger Archbishop of York, his other chief protector, having also died November 21st, the King was encouraged to renew his negotiations for an accommodation with the church, and sent Joceline Bishop of Glasgow, with the Abbots of Melros and Kelso, his ambassadors to Rome for that purpose. These ambassadors met with a very favourable reception from the new Pope, Lucius III., and were so successful in their negotiations, that they procured a bull, dated March 18th, A.D. 1182., removing the interdict, and absolving the King and all his subjects who had been excommunicated¹⁸¹. As a further proof of his regard, the Pope sent a rose of gold, with his benediction, to the King; and appointed Rolland Bishop of Dol, and Silvanus Abbot of Recval, his legates, to determine the controversy between the two pretenders to the see of St. Andrew's¹⁸². The King, by these legates, offered to Bishop Scot the bishopric of Dunkeld, the chancellorship of the kingdom, and a pension of forty marks, if he would resign his pretensions to the see of St. Andrew's. Bishop Scot agreed to accept of these terms, on condition that his rival Hugo also resigned his pretensions. But the King being

¹⁸⁰ Hoveden, Annal. p. 350.

¹⁸¹ Id. ibid.

¹⁸² Chron. de Mailros, p. 175. Hoveden, Annal. p. 352.

either

either unable or unwilling to persuade Hugo to make that resignation, the legates summoned both the pretenders to appear before the Pope¹⁸³. They accordingly appeared before His Holiness at Viletrie, A.D. 1183., and were both commanded to resign the bishopric of St. Andrew's into the Pope's hands; with which they complied. A few days after, the Pope, in a full consistory of all the cardinals, restored and confirmed the bishopric of St. Andrew's to Hugo, and granted the bishopric of Dunkeld, with every thing the King of Scotland had promised, to Bishop Scot. Both prelates returned soon after to Scotland, and took possession of their respective sees¹⁸⁴. But this violent and dangerous controversy, which seemed now to be finally terminated, was renewed not long after, and took a different turn. For Bishop Scot being much dissatisfied with the decision of Pope Lucius, and hoping for more favour from his successor, Urban III., complained, that some of his goods had not been restored to him, according to agreement, and therefore renewed his claim to the bishopric of St. Andrew's. Urban received this complaint and claim; and summoned Bishop Hugo to appear before him, to defend his title to the disputed bishopric; and gave a commission to Joceline Bishop of Glasgow, with the Abbots of Melross, Newbottle, and Dunfermline, first to suspend him if he did not obey the papal summons, and if, after that, he

¹⁸³ Hoveden, *Annal.* p. 353.¹⁸⁴ *Id.* p. 355.

Cent. XII. continued refractory, to pronounce the more formidable sentence of excommunication. In consequence of this commission, and of Hugo's disobedience, these legates pronounced first a sentence of suspension against him, and afterwards a sentence of excommunication¹⁸⁵. Pope Clement III. by a bull, dated at Pisa, January 16th, A.D. 1188., declared the see of St. Andrew's vacant, and directed the above legates to command the chapter to proceed to the election of a bishop, and to use all their influence to make their choice to fall on Bishop Scot. At the same time he wrote—to the clergy of St. Andrew's, to receive Scot as their bishop, — to the King of Scotland, no longer to oppose that prelate, — to the King of England, to persuade William by arguments, or to compel him by force, to admit Scot to the peaceable possession of the see of St. Andrew's¹⁸⁶. But all these bulls were ineffectual: for Bishop Scot, finding that the aversion of the King was invincible, and that he could not enjoy the bishopric to which he had so long aspired in peace, made a second resignation of it; and Hugo going to Rome, was absolved from the sentences of excommunication and suspension, and restored to the long-litigated bishopric. But he did not long survive this favourable turn in his affairs; for being seized by the plague, which then raged at Rome, he died in the month of August A.D. 1188.¹⁸⁷

¹⁸⁵ Hoveden, Annal. p. 361.

¹⁸⁶ Id. p. 368, 369.

¹⁸⁷ Id. p. 370.

Thus

Thus ended this long and violent contest between the courts of Rome and Scotland, in which William the Lion acted with great spirit and firmness. But his success seems to have been partly owing to the seasonable death of that haughty inflexible pontiff, Alexander III., and to the character of John Scot, who had neither the courage, abilities, nor obstinacy of a Becket. Roger, a near relation of the King, and son of Robert Earl of Leicester, was elected Bishop of St. Andrew's, April 13th, A.D. 1189. John Scot Bishop of Dunkeld was present at, and consenting to, his election.¹⁸⁸

Cent. XII.

SECTION IV.

The ecclesiastical History of Great Britain, from the accession of Richard I., A.D. 1189., to the death of King John, A.D. 1216.

AS the ecclesiastical transactions in England, in the reign of Richard I., were not of great importance, they do not merit a minute detail. Though the heart of this prince was wholly set on his expedition into the Holy Land, and his thoughts much employed in making preparations for it; yet he bestowed some attention, in the beginning of his reign, on the affairs of the church, that he might leave it in a state of tran-

1189.

The vacant
sees filled
in a council
at Pipewell.

¹⁸⁸ Hoveden, Annal. p. 370. Chron. Mailrot, p. 178.

Cent. XII. quillity. With this view he held a great council of his prelates and clergy at the abbey of Pipewell in Northamptonshire, in September A. D. 1189., in which he filled up all the vacant sees, by nominating Geoffrey de Lucy to that of Winchester, Richard Archdeacon of Ely to Lincoln, William Longchamp, his chancellor, and great favourite, to Ely, Hubert Fitz-Walter Dean of York to Salisbury, and his own natural brother Geoffrey to York. On this last nomination, Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury stood up in the council, and claimed the sole right of consecrating the elect of York, producing a charter of William the Conqueror, in support of that claim. No decision seems to have been given by the council on this claim; and Baldwin appealed to the Pope.¹

Dispute
between
the Arch-
bishop and
the monks
of Canter-
bury ter-
minated.

In the month of November this year, John Cardinal of Anagnia, the Pope's legate, landed at Dover, with a commission to terminate the dispute between Archbishop Baldwin and the monks of his cathedral, about the buildings at Hackington. But the King, desirous of terminating this troublesome and violent contest by his own authority, sent a message to the legate, to remain at Dover till he received further orders. In the mean time, Richard, with his mother Queen Eleanor, and a great number of bishops, abbots, and priors, arrived at Canterbury, and with much difficulty made a compromise between

¹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 376.

the contending parties, which was put in writing, and signed by the King, Queen, bishops, and abbots. This accommodation was much in favour of the monks; for by it the Prior of Christ's Church, who had been appointed by the Archbishop, was to be turned out, and all the magnificent buildings at Hackington to be pulled down.²

After the departure of Richard on his expedition into the Holy Land, William Longchamp, Bishop of Ely, who was at once chief justiciary, chancellor, and papal legate, reigned for some time in England, with more than regal power, and lived in more than royal pomp. This haughty prelate, by virtue of his legantine commission, held two councils in the course of this year, one at Gloucester, and the other at Westminster, chiefly with an intention to make an ostentatious display of his own greatness; for no business of importance was done at either of these councils.³

Baldwin, Archbishop of Canterbury, seized with the epidemic frenzy of the times, had taken upon him the cross, at a council held at Gaitington, February 15th, A. D. 1188.; and having spent about three years in preaching up the croisade, and preparing for his expedition, he embarked at Dover March 25th, A. D. 1191., abandoning both the honours and duties of his

Cent. XII.

1190.

Two councils.

1191.

Archbishop Baldwin goes to the Holy Land, where he dies.

² Hoveden, Annal. p. 377.³ Wilkin. Concil. l. i. p. 493.

Cent. XII. important station⁴. After suffering many hardships in his voyage, he arrived in the Christian army at the siege of Ptolemais, where he died, November 20th, the same year.⁵

1192.
Disputes
about the
election of
an arch-
bishop.
Reginald
Bishop of
Bath is
elected,
and dies.

The report of Archbishop Baldwin's death reaching England in the beginning of March A. D. 1192., the dispute between the monks of Canterbury and the bishops of the province, about the right of election, which had so often disturbed the tranquillity of the church of England, was again revived. The Bishop of London, to prevent the monks from proceeding to an immediate election, went in haste to Canterbury, accompanied by an officer of the exchequer, and commanded them to take no step towards supplying the vacancy in the archiepiscopal chair, without the consent of the King and of the bishops of the province; on which the monks protested for the security of their right of election, and of all their other rights⁶. William Longchamp, who was both chief justiciary and the papal legate, presented a letter, May 25th, from the King to the convent, giving a high character of William Archbishop of Mountreale, in Sicily, and commanding them to receive him as their archbishop. To this demand the monks gave the following answer, in a great council at Northampton in June:—"That they had no certain evidence of
" the death of Archbishop Baldwin, who they

⁴ Gervas Chron. col. 1522. 1564.

⁵ Id. col. 1566.

⁶ Id. col. 1567. Diceto, col. 666.

" hoped

“ hoped was still alive; and therefore they Cent. XII.
 “ craved a delay, till that fact was ascertained.” }

This was at last granted, after very warm debates⁷. In this interval the monks turned out such of their number as they suspected of unsteadiness, particularly their prior, Osbern, and placed Geoffrey, the sub-prior, in his room⁸. The commotions that arose about this time, occasioned by the imprisonment of Geoffrey Archbishop of York, in the castle of Dover, by order of William Longchamp, prevented any farther proceedings in the affair of Canterbury, till after the public tranquillity was in some degree restored by the flight of Longchamp out of the kingdom⁹. On this event Prince John, and Walter Archbishop of Rouen, who had then the chief direction of affairs, held a council at London about the end of October; in which the monks of Canterbury, being required to give their consent to the election of the Archbishop of Mountreale, returned this artful answer:—“ That they could not in
 “ conscience give their consent at present to the
 “ election of the person proposed, until they were
 “ better acquainted with his character, and until
 “ they had asked council of the Lord, and felt
 “ the divine direction upon their minds.” The Archbishop of Rouen, who secretly aspired to the primacy of England, was well pleased with this answer, granted a month’s delay, and piously exhorted the monks to pray heartily during all

⁷ Gervas, col. 1159.

⁸ Id. col. 1160.

⁹ See chap. 1. p. 202.

Cent. XII. that time for the direction of Heaven¹⁰. Another council was accordingly called at Canterbury, November 28th, for the election of an archbishop. The monks having formed their plan beforehand, as soon as the council met, Geoffrey their prior stood up, and declared, in their name, that they chose, by the direction of the Holy Trinity, Reginald Bishop of Bath to be their Archbishop; and at the same time took that Bishop by the hand, conducted him into the cathedral, and placed him in the archiepiscopal throne. On this (says the contemporary historian) the Archbishop of Rouen turned pale, and fell a-trembling, seeing all his hopes blasted¹¹. But Reginald did not long enjoy his new and unexpected dignity: for he fell sick soon after his election, and died December 26th, A. D. 1192.

1193.

Hubert,
Bishop of
Salisbury,
chosen pri-
mate.

The news of King Richard's captivity reaching England in the beginning of this year, threw the whole kingdom into so much confusion, that no steps were taken for some time for supplying this new vacancy in the see of Canterbury. But the King himself, being sensible that an able and zealous friend in that important station might contribute not a little to raise his ransom and procure his liberty, wrote a letter from his prison to his mother Queen Eleanor and his ministers, earnestly intreating them to procure the advancement of Hubert Fitz-Walter Bishop of Salisbury (who had been with him in the Holy Land, and

¹⁰ Gervas, col. 1578.

¹¹ Id. col. 1580.

was

was lately returned into England) to the primacy. These ministers managed this matter with so much dexterity, that Hubert was unanimously elected Archbishop by the monks of Canterbury, May 29th, A. D. 1193., and as unanimously approved by the bishops of the province the day after.¹² Cent. XII.

The long and violent contests of Geoffrey, Archbishop of York, with his brother King Richard,—with the Archbishop of Canterbury,—and with the clergy of his own cathedral, seem to have been the effects of clerical pride and passion; and though they occasioned much disorder and confusion in those times, they are hardly worthy of a place in history¹³. It may only be proper to observe, that the Archbishop of Canterbury, having obtained a legantine commission from the Pope, dated March 18th, A. D. 1195., made a progress into the north, and held a synod of the clergy of the province of York in the cathedral of that city, in which he made several canons, and established his own authority, which was the chief object of his journey¹⁴. Soon after this the enemies of the Archbishop of York became so numerous and powerful, that they prevailed against him at the court of Rome; and he was suspended from his offices and benefices by Pope Celestine. The pretence for this severe censure was, that he

1194, &c.
Archbishop
of York
suspended
by the
Pope.

¹² Gervas, col. 1583.

¹³ Hoveden, Annal. p. 417. Gervasii Chron. col. 1584.

¹⁴ Hoveden, Annal. 430.

Cent. XII. neglected the duties of his sacred function, and spent his time in hunting and hawking; but the real reason of it seems to have been, that he was an enemy to vexatious appeals to Rome, and endeavoured to prevent them.¹⁵

1196.
Disputes
between
the Arch-
bishop and
the monks
of Canter-
bury about
a new
erection of
a church at
Lambeth.

Both the King and the bishops of the province of Canterbury had long been very much offended at the monks of that cathedral, for the exclusive right that they claimed, and the great influence that they had obtained, in the election of the archbishops. To diminish that influence, the late Archbishop had attempted to establish a society of secular canons at Hackington near Canterbury; and though he had been shamefully baffled in that attempt, his successor, the present Archbishop Hubert, formed the design of establishing a similar society at Lambeth, near London, hoping that the distance of the place from Canterbury would prevent any opposition. But in this he was mistaken. Nothing could escape the vigilance of the suspicious monks, who immediately took the alarm, and commenced a most violent opposition. Both the King and the Archbishop took all possible pains to allay their fears, and gain their consent. In order to this they proposed,—that every canon of Lambeth, before his admission into his office, should go down to Canterbury, and take a solemn oath at the high altar of the cathedral;—that he would never claim a vote in the election of an arch-

¹⁵ Hoveden, Annal. p. 433.

bishop,—that he would never consent to the removing of the see of Canterbury, or the reliques of St. Thomas, from that city;—and, in a word, that he would never do any thing to the prejudice of the ancient rights of the church of Canterbury. But nothing would satisfy the monks, who instantly sent two of their number to Rome; where they met with a most favourable reception, and soon returned with a bull from Pope Innocent III., dated April 25th, A.D. 1197., directed to the Archbishop at Canterbury, and commanding that prelate, in the most imperious strain, to demolish all the buildings he had erected at Lambeth, within thirty days, under the penalty of being suspended from his office: “For
 “ it is not fit (says this insolent pontiff in his bull)
 “ that any man should have any authority, who
 “ doth not revere and obey the apostolic see¹⁶.”

The Archbishop was greatly shocked and perplexed when he received this bull, and employed every method he could invent to gain the consent of the monks to a short delay of its execution. The King was still more enraged at the conduct of the monks, in applying to Rome without his knowledge; and in a letter he threatened them with his highest indignation, and the confiscation of all their possessions, if they insisted on the execution of the papal bull. But the monks were quite inflexible; and knowing themselves to be secure under the protection of the

Cent. XII.

¹⁶ Gervas Chron. col. 1602, &c.

Cent. XII.

Roman pontiff, they despised all the threats of their sovereign and the persuasions of their primate. On this all their possessions and treasures were seized by the King's officers. The Archbishop immediately dispatched agents to Rome, furnished with large sums of money, and charged with letters in his favour from all his suffragans. These agents were admitted to an audience of the Pope and cardinals, October 24th, A. D. 1197.; presented the letters of the Archbishop and of his suffragans; and pleaded their cause with great ability: and, the day after, the monks of Canterbury made their reply. The cause being thus heard, the Pope confirmed his former sentence against the Archbishop; which he intimated to him by a bull, dated November 20th, threatening him with the highest censures of the church, if he did not immediately demolish the works at Lambeth. At the same time he directed another bull to the King, commanding him in a magisterial tone to see the sentence of the apostolic see executed; and telling him, that if he presumed to oppose its execution, he would soon convince him, by the severity of his punishment, how hard it was to kick against the pricks. The Pope sent also another bull to the King, written, if possible, in a still higher strain, commanding him immediately to restore all their possessions to the monks of Canterbury: "for he would not endure the
" least contempt of himself, or of God, whose
" place he held on earth; but would punish,
" without delay, and without respect of persons,
" every

“ every one who presumed to disobey his commands, in order to convince the whole world, that he was determined to act in a royal manner¹⁷.” To such an intolerable height of impiety and arrogance had this audacious priest arrived! When these bulls were delivered to the King and the Archbishop, they were terrified (says a contemporary historian) at the thunders of the church; and being convinced of the danger and vanity of resistance, they determined to obey¹⁸. Thus did the pertinacious monks obtain a complete victory over their king and primate, and had the satisfaction of seeing the obnoxious buildings at Lambeth pulled down to the very foundation in the months of January and February A. D. 1199., a little before the death of King Richard.

If Pope Innocent III. acted in a manner so imperious towards the lion-hearted Richard, we need not be surprised to find him domineering with still greater insolence over his indolent pusillanimous successor, King John. Of his intention to do this, he gave an early indication, by bestowing in the very beginning of this reign, the revenues of the vacant see of St. David's, which unquestionably belonged to the King, on the famous Girald Bary (commonly called *Giraldus Cambrensis*¹⁹). This wanton invasion of the rights of the crown was the more provoking,

A.D. 1200.
The Pope bestows the revenues of the see of St. David's on Giraldus Cambrensis.

¹⁷ Gervas Chron. col. 1616—1624.

¹⁸ Id. ibid.

¹⁹ Anglia Sacra, t. 2. p. 512.

that

Cent. XII. that Girald, on whom these revenues were bestowed, was one of the King's most open and inveterate enemies, to which the Pope was no stranger.

The Pope imposes a tax on all the clergy of the church, for a croissade.

Notwithstanding all the calamities that the Christian world in general, and the King and kingdom of England in particular, had suffered by the late unfortunate expedition into the Holy Land, Pope Innocent was not ashamed to set another croissade on foot, and that in a manner suited to his imperious character and high pretensions. He issued a bull, dated December 27th, A. D. 1199., directed to all the prelates of the Christian church, commanding them, and all their clergy, by the authority of the apostolic see,—of Almighty God,—and of the Holy Ghost, and under the penalty of eternal damnation, to pay the fortieth part of all their revenues, for defraying the expence of this expedition, which was to be commanded by two cardinals named by the Pope. The bull contains many directions about the manner of levying this tax upon the clergy, and of collecting the voluntary contributions of the laity, which are all expressed in the language of supreme authority²⁰. This was the first attempt to impose a tax on the clergy of all nations, by the authority of the Pope, as sovereign of the church; which ought to have excited universal indignation. But those dark unhappy times were the proper season for such daring usurpations on

²⁰ Hoveden, Annal. p. 445.

the rights of mankind. It was probably to carry this bull into execution that Hubert Archbishop of Canterbury held a council of the clergy at Westminster, A.D. 1200., in spite of the prohibition of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, Earl of Essex, and high justiciary of England²¹. This much we know however with certainty, that this papal tax was collected in England, and the money arising from it was carried to Rome by Philip, a notary of that church. “ But (says a contemporary
 “ historian) it will never be applied to the purpose for which it was raised, unless the Romans have changed their nature, and relinquished their innate rapacity²².” King John was so far from resenting this intolerable insult upon the rights of his crown and independency of his kingdom, by a foreign power imposing a tax on his subjects without his consent, that he voluntarily granted the fortieth part of his own revenues to the Pope, and exhorted his barons to imitate his example²³: a demonstration that this weak prince did not understand the prerogatives of his crown, or that he had not the wisdom and fortitude to defend them.

At the same time that the Pope imposed this tax on the clergy for defraying the expence of his intended croisade, he sent his emissaries into all countries, and particularly into England, to exhort the laity to take the cross. The most

Cent. XII.

Cent. XIII.

1201. to

1205.

A croisade.

²¹ Hoveden, Annal. p. 457.²² Diceto, apud X Script. col. 707.²³ Hoveden, Annal. p. 471.

Cent. XIII. remarkable of these emissaries was Eustachius, abbot of Flay in Normandy, who pretended to work many miracles, and to have received a letter from heaven, written by the hand of God, in which he threatened to rain sticks and stones, and boiling water on all who frequented fairs and markets on Sunday²⁴. The declamations of this enthusiast produced great effects. The Sundays' fairs and markets were for some time deserted, and multitudes of all ranks crowded to take the cross, which he warmly recommended. When these deluded people had leisure to reflect on what they had done, they repented of their rashness, and would gladly have declined embarking in so distant and dangerous an expedition. But they soon found that there was no trifling with the court of Rome. For the Pope no sooner heard of this backwardness, than he issued a thundering bull, dated May 5th, A.D. 1021., directed to the archbishops and bishops of England, commanding them to excommunicate by name, and with all possible solemnity, every person who had taken the cross, and refused or delayed to fulfil his engagements²⁵. This obliged all who had been so imprudent as to take the cross, to go upon this croisade, or to purchase a dispensation, which was not easily obtained. It may not be improper to take notice, that the great army that was raised on this occasion by the authority of the Pope, and conducted

²⁴ Hoveden, Annal. p. 457.

²⁵ Id. p. 466.

by his counsels, was not employed in rescuing the Holy Land from the hands of infidels, but in dethroning the Christian Emperor of Constantinople, in order to subject that empire to the see of Rome.²⁶

Cent. XIII.

Few events were more to be dreaded by a king of England in this period, than a vacancy in the see of Canterbury, which was commonly productive of a violent contest at home, and a no less violent conflict with the court of Rome. But no vacancy in that see had ever been attended with such fatal consequences as that which happened at this time, on the death of Archbishop Hubert, July 18th, A.D. 1205.²⁷ These consequences were indeed so singular and important that they merit a very distinct consideration.

1205.
Death of
Archbishop
Hubert.

The monks of the cathedral of Canterbury had long claimed an exclusive right to elect their archbishops; but this right had always been disputed by the kings of England and the prelates of the province. On this occasion the monks determined to exclude their competitors from any share in the election, by making a secret and sudden choice, before the vacancy could be generally known. As soon therefore as they heard of the death of Hubert, they held a chapter in the night-time, and chose their own sub-prior Reginald to be archbishop, and placed him in

Two arch-
bishops
elected.

²⁶ Bzovii Continuat. Baron. Annal. ann. 1202, 1203, 1204. Goldast. Confit. Imper. t. 3. p. 369.

²⁷ Gervas, col. 1683.

Cant. XIII. the archiepiscopal throne. At the same time they obliged Reginald to take an oath, that he would not publish his election without the consent of the convent, and sent him away next morning, with some of their own number, to Rome, to obtain the approbation of the Pope. This scheme was well contrived; and would probably have been crowned with success, if the vanity of Reginald had not got the better of his prudence, and even of the obligation of his oath. For he no sooner arrived in Flanders, than he assumed the state of the archbishop-elect of Canterbury, and shewed the letters of his election to several persons. The news of this soon reached England, and occasioned no little noise. The monks were so much offended at the misconduct of their elect, that they determined to abandon him, in order to make their peace with the King, whose indignation they justly dreaded. They accordingly sent some of their number to the King, to ask his leave to proceed to the election of an archbishop; and to obtain it, they secretly agreed to chuse John de Gray Bishop of Norwich. As soon as these agents returned to Canterbury with the King's licence, a chapter was held, and John de Gray was unanimously chosen archbishop; and, on his arrival, was solemnly enthroned in the presence of the King, who immediately put him in possession of the temporalities of the see. That nothing might be wanting to render this election valid, some of the monks

monks were dispatched to Rome to procure the approbation of the Pope.²⁸ Cent. XIII.

But this affair, which was already sufficiently embarrassed by a double election, became now more perplexed by the appearance of a third party. The bishops of the province, who had always claimed a share in the election of their metropolitan, had been quite neglected in the late elections. They therefore sent their agents to Rome to complain of this neglect, and to protest against both elections, as invalid on that account. Nothing could be more agreeable to the court of Rome, than the appearance of so many parties, and so many clashing claims. Great sums of money were expended, and a whole year was employed in pleadings, audiences, hearing witnesses, and examining records. At length, when one part of this great controversy was ripe for decision, the Pope issued a bull, dated December 21st, A. D. 1206., declaring, that from thenceforward the suffragans of the province of Canterbury should not pretend to any share in the election of their metropolitan, nor disturb the monks of the cathedral in the enjoyment of their exclusive right to chuse their archbishop.²⁹


The Pope, after having thus determined the dispute between the bishops and the monks, proceeded to examine the great controversy between the two archbishops-elect. The agents of both parties supported their respective claims with

1206.
Bishops of
the province ap-
peal to
Rome, and
the Pope
determines
against
them.

1207.
The Pope
vacates
both elec-
tions.

²⁸ M. Paris, p. 148, 149.

²⁹ Id. p. 149, 150.

Cent. XIII.  great eagerness and obstinacy. When more than a year had been spent in pleadings and investigations on this subject, His Holiness pronounced a definitive sentence, declaring both the election of the Sub-prior and of the Bishop of Norwich to be irregular and uncanonical, and decreeing that neither of these persons should be capable of being chosen archbishop of Canterbury³⁰. The last part of this sentence was intended to exclude the Bishop of Norwich, the King's favourite, who, in case of a new election, would infallibly have been chosen.

1207.
Stephen
Langton
chosen
archbishop
at Rome
by a few
monks.

The archbishopric being thus declared vacant, the Pope began to unfold his scheme, which it is probable he had formed long before, of filling it with a creature of his own, without so much as consulting the King of England. In order to this, he commanded the monks of Canterbury, who were then at Rome, immediately to proceed to the election of an archbishop, and at the same time commanded them to chuse Cardinal Stephen Langton. The monks objected, that they could not do this without the consent of their convent; but the Pope hastily replied, that his authority supplied all defects. The monks, fourteen in number, who had been agents for the Bishop of Norwich, laboured under another and still greater difficulty. Before they left England, they had solemnly sworn to the King (who dreaded that they might be corrupted at the court of

³⁰ M. Paris, p. 155.

Rome), that they would never acknowledge any person but the Bishop of Norwich for archbishop of Canterbury. But the plenitude of papal power soon removed this obstacle. His Holiness absolved them from the obligation of their oaths, and commanded them immediately to proceed to an election, under the penalty of the highest censures of the church. With this they all complied, except Elias de Brentfield. Stephen Langton was chosen archbishop of Canterbury by a few monks at Rome, and consecrated by the Pope himself at Viterbo, June 27th, A. D. 1207.³¹

Innocent was not ignorant that this unprecedented transaction would rouse the indignation of the King of England, and therefore he endeavoured beforehand to soothe the mind of that prince. With this view he sent him four rings of gold, set with four different kinds of precious stones, accompanied with a flattering letter, which contained an illustration of the mysteries represented by these rings. King John, who was equally fond of trinkets and of flattery, expressed much satisfaction with this papal present. But this satisfaction was of short duration. For a few days after the bull arrived, intimating the election and consecration of Cardinal Langton; which threw him into a most violent rage, both against the Pope and the monks of Canterbury. As these last were most within his reach, they felt the first effects of his indignation. Two

John's
letter to
the Pope
and the
Pope's
answer.

³¹ M. Paris, p. 155.

Cent. XIII. officers, Fulk de Cantalou and Henry de Cornhille, with a company of armed men; were sent to Canterbury, who took possession of the convent of the Holy Trinity, banished the monks out of the kingdom, and seized all their estates. King John then wrote a spirited and angry letter to the Pope, in which he accused him of injustice and presumption, in raising a stranger to the highest dignity in his kingdom, without his knowledge. He reproached the Pope and court of Rome with ingratitude, in not remembering that they derived more riches from England than from all the kingdoms on this side the Alps. He assured him, that he was determined to sacrifice his life in defence of the rights of his crown; and that if His Holiness did not immediately repair the injury he had done him, he would break off all communication with Rome³². Though this letter was written in a strain very becoming a king of England, it was very shocking to the pride of the haughty pontiff, who had been long accustomed to trample on the majesty of kings. Innocent immediately returned a long answer; in which, after many expressions of displeasure and resentment, he tells the King plainly, that if he persisted in this dispute, he would plunge himself into inextricable difficulties, and would at length be crushed by him, before whom every knee must bow, of things in heaven, and things on earth, and things under the earth.³³

³² M. Paris, p. 156.

³³ Id. p. 157.

These two letters might be considered as a formal declaration of war between the Pope and the King of England. But the contest was very unequal. For the former had now attained that extravagant height of power which made the greatest monarchs tremble upon their thrones, and the latter had sunk very low both in his reputation and authority, having before this time lost his foreign dominions by his indolence, and the esteem and affection of his subjects at home by his crimes and follies. Innocent was not ignorant of the advantage he possessed; and therefore, without delay, he laid all the dominions of King John under an interdict; and this sentence was published in England, at the Pope's command, March 23d, A.D. 1208., by the bishops of London, Ely, and Worcester, though the King endeavoured to deter them from it by the most dreadful threats. From that time the churches were shut up, and the clergy refrained from performing any of the duties of their function, except hearing confessions, baptizing infants, and administering the viaticum. The King was so much enraged against the clergy for obeying the interdict, that he commanded his sheriffs to seize all their lands and revenues in their several counties, and withdrew from them the protection of the laws, by which they were exposed to injuries of all kinds. To avoid these injuries some fled into foreign parts, others confined themselves within the precincts of their churches,

and

Cent. XIII.

1208.

The Pope
lays Eng-
land under
an inter-
dict.

Cent. XIII. and the whole kingdom was a scene of confusion and dismay.³⁴

1209.

The Pope
excommu-
nicates
King John.

When this interdict had continued about two years, the Pope proceeded a step further, and pronounced the dreaded sentence of excommunication against King John, which he commanded the bishops of London, Ely, and Worcester, his most obsequious tools, to publish in England. These prelates, who resided on the continent, sent copies of the sentence, and of the Pope's commands, to publish it in their churches, to the bishops and clergy who remained in England. But such was their dread of the royal indignation, that none of them had the courage to execute these commands. The sentence however did not remain a secret; but became the subject of conversation in all companies. Even Geoffrey Archdeacon of Norwich, one of the King's judges, when sitting on the bench in the exchequer at Westminster, declared to the other judges, that the King was excommunicated, and that he did not think it lawful for him to act any longer in his name. But for this declaration he was thrown into prison, where he soon after died.³⁵

1211.

The Eng-
lish laity
adhere to
King John.

In the mean time the Pope was much enraged at the loyalty of the English laity to their prince; and, in order to shake it, he sent them several letters full of threats and promises³⁶. But these

³⁴ M. Paris, p. 158. Hen. Knyghton, apud X. Script. col. 2415.

³⁵ M. Paris, p. 159.

³⁶ Innocen. Epist. lib. 10. Ep. 159, 160.

letters

letters produced little or no effect; for the great barons and their followers adhered with so much steadiness to the King, that while he lay under the sentence of excommunication, he executed the only two successful expeditions of his reign, the one into Wales, and the other into Ireland³⁷. This gives us reason to believe, that if John had continued to act with firmness, and had secured the affections of his own subjects, by a just and mild administration, he would have triumphed over all the arts of Rome, and delivered himself and his country from their ignominious subjection to a foreign priest.

In the course of this year some secret overtures had been made for an accommodation of this famous controversy; and in consequence of these overtures, the Pope sent two legates, Pandulph and Durand, into England. These legates were admitted to an audience in a parliament held at Northampton; when a most violent altercation ensued between them and the King. In this altercation Pandulph was not afraid to tell the King, in the face of his parliament, that he was bound to obey the Pope in temporals as well as in spirituals: and when John refused to submit to the will of His Holiness without reserve, the audacious legate published the sentence of excommunication against him with a loud voice, absolved all his subjects from their oaths of allegiance, degraded him from his royal dignity, and

Insolent
behaviour
of the pa-
pal legates.

³⁷ M. Paris, p. 160.

declared

Cent. XIII. declared that neither he nor any of his posterity should ever reign in England³⁸. This was certainly carrying clerical insolence to the most extravagant height. But in those unhappy times the meanest agents of the Pope insulted the greatest princes with impunity.

1212.
The Pope
deposes
King John,
and ex-
communi-
cates all
who ad-
hered to
him.

After the return of the legates to Rome, and their report of the obstinacy of the King of England, the Pope proceeded to more violent measures. He pronounced, with great solemnity, a sentence of deposition against King John, and of excommunication against all who should obey him, or have any connections with him³⁹. When these sentences were known in England, they began to excite the superstitious fears of too many of the barons; who were, at the same time, much dissatisfied with their prince, for his imprudent, illegal, and oppressive government. Of this secret disaffection of his barons, John received intimations from the King of Scotland, from his own natural daughter the Princess of Wales, and from other quarters, which alarmed him not a little, and began to stagger his resolution⁴⁰. About the same time one Peter the Hermit, a mad enthusiast, went up and down preaching with great vehemence against John for his disobedience to the Pope, and prophesying that he would not be king of England on next

³⁸ Annal. Monast. Burton, apud Rerum Anglican. Script. t. i. p. 165, 166.

³⁹ M. Paris, p. 161.

⁴⁰ Id. ibid.

Ascension day : “ And his declarations (says a Cent. XIII. “ contemporary historian) were as firmly believed “ by all who heard him, as if it had been a voice “ from heaven.”⁴¹

10 The Pope, in order to render his sentence of deposition against King John effectual, appointed the King of France to put it in execution, and promised him the pardon of all his sins, and the kingdom of England for his reward. This was a temptation which that prince had neither wisdom nor virtue to resist. Blinded by his ambition, he became the tool of the court of Rome, in destroying the common rights of princes, which he ought to have supported with all his power. Philip, now become the champion of the church, raised a mighty army, and collected a great fleet, in order to invade England, and take possession of that kingdom in consequence of the papal grant ; not reflecting that he thereby acknowledged the right of the Pope to dispose of crowns and kingdoms at his pleasure.⁴²

1213.
The Pope commits the execution of his sentence to the King of France, who prepares to invade England.

King John had good intelligence of all these transactions on the continent, and made the most vigorous preparations for his own defence. But all these preparations on both sides served only to promote the purposes of the court of Rome. For as soon as John was sufficiently intimidated by his dread of the French army, and his suspicions of his own subjects, to induce him to make an ignominious surrender of his crown

King of France obliged to relinquish his enterprise.

⁴¹ M. Paris, p. 161.

⁴² Id. p. 162.

Cent. XIII. and kingdom to the Pope, Philip was obliged to abandon his enterprize against England, to avoid the thunders of the church, the dreadful effects of which he had before his eyes.

The Pope neglects the interest of his tools.

In consequence of the unlimited submission of King John to the will of the Pope, Stephen Langton, whose promotion had been the cause of the late fatal contest, came over to England, took possession of his see, and soon after absolved the King from the sentence of excommunication⁴³. At the same time the bishops of London, Ely, Lincoln, and Hereford, with all the other clergy and laity who had been banished in the course of this quarrel, returned, with high expectations of receiving the most ample satisfaction for all the damages they had sustained, and of having a considerable share in the management of affairs. But these expectations were not fully answered; and they soon began to complain, that when the Pope had gained his own ends, he became unmindful of the interests of his friends. Nor were these complaints without foundation. For about Michaelmas this year Nicholas Bishop of Tusculum arrived in England as the Pope's legate, and regulated all ecclesiastical affairs in the most arbitrary manner, without consulting with the primate or any of the clergy. The Archbishop, and those who had been sufferers in the papal cause in the late quarrel, were so far from receiving that ample and immediate satisf-

⁴³ Epist. Innocent. p. 827. M. Paris, p. 166.

faction for their damages, which had been stipulated, and they expected, that they were put off from time to time, under various pretences, with the consent of the legate. In bestowing vacant benefices, he paid no regard to the pretensions of the papal party, but preferred only his own creatures, or those recommended by the King.⁴⁴

The Archbishop of Canterbury, greatly chagrined at the new councils of the court of Rome, and at the conduct of its legate, held a provincial synod of his suffragans and clergy at Dunstable, about the middle of January, A.D. 1214. At this synod the most loud and vehement complaints were made against the legate, for his partiality to the King, and his discouragement of those of the clergy who had adhered to the court of Rome in the late contest. After long debates, it was agreed to send a deputation of two clergymen to the legate, who was then at Burton upon Trent, to intimate to him, that the Archbishop had appealed to the Pope against his proceedings, and to inhibit him from granting institution to any more prelates or priests within the province of Canterbury. To this intimation the legate paid no further regard, than by sending the famous Pandulph to Rome, to defend his conduct against any who might appear there to accuse him.⁴⁵

1214.
The clergy of England appeal to the Pope against his legate.

Though King John had been absolved from the sentence of excommunication soon after his agreement with the Pope, the interdict upon the

The interdict taken off.

⁴⁴ M. Paris, p. 171, 172.

⁴⁵ Id. p. 172.

Cent. XIII. kingdom was continued, till it should be seen how he would adhere to that agreement. But the King having now entirely gained the heart of the Pope, by renewing his submission, and by sending him a great sum of money, His Holiness gave a commission to his legate to remove the interdict. This was accordingly taken off, with great solemnity in the cathedral of St. Paul's, London, June 29th, A.D. 1214., after it had continued six years three months and fourteen days.⁴⁶

The inferior clergy, who had suffered in the late troubles, obtain no redress.

The Archbishop and monks of Canterbury, with the bishops of London, Hereford, Ely, Lincoln, and Bath, who had been the greatest sufferers in the late contest, obtained at different times twenty-seven thousand pounds in reparation of the damages they had sustained. But the rest of the sufferers in that cause, consisting of an innumerable multitude of abbots, priors, templars, hospitallers, abbeesses, monks, nuns, secular clerks, and laymen, when they applied to the legate about the reparation of their damages, were told, that he had received no directions from the Pope about that matter: and this seems to have been all the reparation they ever received⁴⁷. Simon Langton, brother to the Archbishop of Canterbury, who appeared at Rome to prosecute the appeal of his brother and his clergy against the legate, had no greater success. For Pandulph, who was agent for the

⁴⁶ M. Paris, p. 173.

⁴⁷ Id. p. 174.

legate

legate, having painted King John in the most amiable colours, as a most pious, just, and humble prince, and represented the primate and his clergy as excessively rigid and covetous in their demands of restitution, and enemies to the just prerogatives of the King, they were dismissed without any redress: a treatment which they had merited for espousing the cause of Rome against their king and country, but which they had no reason to expect from that court whose cause they had espoused. Cent. XIII.

In the famous contest that raged at this time between King John and his barons about the great charter of their liberties, the Pope supported the party of his new vassal with great warmth, and was not sparing of his spiritual thunders against the barons and their favourers. In particular, he was so much displeased with the political conduct of his own creature the Archbishop of Canterbury, that he laid him under a sentence of suspension; and reversed the election of his brother Simon Langton, who had been chosen Archbishop of York. A.D. 1215.
The pope
suspends
the pri-
mate.

Innocent III. being now in the zenith of his power, assembled a general council in the church of St. Saviour de Lateran at Rome, in November this year, at which were present no fewer than four hundred and twelve bishops, besides an incredible number of abbots, priors, and inferior clergy. His intention in calling this council doth not seem to have been to take the advice of General
council
at Rome.

⁴⁸ M. Paris, p. 188.

Cent. XIII. its members in the affairs of the church, but to make an ostentatious display of his own greatness and supreme authority. For the seventy canons decreed in this council had been prepared before, were read in the council, and passed without any deliberation or debate; though some things in them appeared very intolerable to many of the members⁴⁹. In the confession of faith contained in the first canon, the new doctrine of transubstantiation is inserted in these strong terms: “The body and blood of Christ are contained really in the sacrament of the altar under the species of bread and wine; the bread being transubstantiated into the body of Jesus Christ, and the wine into his blood, by the power of God.” For this wonderful transubstantiation, the following curious reason is assigned: — “That we might receive of Christ’s nature, what he had received of ours⁵⁰.” The third canon commands kings and princes to extirpate all heretics in their territories, under the penalty of being excommunicated, and deprived of their dominions; which gave occasion to the most horrid scenes of cruelty and bloodshed. These, and several other canons in the same collection, sufficiently shew the darkness of this period, and the great incroachments the court of Rome had made on the civil and religious rights of mankind. The many fatal changes that were made both in the civil and ecclesiastical polity of England by the incroachments of that ambitious

⁴⁹ M. Paris, p. 184. Du Pin, Eccles. Hist. cent. 12, c. 6.

⁵⁰ Id. ibid.

court, will be mentioned in their proper places, Cent. XIII.
 in the third chapter of this book.

AFTER the termination of the long and violent dispute between John Scot and Bishop Hugh about the see of St. Andrews, the church of Scotland seems to have enjoyed a long period of profound tranquillity, which affords very few materials for history. King William the Lion, to put an end to the pretensions of the archbishops of York to the primacy of Scotland, which had been the occasion of many contests, obtained a bull from Pope Celestine III., dated March 17th, A. D. 1192., declaring, That the church of Scotland was immediately subject to the see of Rome, without the intervention of any other;—that none but the Pope or his legate *à latere* had a right to lay that kingdom under an interdict;—that none but a Scotch prelate, or one sent directly from Rome, should be capable of the legantine authority in Scotland;—and that all controversies that could not be finally determined within that kingdom, should be brought immediately before the Pope⁵¹. Innocent III. the successor of Celestine, sent John, Cardinal of St. Stephen de Monte Cœlia, as his legate, into Scotland and Ireland; who held a national council at Perth, A. D. 1201., for making canons, and reforming the manners of the clergy. The canons of this council are all lost, except one, which commanded the Sabbath to be kept

Ecclesiastical history of Scotland.

⁵¹ Wilkin, Concil. t. i. p. 495.

Cent. XIII. from Saturday at twelve o'clock noon, to Monday morning ⁵². King William was present at this council, with all the nobility, as well as the prelates and principal clergy of his kingdom; who at the King's desire took an oath of fealty to his son Prince Alexander (who was then only three years of age) as his successor ⁵³. Several ecclesiastical controversies were also determined at this council, particularly one between the Bishops of St. Andrew's and Glasgow, and the abbot and monks of Kelso. ⁵⁴

National
council at
Perth.

Roger Bishop of St. Andrew's died at Cambuskenneth, A. D. 1202.; and was succeeded in that see by William Malvoisin, Bishop of Glasgow; who governed it no less than thirty-five years, with great wisdom and felicity. That prelate, in conjunction with Walter Bishop of Glasgow, received a legantine commission from Innocent III.; and in virtue of that commission, with the consent of the King, they held a national council at Perth, A. D. 1211. The design of that council was to promote a croisade for the recovery of the Holy Land; and by the exhortations of these prelates, and of the rest of the clergy, great multitudes of the common people, but very few of the nobility, took the cross ⁵⁵. The backwardness of the Scotch nobility to embark in this croisade, was probably owing to the deplorable fate of five hundred of

⁵² Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 495. Boeth. Hist. Scot. l. 13. p. 277.

⁵³ Id. Ibid.

⁵⁴ Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 509.

⁵⁵ Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 532.

their

their countrymen, mostly noblemen and gentlemen, who accompanied King Richard in his expedition into the east, under the conduct of Earl David, brother to William the Lion, who all perished, except their leader, who returned, after having suffered the most incredible hardships for the space of four years. ⁵⁶

Brice Douglas Bishop of Moray fixed the seat of his see A. D. 1212. (which before had been unfettled,) at the church of the Holy Trinity of Spyny, which he declared a cathedral, and in which he constituted a chapter, consisting of eight canons residentiary, in imitation of the chapter of Lincoln. ⁵⁷

Cent. XIII.

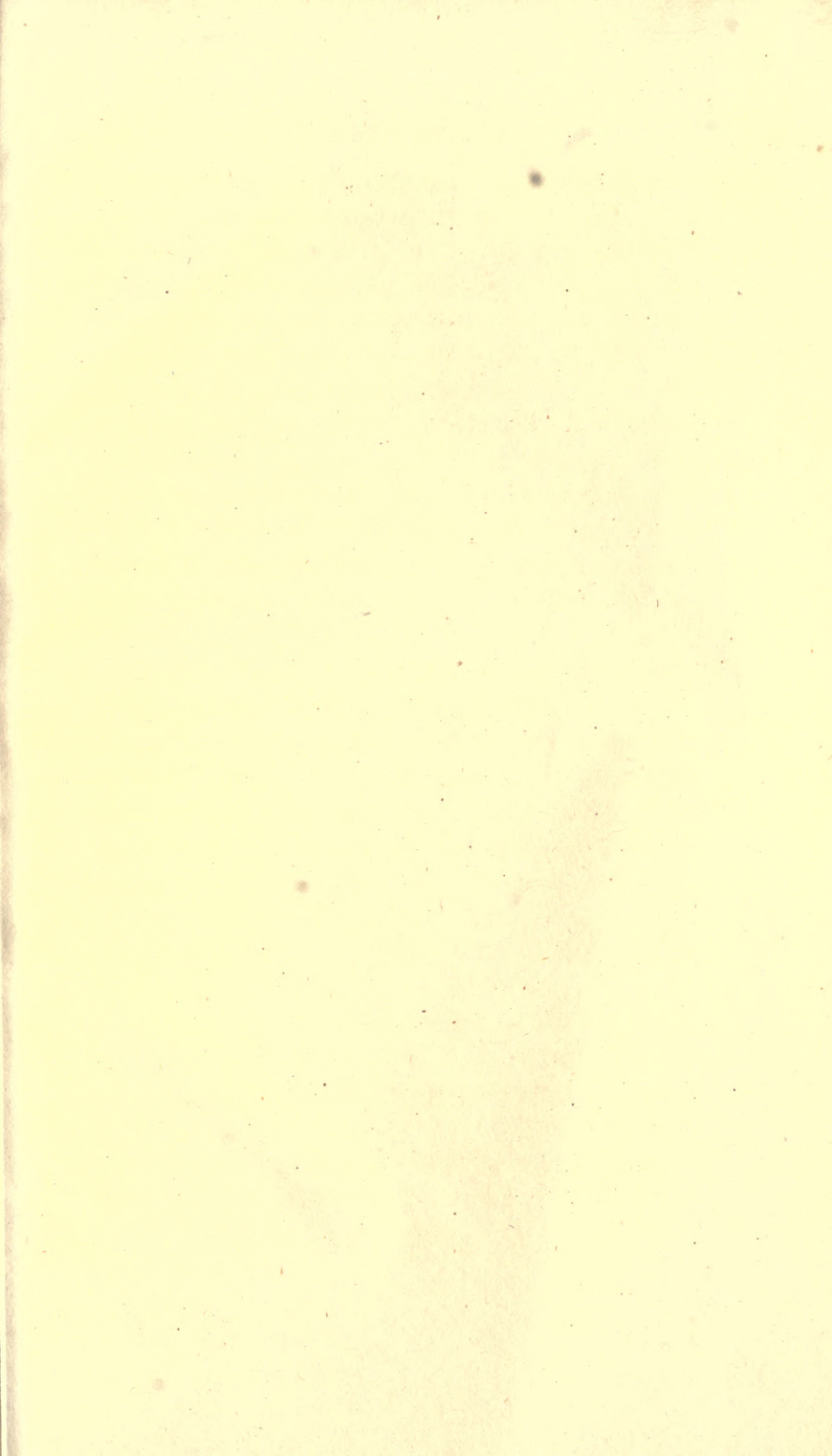
Seat of the
see of Mo-
ray fixed
at Spyny.

William Bishop of St. Andrew's, Walter Bishop of Glasgow, and Brice Bishop of Moray, with Henry Abbot of Kelso, attended in person the general council held at Rome in November A. D. 1215., while the rest of the Scotch prelates contented themselves with sending representatives. ⁵⁸

Scotch bi-
shops at-
tend the
general
council of
Rome.

⁵⁶ Boeth. l. 15.⁵⁷ Wilkin. Concil. t. i. p. 532.⁵⁸ Chron. Mailros in ann. 1215.

END OF THE FIFTH VOLUME.

















DA
30
H46
1814
v.5

Henry, Robert
The history of Great
Britain 5th ed.

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

